



**Ausgabe Englisch**  
Teil 2, Niveau A2-B1  
(inkl. Lösungen)

---

**English Edition**  
Part 2, level A2-B1  
(incl. solutions)

**Schwiizertütsch**

## Impressum

Verantwortlich für den Inhalt, Übersetzungen,  
Illustrationen, Layout, Audiodateien, Vertrieb:  
Verein voCHabular  
[info@vochabular.ch](mailto:info@vochabular.ch)  
[www.vochabular.ch](http://www.vochabular.ch)

Verantwortlich für den Druck und die Bindung:  
Zumsteg Druck  
Ausgabe Englisch  
Erste Auflage, Januar 2025

Das Copyright dieses Buches liegt beim Verein voCHabular.  
Der Inhalt darf nur für nicht kommerzielle Zwecke kopiert werden.  
Der Weiterverkauf von voCHabular an Dritte ist untersagt.

Preface	05
Chapter 0 - Before We Begin	09
Chapter 1 - Free Time	25
Chapter 2 - Education System	53
Chapter 3 - Work	81
Chapter 4 - Shopping and Food	109
Chapter 5 - Living Space	153
Chapter 6 - Relationships and Feelings	195
Chapter 7 - Participation and Politics	233
Chapter 8 - Culture	273
Solutions	307
Acknowledgement	353

# Index



# Preface

**Hallo!** Schön, dass du zu voCHabular gefunden hast. Wir freuen uns, dass du mit voCHabular Schweizerdeutsch – genauer gesagt *Züritüütsch* – lernen möchtest.

voCHabular ist kein gewöhnliches Sprachlernmittel. Denn dieses Buch (Teil 2) wurde von rund 60 Menschen gemeinsam in Freiwilligenarbeit erarbeitet. Die Freiwilligen haben viele verschiedene Hintergründe – sprachlich, professionell und kulturell. Gemeinsam haben sie, dass sie sich durch ihre Freiwilligenarbeit für eine vielfältige Gesellschaft einsetzen. Denn das ist die Vision des Vereins voCHabular: **Die Förderung einer inklusiven, offenen und solidarischen Gesellschaft.** Hierfür erschafft voCHabular in einem partizipativen Prozess multimediale Lernmittel, welche die Lernenden dabei unterstützen, selbstständig Schweizerdeutsch zu lernen und den Einstieg in den Schweizer Alltag zu finden. Zudem engagiert sich voCHabular für einen interkulturellen Austausch und folgt in all seinen Aktivitäten dem Grundsatz «Kontakt statt Vorurteile».

### voCHabular Meilensteine



**2015** wurde der Verein voCHabular gegründet. Während der letzten 10 Jahre haben sich über 200 Freiwillige im Verein engagiert.



**2018** erschien Teil 1 dieses Lernmittels (Niveau A1/A2) mit dem Ziel, dass Menschen mit Flucht- oder Migrationserfahrung Hochdeutsch und Schweizerdeutsch anhand von verschiedenen Ausgangssprachen lernen können. Mittlerweile existiert das Buch (Teil 1) in folgenden Ausgangssprachen: Englisch, Arabisch, Persisch, Französisch, Spanisch, Türkisch und Tigrinya.



**2024** wurde die Webapp mit den Inhalten des Teil 1 auf Deutsch und Englisch veröffentlicht: [vochabular-webapp.ch](https://vochabular-webapp.ch)



**2025** erschien Teil 2 dieses Lernmittels (Niveau A2/B1), mit dem Ziel, Schweizerdeutsch zu lernen. Das Buch (Teil 2) existiert in folgenden Ausgangssprachen: Hochdeutsch, Englisch, Arabisch und Persisch. Dieses Buch schaust du dir jetzt an.



Falls du bereits mit Teil 1 gearbeitet hast, siehst du, dass sich in Teil 2 einiges geändert hat. Der grösste Unterschied ist, dass der Fokus nun auf dem Erlernen von Schweizerdeutsch liegt. Einige Parallelen zum Hochdeutsch werden dort, wo es hilfreich ist, aufgezeigt.

voCHabular ist für alle Menschen gedacht, die Schweizerdeutsch – bzw. *Züritüütsch* – auf dem Niveau A2-B1 lernen möchten. Da es ein Selbstlernmittel ist, kannst du eigenständig damit arbeiten. Es eignet sich aber auch für Tandemprojekte oder für den Sprachunterricht.

Falls du Fragen zu voCHabular oder Feedback hast, kannst du dich gerne bei [info@vochabular.ch](mailto:info@vochabular.ch) melden. Mehr Informationen zu voCHabular findest du unter [vochabular.ch](https://vochabular.ch).

**Viel Spass beim *Züritüütsch* Lernen!**

**Hello!** It's great that you've found voCHabular. We are happy to welcome you to learn Swiss German – or *Züritüütsch* to be more precise – with voCHabular.

voCHabular is no ordinary language learning tool. This book (Part 2) was created by approximately 60 volunteers working together. The volunteers have many different backgrounds – linguistic, professional and cultural. What they have in common is that they are committed to a diverse society through their volunteer work. This is in line with the vision of the voCHabular association: **the promotion of an inclusive, open society, committed to solidarity**. In order to achieve this goal, voCHabular uses a participatory process to create multimedia learning materials that help learners learn Swiss German independently and find their way into everyday life in Switzerland. In addition, voCHabular is committed to intercultural exchange and follows the principle of “contact instead of prejudice” in all its activities.

### voCHabular milestones



The voCHabular association was founded in **2015**. Over the past 10 years, more than 200 volunteers have been involved in the association.



Part 1 of this learning aid (level A1/A2) was published in **2018** with the aim of teaching Standard German and Swiss German via different source languages to people with refugee or migration experience. The book (Part 1) now exists in the following source languages: English, Arabic, Persian, French, Spanish, Turkish and Tigrinya.



In **2024**, the web app with the content of Part 1 was published in German and English [vochabular-webapp.ch](https://vochabular-webapp.ch)



In **2025** Part 2 of this learning aid (level A2/B1) was published with the aim of learning Swiss German. The book (Part 2) exists in the following source languages: Standard German, English, Arabic and Persian. You are looking at this book now.



If you have already worked with Part 1, you will see that a few things have changed in Part 2. The biggest difference is that the focus is now on learning Swiss German. Some parallels to Standard German are highlighted where it might be helpful.

voCHabular is intended for all people who want to learn Swiss German – or *Züritüütsch* – at the levels A2-B1. As it is a self-learning tool, you can work with it independently. However, it is also suitable for tandem projects or for language classes.

If you have any questions regarding voCHabular or feedback, please contact [info@vochabular.ch](mailto:info@vochabular.ch). You can find more information about voCHabular on [vochabular.ch](https://vochabular.ch).

Have fun learning *Züritüütsch*!





# 0. Before We Begin

## Note

The learning goals show what you can learn in a unit. Using the closing section at the end you can check your knowledge and see whether you met the learning goals.

## Learning Goals

You're able to...

- ... what makes Swiss German a special language.
- ... how to write in Swiss German.
- ... how this book is structured and how to use it.

# Hey There!

Welcome to the introduction! Before we get started, we want to tell you a bit about what makes Swiss German special. You will get to know the structure of this book at the same time.

By the way: voCHabular's most important goal is to break down barriers and to help you understand

and be understood by German-speaking Swiss people. Because of this, we focus mainly on functional communication. Pronunciation and grammar will also be explained, but these are not the main priority here.

## Note

In boxes like this, we give you useful information about life in Switzerland.

## A1



Listen to the dialogue.

K0 -  
Audio A1



## Note

Any time you see a QR code with the word "Audio" above it, it means that this is a listenable text. In order to listen to this text, scan the QR code with your smartphone or tablet.

## D Naachrichte

Three radio presenters speak one after the other about various topics.

## Note

Each unit starts with an opening text. You don't have to understand the text completely. Simply do your best to figure out what the text is about, and then take a look at the exercises below. At the end of the book, in the solutions section, you can find a translation for every introductory text.

### Martha:

Bei einer Kollision am Limmatplatz in Zürich sind drei Menschen verletzt worden. Dabei fuhr ein Tram in ein Auto, nachdem dieses scharf bremsen musste. Der Fahrer des Wagens und die zwei Beifahrerinnen wurden umgehend ins Spital gebracht. Die Polizei sucht nun die Personen, die die Strasse abseits des Zebrastreifens überquerten und so die Vollbremsung verursachten.

### Zoe:

Jetzt chömemer zum Schport, und da hät geschter der FC Züri knapp de Siig im Schwiizer Cup verpasst. S Finaal gäg d Young Boys hät er nämli ais zu zwai verloore. Am Aafang händ zwar d Zürcher no gfüert, d Bärner händ dän aber zimli schnäl chöne-n usgliche und i de letschte zää Minuute hät dän de Cédric Zesiger s Füerigsgool gschosse. Also, wükli e bitteri Nacht für Züri.

## Note

In this book varying languages are marked with colors. Mostly this is Swiss German – texts in Swiss German are **blue**. Sometimes, like here, texts or words are written in Standard German – they are colored **green**.

## Charitini:

Da isch eso, Zoe, defür gsiet s wenigsthes bim Wetter echli besser uus. Hüüt tagsüber isch es zwar no chli wulchig, aber d Regewaarschiinlichkait isch nul und d Temperature z Züri ligged bi aagnäame füüfezwenzg Graad. Zoobed klaart s den uuf und moorn isch s de ganz Taag schöö und öppe glich warm.

# Introductory Exercises

## A2



What is the biggest difference between the ways that the three radio presenters speak?

---

---

---

---

## A3



Do Zoe and Charitini speak the same? Can you guess who is from which area?

---

---

---

---

## A4



What differences do you hear between the German that is spoken outside of Switzerland and the German that Martha speaks?

---

---

---

## Note

The first exercises are usually to help with your comprehension of the text or audio.

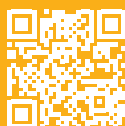
We use the following symbols to indicate what you need to do in these and other exercises:



# Vocabulary

## Note

The vocabulary list summarizes the most important words from the introductory text and provides example sentences. voCHabular only provides words that correspond to the level of this book (A2 to B1) and which we think you would use most often. But you can also look up all the other words in our voCHi list online:



[vochabular.ch/unsere-angebote/vochi](https://vochabular.ch/unsere-angebote/vochi)

The words are listed in Swiss German, in your language, and in Standard German.

## CH

## EN

## DE

### Hoochdüütsch

I de Naachrichte redetsi maischtens Hoochdüütsch.

### Standard German

In the news, they mostly speak Standard German.

### Hochdeutsch

In den Nachrichten sprechen sie meistens Hochdeutsch.

### Schwiizertüütsch

Schport und Wätter sind i de Nachrichte oft uf Schwiizertüütsch.

### Swiss German

In the news, sports and weather forecasts are often in Swiss German.

### Schweizerdeutsch

Sport und Wetter sind in den Nachrichten oft auf Schweizerdeutsch.

### Züritüütsch

Züritüütsch isch nur aine vo vilne Schwiizer Dialäkt.

### Zurich dialect

The Zurich dialect is only one of many Swiss dialects.

### Zürcher Dialekt

Der Dialekt von Zürich ist nur einer von vielen in der Schweiz.

### Züri

Züri isch di grööscht Schtatt vo de Schwiiz.

### Zurich

Zurich is the biggest city in Switzerland.

### Zürich

Zürich ist die grösste Stadt der Schweiz.

### de Dialäkt (d Dialäkt)

Chasch du au en Dialäkt rede?

### Dialect

Do you also speak a dialect?

### Dialekt

Sprichst du auch einen Dialekt?

## Note

We always list nouns with the article (**de, d, s**; Standard German: **der, die, das**). After that you will find the plural (if there is one) in parentheses. For verbs, the form in parentheses is the past tense. In addition to the verb, we also include the auxiliary verb (**haa** or **sii**, Standard German: **haben** or **sein**). For adjectives, you will find the comparative form with **-er** in brackets.

**rede (hät gredt)**

Wän d e Schpraach  
wotsch leere, muesch vil  
rede.

**talk / speak**

If you want to learn a language,  
you need to speak a lot.

**reden**

Wenn du eine Sprache  
lernen willst, musst du viel  
reden.

**guet (besser)**

Är redt ächt guet Schwi-  
zertütsch.

**good / well**

He speaks Swiss German  
really well.

**gut**

Er redet echt gut Schweizer-  
deutsch.

K0 -  
Hauptwortschatz



**Note**

If you scan the QR code "Wort-  
schatz", you can listen to all the  
words in Swiss German.

# Grammar

## Note

The grammar section is all about – grammar! For us at voCHabular, the most important thing is that you understand and are understood. That's why we only explain the most important grammar topics. In the introductory unit, there are only a few explanations about the role of Swiss German in Switzerland.

Many languages are spoken in Switzerland. Three of them are official languages: German, French and Italian. The part of Switzerland where German prevails is called *Deutschschweiz*. In the canton of Graubünden, a fourth official language is spoken: Romansh.

In *Deutschschweiz*, the language situation is confusing for many newcomers. One does not simply speak German, but two variants of it that differ greatly. The first one, so-called *Hochdeutsch* (Standard German), is widely used in written form, e.g., in books, newspapers and on websites. Standard German is also spoken in the classroom at school. You may also hear Standard German in politics or in church.

The second variant is Swiss German. It is mainly used when speaking, though short texts such as emails or messages can also be written in Swiss German. Teachers in schools teach in Standard German, but even a quick sentence which is not part of the school lesson, such as *Chasch bitte s Faischter zutue?* ("Could you please close the window?"), can be given in Swiss German – and during the break everyone speaks Swiss German!

Swiss German is a collective term for many, often quite different, dialects. In this book we mainly use the dialect of the city of Zurich, *Züritütsch*. That doesn't mean that we like other dialects any less!

As you go along, you may notice that the *Hochdeutsch* spoken in Switzerland is not the same as it is in Germany and Austria. For instance, in Standard German in Switzerland, one often calls dinner *Nachtessen*, whereas the word *Abendessen* is the norm in Germany and Austria. In Swiss German, this is mostly called *Znacht*. There are many such differences.



Was für es  
Schwizertütsch  
redsch du?

Züritütsch,  
ich bin im  
Züriobertland  
aufgewachse.

# Exercises

## B1

### B1.1



The following words in Standard German have been mentioned already in Zurich German. How do you say them in Zurich dialect and what do they mean?

### B1.2



You probably know the words on the right side in Standard German. In Zurich dialect, they are somewhat different. Can you guess what they mean? The words at the beginning are easier, the ones at the end more difficult.

## B2

### B2.1



Listen again to the audio. Repeat the text sentence by sentence.

## Wörter im Dialäkt

- Anfang
- Finale
- eins
- zehn
- gestern
- wirklich
- noch
- geführt
- geschossen
- gegen

- Aug
- Blueme
- Sune
- chalt
- gschribe
- tүүr
- Wonig
- Faischter
- abnää
- Chile

## D Naachrichte

K0 -  
Audio A1



## Note

This section contains vocabulary and grammar exercises. In contrast to the introductory exercise, you are now asked to actively use what you have learned.

## B2.2



You will now hear some words that you know from the introductory text one at a time, each one with two different pronunciations (A and B). One pronunciation is the Zurich dialect, the other is from another Swiss German dialect. Note which variant, A or B, is the Zurich German variant and write it down.

K0 -  
Audio B2.2



- |     | A                        | B                        |
|-----|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

## B3



Grammar does not only exist at school! Swiss German has its own grammar structure, although it is not taught in school. If you already know some Standard German, take another look at the introductory text and try to find differences with Standard German.

Notes:





# Deepen Your Knowledge

## Note

Sometimes the 'Deepen Your Knowledge' section will contain additional information, mostly on grammar.

## There Is No 'Correct' Spelling

Sometimes the 'Deepen Your Knowledge' section will contain additional information, mostly on grammar.

Swiss German is very rarely taught in school or written in books, newspapers and on websites. There are no rules about the correct spelling.

Most of the texts written in this book represent spoken language - therefore, try to focus on listening and speaking. From time to time, there are also texts written in Swiss German, such as the messenger dialogue above. But don't waste time worrying about proper spelling, because no such thing exists in Swiss German! Simply do as the Swiss do and write however you want.

## C1

## Schwiizertüütsch schriibe

### C1.1

*Two speakers of the Zurich dialect are messaging each other on a messenger.*



Read the dialogue and listen to the spoken version of it.

**Ueli:** Hey U häsch de neu Spielberg scho xee?

**Ahmed:** Wele mainsch?

**Ueli:** De mit de Dinos.

**Ahmed:** Bisch sicher dass dä noi isch?

**Ueli:** Ja egal chunsch mit cho luege?

**Ahmed:** Wänn göndR?

**Ueli:** Hüt zabig am 8i im Abaton. D Sarah chunt au.

**Ahmed:** OK cool. Tickets händer?

**Ueli:** Easy ich bstell. Halbi 8i bi eus dihei, isch guet?

**Ahmed:** Mues luegä, öbi s schaffä. Ich schriib der ä Schtund vorher.

K0 -  
Audio C1.1







<b>ch</b>	[χ(:)]	<i>chalt</i> 'cold', <i>lache</i> 'to laugh', <i>Bach</i> 'stream'
<b>ck</b>	[k:χ]	<i>schlücke</i> 'to lick', <i>dick</i> 'fat'
<b>d</b>	[d]	<i>daas</i> 'this/that', <i>Lade</i> 'store', <i>gad</i> 'shortly'
<b>e</b>	[e]	<i>Egli</i> 'river perch', <i>Bett</i> 'bed'
	[ə]	<i>gaater</i> 'he goes', <i>Nabel</i> 'navel', <i>Wise</i> 'meadow'
<b>ee</b>	[e:]	<i>Eer</i> 'honor', <i>cheere</i> 'to turn back', <i>See</i> 'lake'
<b>ei</b>	[eɪ]	<i>gheie</i> 'fall', <i>frei</i> 'free'
<b>f</b>	[f]	<i>Faischter</i> 'window', <i>Ofe</i> 'oven', <i>Hoof</i> 'courtyard'
<b>ff</b>	[f:]	<i>hoffe</i> 'to hope', <i>Rueff</i> 'call/repu- tation'
<b>g</b>	[g]	<i>Garte</i> 'garden', <i>Mage</i> 'stomach', <i>Taig</i> 'dough'
<b>gg</b>	[k:]	<i>Jagge</i> 'jacket', <i>Schnägg</i> 'snail'
<b>h</b>	[h]	<i>hole</i> 'to get', <i>ghaim</i> 'secret'
<b>i</b>	[ɪ]	<i>isch</i> 'is', <i>schpile</i> 'to play'
<b>ie</b>	[iə]	<i>Mieti</i> 'rent', <i>wie</i> 'how'
<b>ii</b>	[i:]	<i>lise</i> 'iron', <i>Riis</i> 'rice', <i>glii</i> 'soon'
	[ɪ:]	<i>Riis</i> 'giant'
<b>j</b>	[j]	<i>jage</i> 'to hunt'
<b>k</b>	[kχ]	<i>Kanton</i> 'canton', <i>ekai</i> 'no/not (a)'
<b>l</b>	[l]	<i>Land</i> 'land', <i>schtele</i> 'to put', <i>Taal</i> 'valley'
<b>m</b>	[m]	<i>Muul</i> 'mouth', <i>schwüme</i> 'to swim', <i>Cham</i> 'comb'
<b>n</b>	[n]	<i>nai</i> 'no', <i>käne</i> 'to know', <i>schöön</i> 'beautiful'
<b>o</b>	[o]	<i>oft</i> 'often', <i>lose</i> 'to listen'
<b>oi</b>	[oɪ]	<i>ois</i> 'us', <i>foif</i> 'five', <i>hoi</i> 'hi'
<b>oo</b>	[o:]	<i>ooni</i> 'without', <i>geboore</i> 'born', <i>choo</i> 'come'
<b>ou</b>	[ou]	<i>boue</i> 'to build', <i>Sou</i> 'pig'
<b>ö</b>	[ø]	<i>öfter</i> 'often', <i>zögere</i> 'to hesitate'
<b>öö</b>	[ø:]	<i>Ööl</i> 'oil', <i>ghööre</i> 'to listen', <i>jöö!</i> 'so cute'
	[œ:]	<i>Ööbig</i> 'evenings', <i>frööge</i> 'to ask'

<b>p(p)</b>	[p:]	<i>Paar</i> 'pair', <i>schnappe</i> 'to grab', <i>Tipp</i> 'tip'
	[pʰ]	<i>Pass</i> 'pass'
<b>pf</b>	[pʰ]	<i>Pfil</i> 'arrow', <i>lupfe</i> 'to lift', <i>Schtupf</i> 'push'
<b>qu</b>	[kʰw]	<i>Quäle</i> 'source'
<b>r</b>	[r]	<i>riich</i> 'rich', <i>schpare</i> 'to save', <i>Haar</i> 'hair'
<b>s</b>	[s]	<i>suuber</i> 'clean', <i>läse</i> 'to read', <i>Huus</i> 'house'
<b>sch</b>	[ʃ]	<i>Schii</i> 'ski', <i>Fläsche</i> 'bottle', <i>Tisch</i> 'table'
<b>ss</b>	[s:]	<i>Mässer</i> 'knife', <i>biiss</i> 'bite'
<b>t(t)</b>	[t:]	<i>Türe</i> 'door', <i>Matte</i> 'mat', <i>demit</i> 'with that'
	[tʰ]	<i>tanke</i> 'to fill up with (gas)'
<b>tsch</b>	[tʃ]	<i>tschutte</i> 'to play football/socce', <i>verwütsche</i> 'to catch sth/sb', <i>Gutsch</i> 'casting'
<b>tz</b>	[t:s]	<i>schletze</i> 'to slam', <i>Chatz</i> 'cat'
<b>u</b>	[ʊ]	<i>uff!</i> 'uff!', <i>Luscht</i> 'lust'
<b>ue</b>	[uə]	<i>Ueli</i> (a first name for boys/me), <i>guet</i> 'good', <i>Rue</i> 'silence'
<b>uu</b>	[u:]	<i>uus</i> 'off', <i>ruume</i> 'to remove', <i>duu</i> 'you' (stressed)
	[ʊ:]	<i>Zug</i> 'train'
<b>ü</b>	[y]	<i>über</i> 'above', <i>Güsel</i> 'cabbage'
<b>üe</b>	[yə]	<i>Üezgi</i> (Üetliberg, a mountain close to Zurich), <i>früener</i> 'earlier', <i>Chüe</i> 'cows'
<b>üü</b>	[y:]	<i>Üüle</i> 'owl', <i>Züüg</i> 'stuff'
	[y:]	<i>Züüg</i> 'trains'
<b>v</b>	[f]	<i>vier</i> 'four', <i>Vogel</i> 'bird'
	[v]	<i>Villa</i> 'villa', <i>Sklaave</i> 'slaves'
<b>w</b>	[v]	<i>wone</i> 'to live', <i>iwiise</i> 'to instruct'
<b>x</b>	[ks]	<i>relaxe</i> 'to relax'
<b>y</b>	[y: ~ i:]	<i>Asyl</i> 'asylum'
	[j]	<i>Yoga</i> 'yoga'
<b>z</b>	[ts]	<i>Zaal</i> 'number', <i>verzele</i> 'to tell'

## C2.1



*On the right side you can see a well-known text that we translated into Swiss German and wrote in line with the voCHabular rules. Do you recognize it? Try reading the text aloud and then compare your pronunciation with the audio recording.*

Ali Mänsche sind frei und chömed mit de gliiche Würde und Rächt uf d Wält. Si händ e Vernunft und es Gwüsse und söled enand wie Brüedere und Schwöschtere begägne. Uuf die Rächt und Freihaite, wo i däre Erchläärig verchündt wärded, händ ali Aaschpruch, ooni das Huutfarb, Gschlächt, Schpraach, Religion, politischi oder andri Überzüügige, nationaali oder soziaali Häärkunft, Vermöge, Geburt und Schtelig i de Gselschaft irgenden Unterschiid würed mache.

K0 –  
Audio C2.1



Notes:

# Last but Not Least

*This is the table of points for the introductory unit.*

## Points

1-4	Better check out the unit again
5-8	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
9	Great - proceed with the next unit right away!!

## Note

Each unit concludes with a small test that you can take in order to check how well you have met the learning goals. In the solution section, you can check your answers and count your points.

## D1

### D1.1



*Which languages do most people speak in German-speaking Switzerland? (You choose multiple options. If you got all right and none wrong: 3 points. If at least one is correct: 1 point.)*

- a.  Zurich German
- b.  Spanish
- c.  Swiss German
- d.  Standard German
- e.  Swabian German
- f.  Basel German

### D1.2



*Are there rules for Swiss German pronunciation and grammar? (1 point)*

- a.  Yes, you learn those in school.
- b.  Yes, you learn those in school.
- c.  No, there are no rules.

### D1.3



*Are there rules on how to spell Swiss German correctly? (1 point)*

- a.  Yes, you learn the rules in school.
- b.  Yes, as all Swiss German speakers spell words the same way.
- c.  No, you spell words however you want.

## Particularities of Swiss German

## D2



On the right side you can see words written in line with the voCHabular rules. In the audio recording you can hear three pronunciation variants (A, B and C) for each word. Next to each word, write the letter of the variant that is correct in Zurich German, i.e. corresponding to the variants written in blue. (0,5 points each)

## Pronunciation and Spelling

1. braate 'to fry'
2. Schoggi 'chocolate'
3. ois 'us'
4. churz 'short'
5. müese 'must'
6. de Garte 'the garden'
7. güne 'to win'
8. frei 'free'

A	B	C
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

K0 -  
Audio D2







# 1. Free Time

## Learning Goals

### You're able to...

- ...talk to others about what you like to do in your free time.
- ...plan free time activities with friends.
- ...inform yourself about possible free time activities.

# Hoi zäme!

## A1



Four people introduce themselves. Listen to what they say.

K1 -  
Audio A1



### Fatemeh:

«Halo, min Name-n isch Fatemeh und ich wone sit foif Jaar i de Schwiiz. Fascht imer, wän i Ziit han, bini am Schport mache. Schport isch mis Läbe! Am Mittwuch und Samschtig bini amigs am Tschutte. Morn hämmer der erscht Matsch i däm Jaar. Hoffetlich günemer! Am Aabig gaani gärn mit mine Lüüt go Pingpong schpile. Das macht megavil Schpaass und hilft mer, z entschpane. Und suscht? Am See bini au no gärn, zum Schwüme oder au aifach nur zum Tschile! Am schönschte findi s amigs am Aabig, wän s gad am dunkel Wärde-n isch.»

### Nadir:

«Hoi, ich haisse Nadir. Sit churzem schaffi als Fitnesstrainer im Gym und ha esoo mis Hobby zum Brueff gmacht. Im Momänt bini viermal i de Wuche am Kürs gää und tue d Chundine und Chunde au einzelt betroie. S Schönschte-n isch z gsee, wie d Mänsche fitter wärded. S Gym isch für mich nöd nume min Arbetsort. Ich triffe deet au mini Fründinne und Fründe. Mängisch bruuchi aber au mini Rue und dän gaani mit mim Skizzeheft an See. Ich liebe s, d Natur z zaichne, aber mängisch bini au aifach echli am Ufer am Hocke-n und Troime. Wirdi ächt mis zwaite Hobby au emal zum Brueff mache?»

### Pablo:

«Hoi zäme! Ich bi de Pablo und ich ha megagärn Musig. Ich han überall mini Chopfhörerer debii und bi immer irgendöppis am Lose: im Tram, uf de Schtraass, im Park... und dihai sowiso, ich ha sogar es Radio i de Duschi. Mängisch losi au öppis Ruigs, wän i am Schaffe bi, aber nur wän i mi gad nöd mues konzentriere. Usserdeäm singi sälber siit meerere Jaar imene Choor mit. Musig isch für miich vor alem wichtig zum Entschpane und Troime. De Choor cha zwar au schträng sii, aber wämmer mit de Proobe dure und am Singe sind, vergissi dän gliich ales um mich ume. Nööchscht Wuchenänd trättemer wider emal uuf - chömeder au?»

### Andrea:

«Hoi, ich haisse-n Andrea. Ich bi megagärn verusse und gaa gärn go wandere. Mängisch faari mitem Zuug i d Bärge, aber ich find s au schön, bi miir i de Umgäbig go laufe z gaa. S isch so cool, wän mer aifach zu de Tüür use chaa und us de Schtatt use, a Flüss und Wise verbii... Da chani min ganze Schtress vergässe. Aimal i de Wuche gaani i s Neikafi. Det chamer Neimaschine miete und sälber Sache naie. Ich hett zwar gärn au en aigeti Neimaschine, aber s Coole-n am Neikafi isch, das maischtens die gliiche Lüüt deete sind. Mir hälfed enand und schwätzed. Esoo hani scho noii Koleege gfunde.»

# Introductory Exercises

## A2



Listen to the portraits again and read along. Which person belongs to which picture?

Write each name under the fitting picture.



## A3



Mark an X under the name of each person to which the statement applies.

Fateme h      Nadir      Pablo      Andrea

... sews their own things.

—  —  —

... likes to play ping pong.

—  —  —

... is often at the gym.

—  —  —

... sings in their free time.

—  —  —

... likes to sit by the lake.

—  —  —

# Vocabulary

## CH

## EN

## DE

### s Läbe (d Läbe)

So isch s Läbe!

### life

That's life!

### das Leben

So ist das Leben!

### de Mänsch (d Mänsche)

Si isch en guete Mänsch.

### human

She's a good person.

### der Mensch

Sie ist ein guter Mensch.

### ainzeln

Si sind naadisnaa ainzelt inechoo.

### one by one

They came in one by one.

### einzel

Sie sind nach und nach einzeln hereingekommen.

### de Momänt (d Momänt)

Genau i däm Momänt ischs passiert!

### the moment

It happened at exactly that moment!

### der Moment

Genau in diesem Moment ist es passiert!

### gfale (hät gfale)

Das Lied gfalt mer nöd.

### like

I don't like this song.

### gefallen

Dieses Lied gefällt mir nicht.

### hälfe (hilft, hät ghulfe)

Chasch mer churz hälfe?

### to help

Can you quickly help me?

### helfen

Kannst du mir kurz helfen?

### de Schpaass (-)

A däm Aabig hämmer mega Schpaass ghaa.

### fun

Tthat evening we really had fun.

### der Spass

An dem Abend hatten wir echt Spass.

### s Hobby (d Hobbys)

Und was isch diis Hobby?

### hobby

And what's your hobby?

### das Hobby

Und was ist dein Hobby?

### d Feerie (PL.)

Und, schööni Feerie ghaa?

### vacation

And did you have a good holiday?

### die Ferien (PL.)

Und, hattest du schöne Ferien?

### sich entschpane (hät sich entschant)

Ales guet, entschan dich!

### relax

It's all good, relax!

### sich entspannen

Alles gut, entspann dich!

### troime (hät troimt)

Si troimed vomene bessere Läbe.

### to dream

They dream of a better life.

### träumen

Sie träumen von einem besseren Leben.

### de Schtress (-)

De Schtress im Job wird mer gad wükli z vil.

### stress

The stress at work is really getting to be too much.

### der Stress

Der Stress im Job wird mir gerade wirklich zu viel.

<b>d*e Chund*in (d Chund*inne)</b> Chasch mal luege? Isch e Chundin da!	<b>the client</b> Can you go check? A client is here!	<b>der*die Kund*in</b> Kannst du mal schauen? Eine Kundin ist da!
<b>schträng (schtränger)</b> Händ er s no schträng ghaa geschter?	<b>busy</b> Was it busy yesterday?	<b>anstrengend, stressig</b> War es gestern noch stressig bei euch?
<b>de Schport (-)</b> Schport haltet mich fit.	<b>sport</b> Sport keeps me fit.	<b>der Sport</b> Sport hält mich fit.
<b>d Natuur (-)</b> I de Natuur sind au überall Mänsche.	<b>nature</b> In nature there are people everywhere.	<b>die Natur</b> In der Natur sind auch überall Menschen.
<b>de Bärg (d Bärge)</b> D Rigi isch de schöönscht Bärg vo de Schwiiz.	<b>mountain</b> The Rigi is Switzerland's most beautiful mountain.	<b>der Berg</b> Die Rigi ist der schönste Berg der Schweiz.
<b>churz (chürzer)</b> D Feerie sind imer z churz.	<b>short</b> Holidays are always too short.	<b>kurz</b> Die Ferien sind immer zu kurz.
<b>wiit (wiiter)</b> Z Fuess vo Züri bis Winti isch wiit!	<b>far</b> It's far to go from Zurich to Winterthur on foot.	<b>weit</b> Zu Fuss von Zürich nach Winterthur ist es weit!
<b>dunkel (dünkler)</b> Gad wird s dunkel!	<b>dark</b> It will get dark soon!	<b>dunkel</b> Gleich wird es dunkel!
<b>s Zält (d Zälter)</b> Chasch du es Zält uufschtele?	<b>tent</b> Can you put up a tent?	<b>das Zelt</b> Kannst du ein Zelt aufstellen?
<b>de Fuessbal (d Fuessbäl)</b> Bim Fuessbal dörf me nöd mit de Hand schpile.	<b>football</b> When playing football you can't use your hands.	<b>der Fussball</b> Beim Fussball darf man nicht mit der Hand spielen.
<b>de Matsch (d Mätsch)</b> De Matsch isch megalangwiilig gsii.	<b>game / match</b> The match was really boring.	<b>der Match</b> Der Match war echt langweilig.
<b>d Duschi (d Duschene)</b> Ui nai, i de Duschi chunt kä warms Wasser!	<b>shower</b> Oh no! There's no warm water in the shower.	<b>die Dusche</b> Oh nein, in der Dusche kommt kein warmes Wasser!
<b>güne (hät gune)</b> Wär hät de Matsch gune?	<b>to win</b> Who won the game?	<b>gewinnen</b> Wer hat den Match gewonnen?

<b>d Rue (-)</b> Sorry, ich bruuch gad echli Rue.	<b>silence</b> Sorry, I need a bit of silence right now.	<b>die Ruhe</b> Sorry, ich brauche gerade ein bisschen Ruhe.
<b>singe (hät gsunge)</b> Si singt imer bim Choche.	<b>to sing</b> She always sings while cooking.	<b>singen</b> Sie singt immer beim Kochen.
<b>zaichne (hät zaichnet)</b> En Baum z zaichne, isch nöd so schwäär.	<b>to draw</b> It's not that difficult to draw a tree.	<b>zeichnen</b> Einen Baum zu zeichnen ist nicht so schwer.
<b>s Heft (d Hefter)</b> Ich schriib mini Wörtli i das Heft ine.	<b>notebook</b> I write my vocabulary words in this notebook.	<b>das Heft</b> Ich schreibe meine Vokabeln in dieses Heft.
<b>naie (hät gnait)</b> Mis Grosi isch mer en Schaal am Neie.	<b>to sew</b> My grandmother is currently sewing me a scarf.	<b>nähen</b> Meine Grossmutter näht mir gerade einen Schal.
<b>miete (hät gmietet)</b> Wän d nöd schtändig es Velo bruuchsch, chasch ja ais miete.	<b>to rent</b> If you don't need a bicycle constantly, you can rent one.	<b>mieten</b> Wenn du nicht ständig ein Velo brauchst, kannst du ja eins mieten.
<b>alai</b> Ich bin hüt zaabig alai dihai.	<b>alone</b> I'm home alone this evening.	<b>allein</b> Ich bin heute Abend alleine zuhause.
<b>aiget</b> Häsch en aigete Kompfi?	<b>own</b> Do you have your own computer?	<b>eigene, -r, -s, -n</b> Hast du einen eigenen Computer?
<b>mängisch</b> Mängisch hani aifach Luscht uf Schoggi.	<b>sometimes</b> Sometimes I just feel like eating chocolate.	<b>manchmal</b> Manchmal habe ich einfach Lust auf Schokolade.
<b>amigs</b> Am Suntigmorge gömmer amigs zum Beck.	<b>always/often</b> On Sunday morning we always go to the bakery.	<b>immer, oft, jeweils</b> Am Sonntagmorgen gehen wir immer zum Bäcker.
<b>mindeschtens</b> De Kurs gaat mindeschtens zwai Jaar.	<b>at least</b> The course takes at least two years.	<b>mindestens</b> Der Kurs dauert mindestens zwei Jahre.
<b>usserdäm</b> Das Ässe isch seer fain gsii und usserdäm günschtig.	<b>as well as/also</b> The food was very delicious as well as cheap.	<b>ausserdem</b> Das Essen war sehr lecker und ausserdem günstig.

---

**äch(t)****really****vielleicht, wohl**

This little word is often used when you assume or propose something and want to express that you're not sure: *Schtimt das ächt?* 'Is that right?', *Chöntsch mer ächt churz hälfe?* 'Could you maybe help me for a bit?', *Isch s ächt wider chelter worde?* 'Did it get even colder?'

---

**g(r)ad****now/currently****gerade, gleich**

This word shows that a longer activity is happening right now: *Mir sind gad am See* 'We are at the lake', *Ich bi s gad am Läse* 'I'm reading it'. With punctual activities, it shows that they happen subsequently or they've just happened: *Chume gad!* 'I'm coming!' *Das hani gad naa glueged* 'I've just checked it'.

---

**mega- (+ Adj.)****very, really****sehr, echt**

The form *mega* is used in combination with adjectives. (*megaguet* 'very good', *megatum* 'really dumb'). It can be also used in combination with verbs (*Si isch mega am ume schtresse*. 'She's really stressing out.') or even alone (*Mega!* 'Cool!').

---



# Grammar

## The Present Tense

You already know the present tense. For your reference, the forms of regular verbs such as *mache* are listed below:

1. Person Sg.	ich mache	I do/make	ich mache
2. Person Sg.	du machsch	you do/make	du machst
3. Person Sg.	är/si/es macht	he/she/it does/ makes	er/sie/es macht
1. Person Pl.	mir mached	we do/make	wir machen
2. Person Pl.	ir mached	you do/make	ihr macht
3. Person Pl.	si mached	they do/make	sie machen

The present tense can be used in a lot of cases and can have very different meanings:

- **current state:**

*Si hockt im Garte* 'She is sitting in the garden', *Ich glaub das nöd*  
'I don't think so'

- **Habits and regular events:**

*Am Frittig gani amigs echli früener* 'On Fridays I always go a bit earlier',  
*Das nervt mi jedes Maal* 'It annoys me every time'

- **General truth/statements:**

*Wasser chochet bi 100 Graad.* 'Water boils at 100 degrees',  
*Zwai plus zwai isch vier* 'Two plus two equals four'

- **Events happening in the future:**

*Morn gömmer is Kino* 'Tomorrow we are going to the cinema', *Ich säg*  
*der, die zwai hüüraated no* 'I'm telling you, those two will get married'

In Swiss German the present tense is often used to describe events happening in the future. In German it is also possible, but it's less common because the auxiliary verb *werden* is also an option. (*Morgen gehen wir ins Kino* oder *Morgen werden wir ins Kino gehen*). In Swiss German, *wärde* is never used for the future, but only for assumptions.



## The *am*-Form

When an event happens only for a limited time or when it moves towards a specific goal, the so-called *Verlaufsform* (the progressive form) can be used. We simply refer to it as the *am*-Form, since it is composed of using the little word *am*:

Time	Construction	Examples with <i>läse</i> 'lesen'
Present	<i>sein</i> + <i>am</i> + infinitive	<i>ich bi am Läse</i>
Past	<i>sein</i> + <i>am</i> + infinitive + <i>gsii</i>	<i>ich bi am Läse gsii</i>

When the verb is followed by an object, the structure with *am* occurs always:

*Ich bi es Buech am Läse.*

*Hüt bin i es Buech am Läse.*

*Wil i es Buech am Läse bi.*

Here some examples regarding the difference between simple present and present with *am*:

Am Fritig  
gani amigs  
echli früener

### Simple present

*Ich tschil am liebschte-n im Park.*  
I prefer to chill out in the park.

*Losisch au Radio oder eender  
nöd?*  
Do you listen to the radio as well  
or rather not?

*D Hannah list megavil fürs  
Schtudium.*  
Hannah reads a lot for her stu-  
dies.

*D Sune gaat im Weschte-n un-  
der.*  
The sun sets in the West.

*Hüt zaabig luege mer en Film.*  
This evening we're going to  
watch a film.

### Present with *am*

*Ich bi im Park am Tschile, und du?*  
I'm chilling out in the park, and  
you?

*Was bisch jetzt am Lose?*  
What are you listening to at the  
moment?

*D Hannah isch i de Badwane am  
Läse.*  
Hannah is reading in the bathtub.

*Hei d Sune-n isch am Undergaa,  
mach es Foti!*  
The sun is setting, take a photo!

*Mir sind gad no en Film am Luege.*  
We are watching a film right now.

By the way, you can find the *am*-Form in Standard German too (*Ich bin ein Buch am Lesen. Ich war ein Buch am Lesen.*). However, it's used only in the spoken language and not as often as in Swiss German.

# Exercises

## B1



Match the words that fit together

Fuesbal	lose
ä Duschi	verbringe
Schpaass	gaa
Musig	güne
Schii	läse
Ziit	schpile
es Buech	haa
Schport	faare
i d Bärge	nää
de Matsch	mache



## B2

### B2.1



What does one do where? Note 3-5 activities that match each of the places listed on the right.

### Was macht mä wo?

Im Restaurant: Znacht ässe, .....

Am See: .....

Im Gym: .....

I de Bärge: .....

Dihai: .....

Uf em Schportplatz: .....

## B2.2



Use the following places and activities to make a sentence. In addition, include the following time indications from the box.

imer / mängisch / nie / am Wuchenänd / i de Freiziit / am Fiiraabig

For example: *Am Wuchenänd mache mer am See es Picknick.*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Notes:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Combine the building blocks on the right side into sentences and put the verb in the appropriate tense (simple present or am-form).

I minere Freiziit - Fründe - traffe

Mir - jetz dän - im See go schwüme - gaa

Wän si frei hät - si oft - Krimis - läse

Sitere Schtund - ich - Chueche - bache

Am Wuchenänd - ich - echli - trainiere

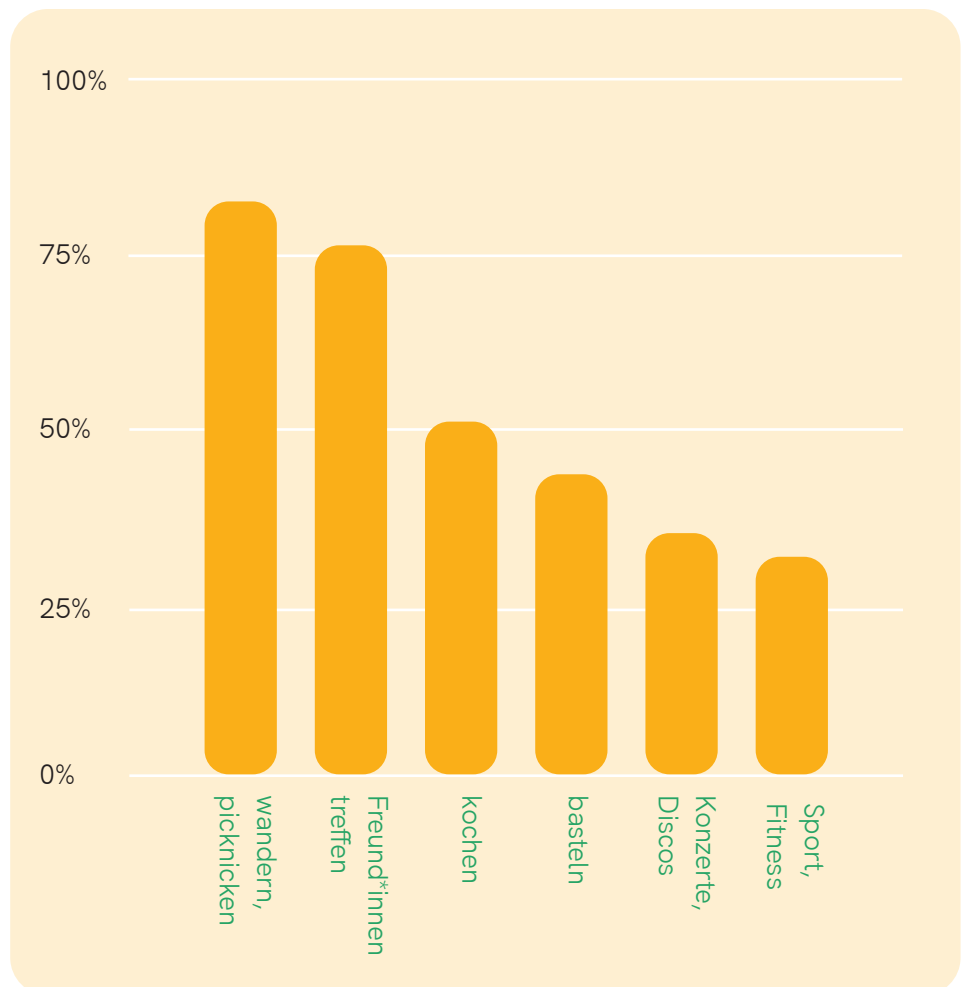
Si - im Momänt - vil Düütsch - leere

## B4



On the right side you can see an overview of activities that people in Switzerland enjoy spending their free time on (in Standard German).

## Aktivitätē



Was isch diis Hobby?



## B4.1



Listed on the right side are several statements. For each statement, note the appropriate activity from the graph before.

a) Am liebschte gaani in Uusgang go tanze.

.....

b) Im Härbscht mached mini Chind amigs Bleterhuuffe.

.....

c) Ich bi seer aktiv und gaa drüümal i de Wuche i s Schwümtraining.

.....

d) Am Wuchenänd gaat mini Familie fascht imer i d Bärge.

.....

e) Hüüt zaabig probieri mal es nois Rezäpt uus.

.....

f) Nached Fiiraabig gaani maischtens mit Koleege no ais go zie.

.....

## B4.2



Find a conversation partner. Discuss the list of activities together. What surprised you? What is different in comparison to other countries? Does the list match your personal preferences?

Notes:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Two friends are chatting on a messenger app.

### B5.1



Mark all the *am*-forms in the text.

Hey, was bisch am Mache?

Nöd vil, bi am Tschile. Und du?

Bi grad am Choche. Wottsch zum Znacht choo?

Sorry, das längt mer hüt nöd.

Aber du bisch ja nüüt am mache!

Doch, mues no e Serie uf Netflix färtig luege.

Hehe, okay. Vil Schpaass!

Mersi, dir en Guete.

### B5.2



Connect the sentences that have a similar meaning.

Was bisch am Mache?

Bi grad am Choche.

Das längt mer hüt nöd.

Okay.

Mersi.

Isch guet.

Hüt hani kä Ziiit.

A was bisch draa?

Danke.

Bi am Znacht Mache.

## B6

## Was isch diis Hobby?

### B6.1



Send a friend a voice message talking about your hobbies. Here are a few questions you can use to get inspired:

Was machsch du gärn?

Was häsch als Chind für es Hobby ghaa?

Wän d nöd müestisch schaffe, was wüsch de ganz Taag mache?

Was machsch gar nöd gärn?

### B6.2



Talk to another person about your hobbies:

Was macht Schpaass, isch aber tüür?

Weli Hobbys choschtet nüüt?

Weles Wätter bruuchsch für dini Hobbys?

«Megakoomischs Hobby» - häsch das au scho mal tänkt?

Wisoo hätme überhaupt Hobbys?

# Affordable Free Time Activities

Switzerland is known for being very expensive. This is indeed correct - but not always. There are many places in Switzerland where free time activities are free or come very cheap.

**KulturLegi:** In many cantons it is possible to order a KulturLegi. It is free for the first year and costs 20 Swiss Francs in each following year. Using KulturLegi, you can get discounts for museums or theaters. Further information: [kulturlegi.ch](http://kulturlegi.ch).

**Maps Agenda:** You can find cheap free time activities in Zurich at Maps Agenda. The calendar in 15 different languages is also available online:

**Municipal websites:** On the websites of the cities you can often find tips on cheap free time activities.

**schweizrollt:** In many Swiss cities, it is possible to rent a bike for free.

[portal.wyby.ch/lessors/aoz](http://portal.wyby.ch/lessors/aoz)

**Associations/clubs:** Switzerland is a country of associations/clubs: from gymnastics clubs over

singing clubs to political clubs, there is a club for almost everything. voCHabular is also an association. In case you are interested in joining a club, you can reach out to the responsible person.

**+1 am Tisch:** +1 am Tisch is aimed at migrant minors (under the age of 18) in Switzerland. They receive a mentor for a period of at least nine months. They regularly have a meal together or do other activities. The mentor supports their mentee with everyday problems where necessary: [solidarity-young-migrants.ch/de](http://solidarity-young-migrants.ch/de)

**A selection** of other initiatives and projects to get in touch with the Swiss population can be found here: [solidarity-young-migrants.ch/de/bestehende-initiativen-und-projekte](http://solidarity-young-migrants.ch/de/bestehende-initiativen-und-projekte)

# Deepen Your Knowledge

## C1

### Wottsch zugg lüüte?

#### C1.1



Read the phone dialogue and put in the verbs in the correct form. Use the *am*-form where appropriate.

	<i>De Andrea ires Handy lüüetet.</i>	<i>Andrea's phone is ringing.</i>
<b>A:</b>	Hoi, da isch d Andrea.	Hi, this is Andrea.
<b>F:</b>	Halo Andrea, ich bi s, d Fatemeh.	Hi Andrea, it's me, Fatemeh.
<b>A:</b>	Aa, Fatemeh! Ha der au scho wele _____(aalüüte), aber es isch bsetzt gsii. Wie gaats der?	Ah, Fatemeh! I was trying to call you, but your line was busy. How are you?
<b>F:</b>	Guet, _____(schpaziere) und gad zuggchoo. Und du, was _____(mache)?	Good, I was taking a walk and have just come back. And you, what are you up to?
<b>A:</b>	lich _____(schaffe), ha vil z tuel	I'm still working, I've got a lot to do!
<b>F:</b>	Oo, wottsch schpöötter zugg-lüüte oder häsch schnäl Ziit?	Oh, would you like to call me back later or do you have a minute?
<b>A:</b>	Nai, käs Probleem, grad _____(Pause mache).	No, no problem, I am taking a break.
<b>F:</b>	Häsch hüt Aabig scho öppis loos? _____(gaa) as Konzärt vom Pablo. Möchtisch mitchoo?	Have you got any plans for tonight? I'm going to Pablo's concert. Would you like to join?
<b>A:</b>	Ich gaa laider hüt Aabig scho i d Bäрге. Aber hei, nööchtscht Wuchenänd _____(sii) es cools Festival in Züri. Wämmër zäme gaa?	Unfortunately, I am off to the mountains in the evening. But there is a cool festival in Zurich next weekend. We could go there together.
<b>F:</b>	Gueti Idee, bi debii. Wämmër ois nööchtscht Wuche i däm Fal no _____(schriibe)?	Good idea, I'm in. We could talk about it next week.
<b>A:</b>	Jaa, mir chönd no luege.	Yeah, let's see.
<b>F:</b>	Also dän laani di wider la schaffe. Bis glii.	Good, then I'll let you work. See you.
<b>A:</b>	Tschüss, bis nööchtscht Wuche.	Ciao, see you next week.



## C1.2



Listen to the dialogue. Repeat phrase after phrase loudly.

K1 -  
Audio C1.1



## C1.3



Which words or sentences from this dialogue can you use when talking on the phone? Mark them. Come up with a phone conversation yourself and use the expressions.

Space for your own phone call:

## C2



Read the dialogue.

### Ich bin am liebschte dihai!

*D Fatemeh und de Pablo schwätzed im Gang.*

*Fatemeh und Pablo are talking in the hallway.*

<b>F:</b>	Hei Pablo, ich bi a oies Konzärt ggange. Du singsch ja megaguet!	Hey Pablo, I was at your concert yesterday. You sing so well!
<b>P:</b>	Mersi, aber das gaat nur im Choor. Alai singi zimli schlächt.	Thanks, that only works in a choir. I sing quite badly on my own.
<b>F:</b>	Koomisch. Gaasch äch au gärn a Festivals?	Strange. Do you like going to festivals?
<b>P:</b>	Nöd esoo, wisoo?	Not really, why?
<b>F:</b>	Nööchscht Wuchenänd wär ais. Häscht s lieber ruig?	There is one next weekend. Do you prefer things quiet?
<b>P:</b>	Nai, es döörf scho au luut sii. Aber immer so wiit faare... ich bi aifach am liebschte dihai!	No, it's fine if it gets loud. But driving so far every time... I simply prefer staying at home!

## CH

## EN

## DE

**schwätze (hät gschwätzt)**  
Chönteder ächt echli  
liisliger schwätze?

**chit chat / talk**  
Could you please talk a bit  
softer?

**sich unterhalten, plaudern**  
Könntet ihr euch vielleicht ein  
bisschen leiser unterhalten?

**s Radio (d Radios)**  
Oises alte Radio tuet s  
imer no.

**the radio**  
Our old radio still works.

**das Radio**  
Unser altes Radio  
funktioniert immer noch.

**d Gitare (d Gitarene)**  
Rockstars lieded iri  
Gitarene.

**the guitar**  
Rockstars love their guitars.

**die Gitarre**  
Rockstars lieben ihre  
Gitarren.

**gruusig (gruusiger)**  
De Horrorfilm isch mega-  
gruusig gsii!

**disgusting, scary**  
The horror movie was extre-  
mely scary!

**ekelhaft**  
Der Horrorfilm war total  
ekelhaft!

**koomisch (koomischer)**  
Was luegsch so koomisch,  
isch öppis?

**strange**  
Why are you looking so  
strange, is something going  
on?

**komisch**  
Was guckst du denn so ko-  
misch, ist was?

**kabutt (-)**  
Oises alte Radio isch ka-  
butt ggange.

**broken**  
Our old radio is broken.

**kaputt**  
Unser altes Radio ist kaputt  
gegangen.

**brüele (hät prüelt)**  
Mängi Babys sind schtän-  
dig am Brüele.

**to cry**  
Some babies constantly cry.

**weinen**  
Manche Babys sind ständig  
am Weinen.

**obwol**  
D Anja gaat imer no mitem  
Velo, obwol si vercheltet  
isch.

**even though, despite**  
Anja is still riding a bike even  
though she is sick.

**obwohl**  
Anja fährt immer noch mit  
dem Velo, obwohl sie erkäl-  
tet ist.

K1 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 1



Was isch passiert?

De Horrorfilm isch  
megagruuslig gsii!

## Using Adjectives With Verbs

In Swiss German, as in Standard German, you can also use adjectives as adverbs (i.e., with verbs): *guet ghööre* 'hear well', *schlächt gsee* 'see badly', *schöön schriibe* 'write beautifully'...

- *gärn* + verb: *Ich schlaaffe gärn* 'I like to sleep'
- *gärn haa* + noun: *Ich ha di gärn* 'I like you'
- *gärn wärde* + verb: *Ich wür gärn gaa* 'I would like to go'
- The gradation of *gärn* is irregular: *lieber* 'to like more', *am liebschte* 'to like the most'

### C2.1



What belongs together? Insert the adjectives and adverbs from the box appropriately into the sentences:

am liebschte / gärn / gärn /gärn / gruusig / koomisch / lieber / lieber / megaguet / schnäl / schön

- 1) Dis Radio töönt aber \_\_\_\_\_,  
isch es äch kaputt?
- 2) Schpilsch \_\_\_\_\_  
Fuessbal oder Hockey?
- 3) D Özlem redt mer aifach z \_\_\_\_\_,  
ich chume nöd druus.
- 4) De Enrico hät so \_\_\_\_\_  
gsunge, das i ha müese brüele.
- 5) Si schpilt \_\_\_\_\_  
Gitare, obwol si erscht sit emene Jaar am Leere-n isch.
- 6) Häsch Pinpong nöd \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7) lich sing \_\_\_\_\_  
under de Duschi.
- 8) Im Sumer gaani \_\_\_\_\_  
im Fluss go bade wi i im Halebaad.
- 9) Är isch en Meganette aber choche tuet er \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10) \_\_\_\_\_ losi  
Reggae.
- 11) Ich wür \_\_\_\_\_  
emal en Matsch go luege.



Read the dialogue.

## Häsch scho öppis voor?

	<i>D Andrea und de Nadir trüffed sich zuefällig im Tram.</i>	<i>Andrea and Nadir bumped into each other in the tram.</i>
<b>A:</b>	Hoi Nadir, wie gaat s der?	Hi Nadir, how are you?
<b>N:</b>	Halo Andrea, guet und diir?	Hi Andrea, good, and you?
<b>A:</b>	Miir au, danke. Was häsch am Wuchenänd voor?	Me too, thanks. Have you got any plans for the weekend?
<b>N:</b>	Ich gaan am Sunntigaabig zu mine Eltere go ässe, aber suscht hani no kai Plään. Und du?	Sunday evening I am going to my family's place for dinner, but apart from that I have no plans. And you?
<b>A:</b>	Ich gaan am Samschtig go wandere. Häsch Luscht zum Mitchoo?	I am going hiking on Saturday. Would you like to join?
<b>N:</b>	Ja ee, seer gärn. Häsch scho überlait, wo ane?	Yes, sure, very gladly. Have you already thought of where?
<b>A:</b>	Ich han verschidene Idee'e. Ich schick si der per Chat und du chasch säge, uf waas d am maischte Luscht häsch, isch guet?	I have several different ideas. I will send them to you via messenger and you can tell me which one you like the most, okay?
<b>N:</b>	Jaa, das isch supper. Schön, ich froi mi mega uf de Samschtig!	Sure, that sounds great. I'm very much looking forward to Saturday!

## CH

## EN

## DE

### überlegge (überlait, hät überlait)

Si sind imer no am Überlegge, wo si söled aa faa.

### to think about sth / to figure sth out

They are still figuring out where to start.

### überlegen

Sie sind immer noch am Überlegen, wo sie anfangen sollen.

### verschide

Au Mänsche us verschidene Kultuure chönd zämechoo.

### different

People from different cultures can also come together.

### verschieden

Auch Menschen aus verschiedenen Kulturen können zusammenkommen.

### sich froie (hät sich gfroit)

Är hat sich mega über das Gschänk gfroit.

### to look forward to sth / to be happy about sth

He was very happy with the gift.

### sich freuen

Er hat sich sehr über das Geschenk gefreut.

### schicke (hät gschickt)

Ich schick der es Chärtli!

### send

I'm sending you a postcard.

### schicken

Ich schicke dir eine Postkarte!

K1 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 2



## C3.1



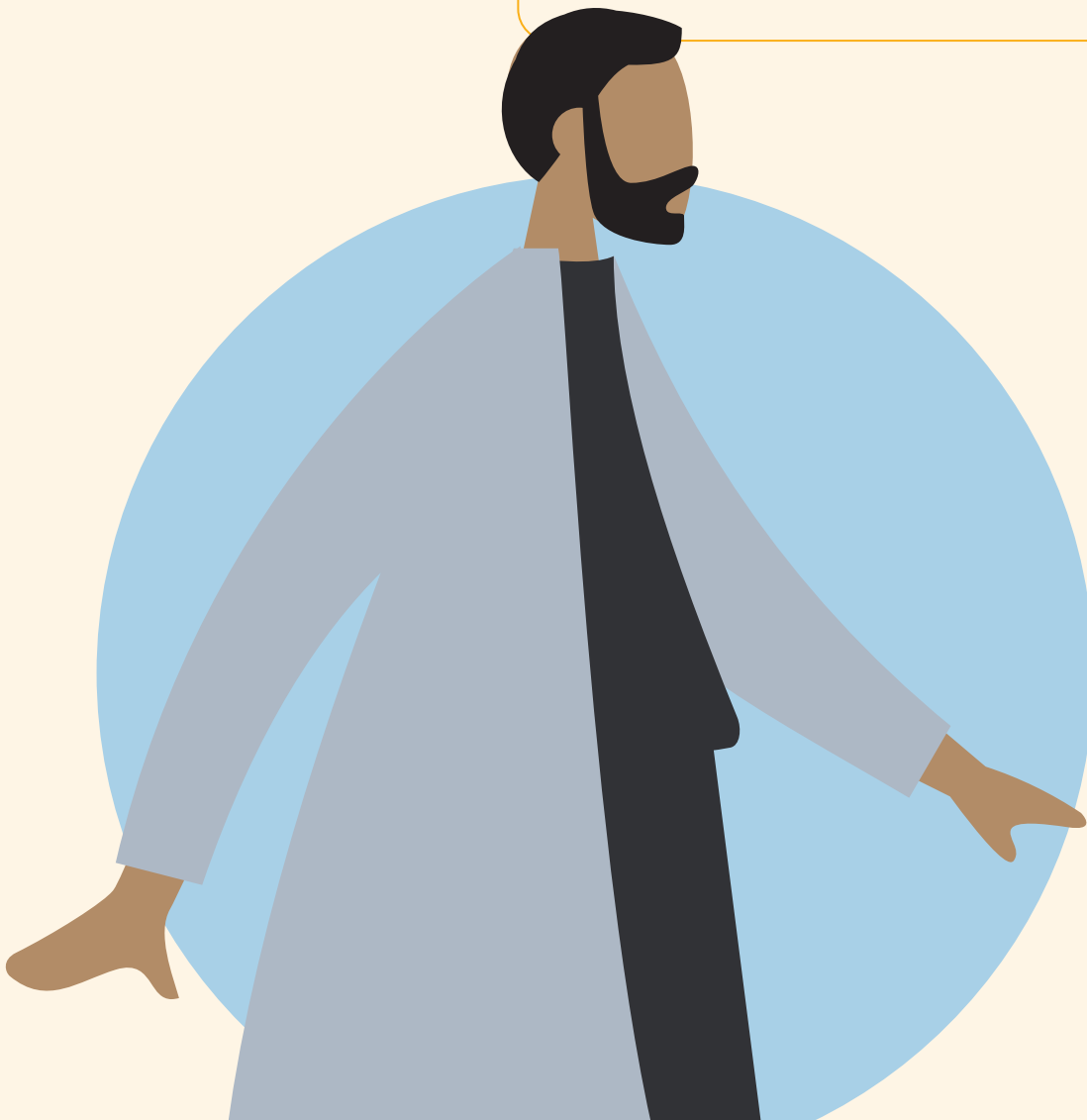
*The present tense is also used to talk about the future. In text C3, mark all sentences in the present tense that refer to the future.*

## C3.2



*What are your plans for the weekend? Write them down in 2-3 sentences.*

Platz für deine Sätze:





First listen to the text of the exercise. A written version with translation can be found in the solution section.

K1 –  
Audio C4

**CH****gäg**

Die Partei isch gäg al andere.

**äbe**

Äbe is used when nothing can be changed about something or when it does not make sense to discuss it: *Das isch äbe-n esoo* 'That's just how it is', *Wän s kän Raam hät, nämemer äbe Milch* 'If there is no cream, we will just use milk', *Ich haa dich äbe gärn, cha au nüüt defür* 'I just like you, I can't do anything about it'.

**EN****against**

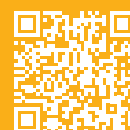
This party is against all others.

**just, simply****DE****gegen**

Diese Partei ist gegen alle anderen.

**halt, eben**

K1 –  
Zusatzwortschatz 3

**C4.1**

Answer the following questions on the audio C4 orally or in writing.

What events would Nadir like to attend?

.....

What events would Pablo like to attend?

.....

Who is Nadir's cousin?

.....



Take a look at the poster on the right side. It shows the summer program of a culture club. Can you identify the band that sings in Swiss German? What is its name?

27.05	<b>KONFI TENSMANN</b> Wahrscheinlich die romantischste kalifornisch-zürcherische Americana-Band der Schweiz.	KOLLEKTE 19 UHR
08.06	<b>DENNIS KISS &amp; THE SLEEPERS</b> Frisches Indie Folk Quintett aus Baden, nun mit neuer EP im Gepäck.	KOLLEKTE 20 UHR
10.06	<b>HINTERWÄLDLER</b> Singen drüstimmig Country und Folkspngs, aber uf Mundart. Herzschmerz, Schnaps und Vieh.	KOLLEKTE 15 UHR
16.06	<b>VESTE</b> Ist das Resultat von Singer-Songwritertum mit Synthklängen Drummaschines und Reduziertheit	KOLLEKTE 20 UHR
17.06	<b>WM: SCHWEIZ-BRASILIEN</b> Bei schönem Wetter im Garten auf der Leinwand mit feinem Mojito	EINTRITT FREI 20 UHR
22.06	<b>WM: SCHWEIZ-SERBIEN</b> Bei schönem Wetter im Garten auf der Leinwand mit feinem Sliwowitz	EINTRITT FREI 20 UHR
27.06	<b>WM: SCHWEIZ-COSTA RICA</b> Bei schönem Wetter im Garten auf der Leinwand mit erfrischendem Daiquiri	EINTRITT FREI 20 UHR
30.06	<b>SHEEP ON THE MOON</b> Die Songs von Sheep on the Moon oszillieren zwischen Americana, Folk, Blues und Rock	KOLLEKTE 21 UHR

PLATTEN-TAUFE

Name of the band:

.....

# Last but Not Least

Now you can test your knowledge to see if you meet the learning goals of this unit. Solve the exercises below and then check in the solution section and discover how many points you have scored. Here is our advice:

## Points

0-50	Better check out the unit again.
51-80	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
81-100	Great - proceed with the next unit right away!

### Note on the evaluation

Note that there is no official Swiss German spelling. You can therefore use the voCHabular spelling or write however you like. You have to pay attention to this when you compare your texts with the solution part.

Example: The solution is *nää* ('take'). If you wrote *näh*, that's still correct! But for example, *naa* (wrong pronunciation) or *nähme* (wrong form) would be incorrect.

## D1

### D1.1



Change the following sentences from the simple present tense to the *am*- form or from the *am*- form to the present tense.

## Describe Your Free Time Activities

Laa dini Schwöschter in Rue, si! (*üebe*)

Im Winter mer amigs am Üetlibärg go schlittle. (*gaa*)

Metal hani nöd gärn, die mer aifach z luut! (*singe*)

Ich glaub, de Oskar hät schlächti Luune, er i siim Zimer. (*uusrüäfe*)

De Roger doch scho lang nüm Tennis. (*schpile*)

D Josie sitem achti das noie-n Album. (*lose*)

Inere Band si Gitarre. (*schpile*)



## D1.2



For the first task, you need someone who speaks Swiss German well. Tell them what you like to do in your free time. Then let them rate you: 20 points if they understood everything well, 0 points if they didn't understand anything at all. Anything in between is also possible.

## D1.3



Read the short text on the right side and check whether the statements listed are true or false (3 points for each answer):

D Lea isch gad Boxe-n am Uusprobiere. Ich han ire gsait, das isch doch mega de Maneschport, aber si hät gfunde, das seg es Vorurteil. Jetzt ischsi zwaimal i de Wuche am Trainiere und verzelt schtändig luschtigi Gschichtli. Ich bi scho fascht echli niidisch, aber für miich wär das gleich nüüt. Si wott s äbe und si isch sogar guet! Jetzt isch imene Monet ires erschte Boxturnier, da mueni si dän unbedingt go aa füüre. Ich bi jetzt scho mega am fiebere!

- |  | True                     | False                    |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) D Lea isch sit es paar Jaar Boxerin.                | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2) D Fründin vo de Lea hät si vo Aafang aa ermuetiget. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3) D Lea erläbt bim Training luschtigi Sache.          | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4) D Fründin vo de Lea wär s au gärn uusprobiere.      | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5) D Fründin vo de Lea wott an es Turnier gaa.         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



Ich froie mich uf mine erschte Boxkampf.

## D2.1



Put the verbs into the text on the right side, choosing the correct form (1 point per sentence):

gaa / gsee / lauffe / lose / luege / chauffe / schliifschüendle / schpile / schwüme

- 1) Moorn \_\_\_\_\_mer de noi Film vom Tarantino.
- 2) Häsch d Bilet scho \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3) Ich wür megagärn mal wider uf em Vierwaldstettersee go \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) Moorn i de Fr \_\_\_\_\_mer uf de Üetliberg.
- 5) Wämmer nöd früe gnuég en Platz sueched, \_\_\_\_\_mer wider nüt.
- 6) Häsch Luscht, am Samschtig a s Konzert z \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7) I de Feerie chömmer dän wider italiänischs Radio \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8) Im Sumer \_\_\_\_\_i de Schwiiz vil Lüüt gärn i Flüss und See'e.
- 9) \_\_\_\_\_er am Wuchenänd en Matsch?

## D2.2



Listen to Text D2.2. Then answer the following questions (3 points for each answer):

- |                         |   |   |
|-------------------------|---|---|
| Wie söl s Wätter wärde? | <input type="checkbox"/> chüel                  | <input type="checkbox"/> warm                 |
| <hr/>                   |   |   |
| Wän gönd die zwai loos? | <input type="checkbox"/> sibni                  | <input type="checkbox"/> ahti                 |
| <hr/>                   |   |   |
| Wän ässed si es Glacé?  | <input type="checkbox"/> vor em Film            | <input type="checkbox"/> über de Film         |
| <hr/>                   |   |   |
| Was luegedsi?           | <input type="checkbox"/> Kataschtroofe-Film     | <input type="checkbox"/> Si wüssed s nöd      |
| <hr/>                   |   |   |
| Wän de Film doof isch,  | <input type="checkbox"/> ...göndsi früener hai. | <input type="checkbox"/> ..ässed si es Glacé. |
| <hr/>                   |   |   |

K1 -  
Audio D2.2



## D3

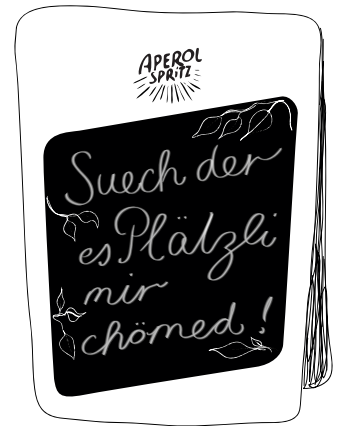
## Receive Information About Free Time Offers

### D3.1



What can you do here? Match the activities from the list to the labels (2 points for each correct answer).

öppis go trinke / sich entschpane / öppis go aaluege / öppis poschte



### D3.2



Which question matches with which answer? (2 points per pair).

- |   |   |   |  |
|---|---|---|--|
| 1 | Wän isch di nööchscht Vorschtelig?      | a | Ja, wi vil bruuched Si?                |
| 2 | Wi vil isch der litritt?                | b | Das Konzärt isch absait.               |
| 3 | Hät s no Plätz im Stadion?              | c | De Film laufft erscht wider morn.      |
| 4 | Wiso simmer da ine alai?                | d | Sicher nöd, das isch doch so chalt!    |
| 5 | Git s da i de Nööchi Pingpong-plattene? | e | Hüüt ischs graatis.                    |
| 6 | Chunsch mit go schwüme?                 | f | Är isch vol am Schlaaffe, gäl.         |
| 7 | Wi findsch das noie-n Album?            | g | Ich glaub dune bi de Schuel häts aini. |
| 8 | Was isch mit em Goalie loos?            | h | Si hät scho besseri Sache gmacht.      |



# 2. Education System

## Learning Goals

### You're able to...

- ...talk to teachers and other parents at an event for parents at school.
- ...inform yourself on how to catch up on school or do an apprenticeship in Switzerland.

# Was oisi Chind ales für Möglichkaite händ

## A1

After the parents' evening of the 6th grade on the subject of transition to secondary school, Rasmia, Selin's mother, and Helger, Fabio's father, talk about their children's school career.



Listen to the discussion between Rasmira and Helger.

K2 -  
Audio A1



**Rasmira:**

«S isch schpanend, namal z ghööre, was oisi Chind ales für Möglichkaite händ nach de sächste Klass. D Gimi-prüeffig wird glaub rächt schwirig.»

**Helger:**

«Jaa, de Fabio wott lieber i d Sek. Är waiss jetz scho, das er wott Choch wärde, da chaner nach de Sek grad e Leer aafange. Aber ich glaub, für d Selin wird s Gimi nöd eso schwirig. De Fabio hät verzelt, das si imer seer gueti Note hät.»

**Rasmira:**

«Jaa, das schtimt. Mir sind seer schtolz, das si so guet isch i de Schuel und würed ois froie, wän sie d Uufnameprüeffig für s Gimi schaffe wür. Für miich und min Maa wär s natürlu au in Ornig, wän si i d Sek wür gaa, aber si wett unbedingt Ärtzin wärde und für daas bruchtsi s Gimi.»

**Helger:**

«Wow, da hät si es groosses Ziil vor Auge. Dän hoffi, das si d Uufnameprüeffig schafft. Ich wünsch ire vil Erfolg!»

**Rasmira:**

«Danke, Helger, ich richte s ire-n uus. Bis glii!»

**Helger:**

«Bis dän, tschüüs, Rasmira.»



# Introductory Exercises

## A2



Tick the correct answers. You may also listen to the dialogue again.

Was wett de Fabio mache nööchscht Jahr?

I s Gimi gaa.

I d Sek gaa.

Är waiss es nanig.

Was für en Brueff wett d Selin lärne?

Chöchin

Ärztin

Gimileererin

## A3



What belongs to whom?  
Match the words to the correct name.

Selin

Fabio

Ärztin

Sek

müest vil lärne

Rasmira

Choch

Gimi

Helger

seer gueti Noote

## The Swiss School System

In Switzerland school time begins with kindergarten. After two years, the children switch to primary school, which lasts six years in most cantons. After the sixth grade, there are various possibilities. One is the secondary school (*Sek*), which is structured slightly differently depending on the canton and lasts three years. Once you have completed secondary school, you can start an apprenticeship, in which you already begin working while learning a profession, while also continuing to attend classes two or three days a week at a vocational school.

Alternatively, you can switch to a long-term high school after primary school: the *Gimi*. This school requires that you pass an entrance exam. The *Gimi* lasts six years and concludes with an exam called the Matura, which allows you to study at a university.

There are various cross-connections between secondary school and other educational paths. For example, you can switch from secondary school to a short-term high school by taking an exam or attending various middle schools after secondary school.

# Vocabulary

## CH

## EN

## DE

### d Klass (d Klasse)

I welere Klass bisch jetzt?

### class/grade

What class are you in right now?

### Klasse

In welcher Klasse bist du jetzt?

### d Noote (d Noote)

E schläcti Noote isch au kän Wältundergang.

### grade

A bad grade is not the end of the world.

### Note

Eine schlechte Note ist auch kein Weltuntergang.

### s Gimi (d Gimis)

Nöd ali müend i s Gimi gaa.

### High school

Not everyone has to go to high school.

### Gymnasium

Nicht alle müssen aufs Gymnasium gehen.

### d Sek (-)

Mini beschte Koleegine hani i de Sek käneglärnt.

### secondary school

I met my best friends in secondary school.

### Sek, Sekundarstufe

Meine besten Freundinnen habe ich in der Sek kennengelernt.

### d Uufnaam (d Uufname)

Für d Uufnaam müender e Prüeffig ablegge.

### acceptance

To be accepted you need to pass an entrance exam.

### Aufnahme

Für die Aufnahme müsst ihr eine Prüfung ablegen.

### der ghöört haa Erfolg (d Erfolg)

Was findsch wichtiger, Erfolg i de Schuel oder Erfolg im Läbe?

### success

What do you find more important: success at school or success in life?

### Erfolg

Was findest du wichtiger, Erfolg in der Schule oder Erfolg im Leben?

### lange (hät glanget)

D Leererin hät gsait, sini Noote langed nöd.

### to suffice, to be sufficient

The teacher said his grades are not sufficient.

### reichen, genügen

Die Lehrerin hat gesagt, dass seine Noten nicht genügen.

### d Möglichkait (d Möglichkaite)

Ich wünsch mer für mis Chind vil verschideni Möglichkaite.

### possibility

I wish for many possibilities for my child.

### Möglichkeit

Ich wünsche mir für mein Kind viele verschiedene Möglichkeiten.

### s Ziil (d Ziil)

Ires Ziil isch s KV.

### goal

Her goal is the commercial apprenticeship.

### Ziel

Ihr Ziel ist die kaufmännische Lehre.



<b>hööch (hööcher)</b> Am Ahmed sini Ziil sind no hööcher wi s Schuelhuus.	<b>high</b> Ahmed's goals are higher than the school building.	<b>hoch</b> Ahmeds Ziele sind noch höher als das Schulhaus.
<b>de Choch/ d Chöchin (d Chöch*inne)</b> Verdient me als Choch guet?	<b>cook</b> Do you earn well as a cook?	<b>Koch/ Köchin</b> Verdient man als Koch gut?
<b>froo (-)</b> Wo-n i das ghöört ha, bin i megafroo gsii.	<b>happy/glad</b> I was very happy when I heard that.	<b>froh</b> Als ich das hörte, war ich total froh.
<b>schtolz (schtölzer)</b> Mis Mami isch megaschtolz uf miich.	<b>proud</b> My mother is really proud of me.	<b>stolz</b> Meine Mama ist echt stolz auf mich.
<b>schwirig (schwiriger)</b> Isch s Gimi nöd echli z schwirig?	<b>difficult</b> Isn't high school a little too difficult?	<b>schwierig</b> Ist das Gymi nicht ein bisschen zu schwierig?
<b>schpanend (schpanender)</b> De Film isch megaschpanend gsii!	<b>exciting</b> The movie was very exciting!	<b>spannend</b> Der Film war mega spannend!
<b>schtume (hät gschtume)</b> Was du jetz verzelsch, schtimt überhaupt nöd.	<b>to be correct</b> What you are saying right now is not correct at all.	<b>stimmen</b> Was du jetzt erzählst, stimmt überhaupt nicht.
<b>uusrichte (hät uus grichtet)</b> Si isch ged nöd dihai - söli öppis uusrichte?	<b>relay/align</b> She is not home at the moment - should I relay her a message?	<b>ausrichten</b> Sie ist gerade nicht zu Hause - soll ich etwas ausrichten?
<b>glii</b> Mir gseend ois ja dän glii wider.	<b>soon</b> We will meet up again soon.	<b>bald</b> Wir sehen uns ja dann bald wieder.
<b>rächt</b> Die Hefter sind aber rächt tüür, nööd?	<b>pretty/quite</b> The notebooks are quite expensive, aren't they?	<b>recht, ziemlich</b> Die Hefte sind aber ziemlich teuer, nicht?
<b>in Ornig</b> Ischs in Ornig, wän i echli schpööter chume?	<b>okay/fine</b> Is it okay if I come a bit later?	<b>In Ordnung</b> Ist es in Ordnung, wenn ich ein bisschen später komme?

**ja****yes****ja**

*Ja* is not only said when answering a question, but also very often in the middle of a sentence. You use it when you are referring to things that the other person already knows or things that you assume you share an opinion on: *D Züüg sind ja maischtens pünktlich.* 'The trains are usually on time (as we both know.)', *Me leert ja nöd nur für d Schuel.* 'You don't only learn for school (- I'm sure you'll agree with me.)'. Sometimes you also use it when you suddenly recognize something that is actually clear: *Das bi ja iich uf däm Fotti!* 'That's me in the photo!'



# Grammar

## Past Tense

You already know the past tense. We will repeat it here and study it a bit more in depth. Here are the verb forms for a regular verb like *mache*.

<b>1. Pers. Sg.</b>	<i>ich ha gmacht</i>	I did/made, I have done/made	<i>ich habe gemacht</i>
<b>2. Pers. Sg.</b>	<i>du häsch gmacht</i>	you did/made, you have done/made	<i>du hast gemacht</i>
<b>3. Pers. Sg.</b>	<i>är/si/es hät gmacht</i>	he/she/it did/made, he/she/it has done/made	<i>er/sie/es hat gemacht</i>
<b>1. Pers. Pl.</b>	<i>mir händ gmacht</i>	we did/made, we have done/made	<i>wir haben gemacht</i>
<b>2. Pers. Pl.</b>	<i>ir händ gmacht</i>	you did/made, you have done/made	<i>ihr habt gemacht</i>
<b>3. Pers. Pl.</b>	<i>si händ gmacht</i>	they did/made, they have done/made	<i>sie haben gemacht</i>

The meaning of this tense is simple - use it for everything in the past. Unlike Standard German, you don't have to distinguish between the past perfect tense (*ich habe gemacht*) and simple past tense (*ich machte*) - the past perfect is the only past tense in Swiss German.

To form the past tense, you need an auxiliary verb (above: *haa* 'have') and a participle (above: *gmacht* (done/made)). With some verbs the auxiliary verb is not *haa* but *sii* 'to be', e.g., *gaa*.

<b>1. Pers. Sg.</b>	<i>ich bi ggange</i>	I went/I have gone	<i>ich bin gegangen</i>
<b>2. Pers. Sg.</b>	<i>du bisch ggange</i>	you went/you have gone	<i>du bist gegangen</i>
<b>3. Pers. Sg.</b>	<i>är/si/es isch ggange</i>	he/she/it went / he/she/it has gone	<i>er/sie/es ist gegangen</i>
<b>1. Pers. Pl.</b>	<i>mir sind ggange</i>	we went/we have gone	<i>wir sind gegangen</i>
<b>2. Pers. Pl.</b>	<i>ir sind ggange</i>	you went/you have gone	<i>ihr seid gegangen</i>
<b>3. Pers. Pl.</b>	<i>si sind ggange</i>	they went/they have gone	<i>sie sind gegangen</i>

The participle almost always begins with **g-** and ends with **-(e)t** (regular verbs) or **-e(-n)** (irregular verbs). Note that **g-** can merge with some sounds or even disappear altogether:

Sound	g- + Sound	Example		
<b>b-</b>	<b>p-</b>	bäle, pält	bark, barked	bellen, gebellt
<b>d-</b>	<b>t-</b>	dänke, tänkt	think, thought	denken, gedacht
<b>ch-</b>	<b>k-</b>	cheere, keert	sweep, swept	kehren, gekehrt
<b>p-</b>	<b>p-</b>	poltere, polteret	rumble, rumbled	poltern, gepoltert
<b>t-</b>	<b>t-</b>	tanke, tankt	fuel, fuelled	tanken, getankt
<b>k-</b>	<b>k-</b>	käne, kält	know, knew	kennen, gekannt

In participles with **-e(-n)** the vowel often changes as well. You have to memorize such forms. Mostly they are similar to Standard German, e.g., **binde, punde** 'tie, tied' like **binden, gebunden** or **flüüge, gflöge** 'fly, flew' very similar to **fliegen, geflogen**. Sometimes the Swiss German form is completely different:

Basic form	Participle	Basic form	Participle	Meaning
choo	choo	kommen	gekommen	come
enttüsche	enttosche	enttäuschen	enttäuscht	disappoint
haa	ghaa	haben	gehabt	have
mälde	gmolde	melden	gemeldet	report
nää	gnoo	nehmen	genommen	take
schimpfe	gschumpfe	schimpfen	geschimpft	rant
sii	gsii	sein	gewesen	be

For most auxiliary verbs, the participle in Swiss German is exactly the same as the basic form:

Basic form	Participle	Basic form	Participle	Meaning
chöne	chöne	können	gekonnt	can
dörfe	dörfe	dürfen	gedurft	may
müese	müese	müssen	gemusst	must/have to
söle	söle	sollen	gesollt	should
wele	wele	wollen	gewollt	want



# Exercises

## B1



Write the past tense (participle) of the given verbs in the correct column of the table.

choo / maale / rächne / schpile / wele / hälfe / sich entschpane / sii /  
dänke / troime / hocke / faare / müese

Haa	Sii

## B2



Put the following sentences in the past tense and translate:

Oisi Chind sind scho i de sächste Klass.

.....  
.....

De Fabio wott nöd i s Gimi.

.....  
.....

Mir sind seer shtolz uf iri Laischtig.

.....  
.....

Ich mues megavil lärne für s Düütsch.

.....  
.....

Ir sind i de Schuel imer echli am Troime.

.....  
.....



Form sentences with the following building blocks:

Mir	nöd gern	di beschte Noote	aa gfange
D Selin	mega-	schwirig	wele
D Lektion	geschter	d Uufnameprüeffig	gsii
De Fabio	imer	am halbi ahti	gschafft
D Mattiprüeffig	normaalerwiis	i s Gimi	ggange

Example: D Mattiprüeffig isch megaschwirig gsii.



## B4



Here you can see the timetable of Selin and Fabio.

### B4.1



Selin explains the timetable to her mother at home. Listen to the description and mark the subjects directly in the table that are new for you or that sound different in Swiss German.

	Montag	Dienstag	Mittwoch	Donnerstag	Freitag
<b>07:30-08:15</b>			NMG	Musik	Sport
<b>08:20-09:05</b>	Mathematik	Deutsch	Mathematik	NMG	Sport
<b>09:05-09:50</b>	NMG	Französisch	Deutsch	TTG	Sport
<b>10:15-11:00</b>	BG	Deutsch	Medien & Informatik	TTG	Französisch
<b>11:05-11:50</b>	BG	Musik	NMG	TTG	Mathematik
<b>Mittag</b>					
<b>13:40-14:25</b>	Bibliothek	Sport		NMG	Deutsch
<b>14:30-15:15</b>	NMG	Sport		Englisch	NMG

#### [be.lehrplan.ch](http://be.lehrplan.ch)

Here you can read, which subjects are taught in Swiss schools and the abbreviations used in the timetable above are explained.

K2 -  
Audio B4.1



## B4.2



Listen to the description again and answer these questions in Swiss German:



Which subject is Selin's favorite?

- Düütsch
- Schport
- Matti

What does she do on Wednesday afternoon?

- Si gaat i d Schuel, wi jede Taag.
- Si lärnt für d Schuel.
- Si gaat i s Fuessbaltraining.

Which topic is Selin's class currently dealing with in NMG?

- d Umwält
- s Wätter
- Religione

## B5



Talk about your school days using the past tense. The expressions in the box can help you.

I de Schuel hani am liebschte ... / bini am liebschte ...  
Mis Lieblingsfach isch ... gsii  
... hani nie gärn gmacht.  
Wo-n i öppe sächsi gsii bin, ...  
I minere Freiziit hani ... / bini ...

Notes:

# Deepen Your Knowledge

## C1



Read the dialogue:

### Wotsch wükli namal i d Schuel?

	<i>De Bereket und d Vanessa un- derhaltet sich bim Znacht.</i>	<i>Bereket and Vanessa have a conversation at dinner.</i>
<b>B:</b>	Los, ich han emal mit dir wele rede.	Listen, I wanted to talk to you.
<b>V:</b>	Ui, jetzt machsch es aber schpa- nend.	Oh, now you're making it exci- ting.
<b>B:</b>	Und zwar hani überlait ... ich wür gärn d Matur naahole.	Well, I was thinking... I would like to catch up on the Matura.
<b>V:</b>	D Matur, sicher? Wotsch wükli namal i d Schuel?	Matura, really? Do you real- ly want to go back to school again?
<b>B:</b>	Ja nai, das nöd diräkt. Aber ich han aifach kai Luscht mee uf min Job und wür gärn öppis Nois leere, zum Biischpil Ingenieur. Aber wän i wott schtudiere, bruuchi äbe zerscht d Matur.	Yeah, not exactly. But I just don't like to do my job any- more and would love to learn something new, for example engineering. But if I want to study, I need the Matura first.
<b>V:</b>	Das isch esoo, jaa. Das gaat dän aber rächt lang, nööd?	That is correct, yes. That takes quite a long time though, doesn't it?
<b>B:</b>	Ja genau, drüü Jaar duuret s mindeschtens.	Yes indeed, it takes at least three years.
<b>V:</b>	Chömmer ois das überhaupt laischte?	Can we even afford that?
<b>B:</b>	Waiss nöd, durum hani äbe wele luege mit diir. Me chan au näbe- bii wiiterschaffe, dän gaats no chli lenger, aber de Schtutz gaat nöd uus. Füzg Prozänt chönti sicher mache.	I don't know, that's why I wanted to talk to you. One can still work part-time alongside the studies, but then it takes a bit longer, but one doesn't run out of money. I could certainly keep working fifty percent.
<b>V:</b>	Hm, chönt scho länge dän. Aber sorry, ich mues mer das zerscht mal dur de Chopf la gaa. Aiget- lich gfalts mer, das du öppis Nois wottscht mache, aber äbe...	Hm, that might be enough then. But sorry, I need to think about it first. I actually like that you want to learn something new, but, well...
<b>B:</b>	Geesch, das isch doch scho mal en Aafang. Und de Rescht entschaidemer zäme, isch guet?	You see, that is already a start. We will decide all the rest together, okay?



# CH

# EN

# DE

## d Matuur

D Matuur hani mit linggs gmacht.

## Matura

Matura was easy for me.

## Matur

Die Matur habe ich mit links gemacht.

## schtudiere (hät gschtudiert)

Ich hett gärn gschtudiert, aber mini Eltere händ s nöd wele.

## to study

I would have loved to study, but my parents did not want me to.

## studieren

Ich hätte gern studiert, aber meine Eltern wollten es nicht.

## der Aafang (d Aafäng)

Ich ha der Aafang vom Film verpasst!

## beginning/start

I missed the beginning of the movie!

## Anfang

Ich habe den Anfang vom Film verpasst!

## de Rescht (d Reschte)

Daa, de Rescht chasch haa.

## the rest

Here, you can keep the rest.

## Rest

Hier, den Rest kannst du haben.

## duure (hät tuuret)

D Zuugfaart alai duuret drüü Schtund.

## to take (time)

The train ride alone takes three hours.

## dauern

Die Zugfahrt alleine dauert drei Stunden.

## naahole (hät naa gholt)

I däre Schtund bini chrank gsii. Ich mues de Schtoff no naa hole.

## to catch up on smth.

I was sick during the lesson. I need to catch up on the content.

## nachholen

In der Stunde war ich krank. Ich muss den Stoff noch nachholen.

## de Job (d Jöbs)

En guete Job isch vil wärt.

## job

A good job is worth a lot.

## Job

Ein guter Job ist viel wert.

## d\*e Ingenieur\*in (d Ingenieur\*inne)

Min Vatter isch Ingenieur gsii und hät überall Brugge poue.

## engineer

My father was an engineer and built bridges everywhere.

## Ingenieur\*in

Mein Vater war Ingenieur\* und hat überall Brücken gebaut.

## s Prozänt (d Prozänt)

Ich schaff im Momänt füzg Prozänt.

## percentage

I am currently working fifty percent.

## Prozent

Ich arbeite im Moment fünfzig Prozent.

## de Schtutz

Wisö isch am Änd vom Schtutz no so vil vom Monat voorig?

## money

Why is there so much of the month left at the end of the money?

## Geld

Wieso ist am Ende des Geldes noch so viel vom Monat übrig?

<b>uusgaa (isch uusggange)</b> Ois gaat glii s WC-Papiir uus.	<b>to run out of smth.</b> We will run out of toilet paper soon.	<b>ausgehen, sich leeren</b> Uns geht bald das Toilettenpapier aus.
<b>sich laischte (hät sich glaischtet)</b> So-n es tüürs Hotel chömer ois nöd laischte.	<b>to afford</b> We cannot afford such an expensive hotel.	<b>leisten</b> So ein teures Hotel können wir uns nicht leisten.
<b>sich underhalte (händ sich underhalte)</b> Mir zwai müend ois emal underhalte.	<b>to talk/discuss</b> The two of us need to talk.	<b>sich unterhalten</b> Wir zwei müssen uns mal unterhalten.
<b>entschaide (hät entschide)</b> Si hät sich entschide, im Uusland z schtudiere.	<b>to decide</b> She decided to study abroad.	<b>entscheiden</b> Sie hat sich entschieden, im Ausland zu studieren.
<b>dur</b> Als Chind simmer oft dur s Faischter i s Huus gschtige.	<b>through</b> As kids we would often climb through the window into the house.	<b>durch</b> Als Kinder sind wir oft durch das Fenster ins Haus gestiegen.
<b>näbebii</b> Si schtudiert und schafft näbebii.	<b>alongside</b> She studies and works alongside.	<b>nebenbei</b> Sie studiert und arbeitet nebenbei.
<b>diräkt</b> Si hät diräkt nach de Schuel aagfange schaffe.	<b>direct/directly/right after</b> She started working right after school.	<b>direkt</b> Sie hat direkt nach der Schule angefangen, zu arbeiten.
<b>aifach</b> S isch aifach ungrächt, das si imer gueti Noote überchunt!	<b>simple/simplely</b> It's simply unfair that she always gets good grades.	<b>einfach</b> Es ist einfach ungerecht, dass sie immer gute Noten bekommt!
<b>durum</b> Ich bi vercheltet. Durum hani au geschter nöd chöne choo.	<b>therefore</b> I have a cold. Therefore I could not come yesterday, either.	<b>deshalb</b> Ich bin erkältet. Deshalb konnte ich auch gestern nicht kommen.
<b>sicher</b> De Andrew isch sicher vo Kanada.	<b>for sure/definitely/certainly</b> Andrew is definitely from Canada.	<b>sicher</b> Andrew ist sicher aus Kanada.

---

**überhaupt**

Wiso isch überhaupt d Türe-n offe?

**at all/in the first place**

Why is the door open in the first place?

**überhaupt**

Wieso ist überhaupt die Türe offen?

---

**hm**

Hm, mir falt aifach sin Name nüm ii.

**hm**

Hm, I just can't remember his name anymore.

**hm**

Hm, mir fällt einfach sein Name nicht mehr ein.

---

**sorry**

Sorry, ich ha di nöd gsee!

**excuse me/sorry**

Sorry, I did not see you!

**Entschuldigung**

Entschuldigung, ich habe dich nicht gesehen!

---

**doch**

--

**doch**

If you think something is true, but your counterpart might have a different opinion - then you can confirm your point of view with your counterpart or ask them for feedback using **doch**: *Das isch doch guet, da müemer nüm diskutiere.* 'That's okay, we don't have to discuss it anymore', *Du bisch doch d Tsov, oder?* 'You're Tsov, aren't you?', *Das isch doch en Risebschiss,* 'That's a huge scam'.

---

**ui****oh, oh no****Ui, oh, huch**

Ui is used to express surprise: *Ui, isch das Buech schwäär!* 'Oh, the book is so heavy!', *Jetzt hät s mer di ganz Datei glöscht.* - *Ui nail!* 'Now the whole file has been deleted. - Oh no!'.

---

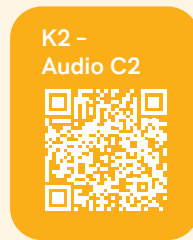
K2 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 1







Learn the new words for this section and then listen to the dialogue. Only after that, proceed to the exercises.



## CH

## EN

## DE

**d Primaarschuel (d Primaarschuele)**

I de Primaarschuel hani Matti am liebschte ghaa.

**primary school**

I enjoyed math the most in primary school.

**Primarschule**

In der Primarschule hatte ich Mathe am liebsten.

**s KLASSETRÄFFE (d KLASSETRÄFFE)**

Nach zää Jaar cha-n es KLASSETRÄFFE rächt intres-sant sii.

**class reunion**

After ten years a class reunion can be really interesting.

**Klassentreffen**

Nach zehn Jahren kann ein Klassentreffen recht interessant sein.

**d Uusbildig (d Uusbildige)**

Mini Uusbildig isch zimli lang ggange.

**education**

My education took quite a long time.

**Ausbildung**

Meine Ausbildung hat ziemlich lange gedauert.

**d Leer (d Leere)**

Mitere Leer chame schnä-ler aafa schaffe.

**apprenticeship**

With an apprenticeship, you can start working sooner.

**Lehre**

Mit einer Lehre kann man schneller anfangen zu arbeiten.

**de Bachelor**

Di maischte Bachelor gönd drüü Jaar.

**bachelor's degree**

Most bachelor's degrees take three years.

**Bachelor**

Die meisten Bachelor dauern drei Jahre.

**bruefflich**

Mini bruefflich Zuekunft gseeni nanig so ganz.

**professional**

I don't quite see my professional future yet.

**beruflich**

Meine berufliche Zukunft sehe ich noch nicht so ganz.

**de Schurnalismus**

En unabhängige Schurnalismus isch wichtig für d Demokratii.

**journalism**

Independent journalism is important for democracy.

**Journalismus**

Ein unabhängiger Journalismus ist wichtig für die Demokratie.

**s Marketing**

Du bisch e super Verchoiferin, gaan i s Marketing!

**marketing**

You are such a good salesperson, go into marketing!

**Marketing**

Du bist eine super Verkäuferin\*, geh ins Marketing!

**d Gärtnerei (d Gärtnerie)**

Die Gärtnerei isch uf Boim spezialisiert.

**Gardening/garden market**

This garden market is specialized in trees.

**Gärtnerei**

Diese Gärtnerei ist auf Bäume spezialisiert.

**d Abwächslig**

Min Job isch echli langweilig, ich bruuch mee Abwächslig!

**variety**

My job is a bit boring, I need more variety!

**Abwechslung**

Mein Job ist etwas langweilig, ich brauche mehr Abwechslung!

**de Kompis (d Kompis)**

Din Kompis isch schiints kaputt, de Bildschirm isch schwarz.

**computer**

Your computer seems to be broken, the screen is black.

**Computer**

Dein Computer scheint kaputt zu sein, der Bildschirm ist schwarz.

**verusse**

Verusse ischs hüüt zum Ässe-n echli chalt.

**outside**

It's a little cold to eat lunch outside today.

**draussen**

Draussen ist es heute zum Essen ein bisschen kalt.

**d\*e Scheff\*in (d Scheffe/Scheffine)**

Min Scheff isch en gmöigige.

**boss**

My boss is a nice guy.

**Chef\*in**

Mein Chef ist ein sympathischer Typ.

**de Schaafseckel (d Schaafseckel)**

De Schaafseckel hät mini Brüle vertrampet!

**asshole, idiot**

That idiot stepped on my glasses!

**Blödmann, Idiot**

Der Blödmann hat meine Brille zertreten!

**s KV (kaa-fau)**

The commercial apprenticeship is a very popular educational path in Switzerland after the secondary school B: *I de Schwiiz mached megavil Jugendluchi nach de Sek s KV.* 'In Switzerland, many young people do a commercial apprenticeship after secondary school.' A commercial apprenticeship serves as an entry point into many commercial professions.

**commercial apprenticeship****kaufmännische Lehre****ume sii**

Isch d Chiara au ume?

**be around**

Is Chiara also there?

**da sein**

Ist Chiara auch da?

**grinse (hät ggrinst)**

Was grinsisch so?

**to grin**

Why are you grinning like that?

**grinsen**

Was grinst du so?

**härzig (härziger)**

Jöö, das Büsi isch mega-härzig!

**cute/sweet**

Look, the cat is so cute!

**niedlich, süss**

Schau mal, die Katze ist total süss!

**der Egge (d Eggene)**

Da im Egge hät s Schtaub.

**corner**

There's dust in the corner here.

**Ecke**

Hier in der Ecke ist Staub.

**eender**

Morn isch schlächt, am Mittwoch wäär eender guet.

**rather/more likely**

Tomorrow is bad, on Wednesday it is more likely to be better.

**eher**

Morgen ist es schlecht, Mittwoch wäre besser.

**also**

Also, jetzt gömmer das amal dure.

**so**

So, now let's go through this.

**also**

Also, jetzt gehen wir das mal durch.

**halt****simply / just****halt**

If something is simply as it is, nothing can be done about it or there is nothing one can further elaborate on it, then you can say **halt** in the same sentence: **Das isch halt jetzt amal en Uusnaam!** 'This is simply an exception!', **Es Chind verschaat das halt nanig.** 'A child just does not understand it yet', **D Schwiiz isch halt bärgig.** 'Switzerland is mountainous'.

**vol****very****sehr**

**Vol** can reinforce and stress adjectives and verbs, similar to **mega-**: **Das isch vol tüür!** 'That is really expensive!', **Si isch vol am Schlaafe gsii** 'She was sleeping deeply'. When used alone, it expresses fullest agreement: **De Gänfersee isch scho megaschöön. - Ja vol!** 'Lake Geneva is very beautiful. - Yes, absolutely!'



# C2.1



True or false? Listen to the audio C2 "S Klassesträffe" again.



True      False

Lisa attended the *Sek*.

—

Thien also went to the class reunion.

—

Meryem does not like her boss.

—

Meryem believes that there are more and more jobs in marketing available.

—

Lisa likes her current work.

—

# C2.2



Answer the following questions in full sentences in Swiss German. If you want, you can listen to the text again.

Was für en Uusbildig hät d Lisa gmacht?

Was isch de Lisa im Job wichtig?

Was hät d Meryem shtudiert?

Wo schafft de Thien im Momänt?

# C2.3



Lisa, Meryem and Thien went down very different paths. Which of the three would you most like to be? Are you satisfied with your own path, or would you do something differently today - and if so, why? Find someone to discuss these questions with in Swiss German.

Notes:

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



## The Past: When Does One Use **haa** and **sii**?

In the grammar section, you got to know the past tenses with **haa** 'to have' and **sii** 'to be'. In this 'Deepen Your Knowledge' section, we will show you when to use which verb.

**Sii** is mainly used in the following cases:

- Movements from one place to another: **ich bi hai gloffe** 'I walked home', **mir sind mitem Auto gfaare** 'we went by car', **d Vaase-n isch abe gheit** 'the vase fell down'
- State changes that happen by themselves: **s lis isch gschmolze** 'the ice has melted' (change from solid → liquid), **de Luftballoon isch platzt** 'the balloon has burst' (change from intact → burst), **ire Vatter isch gschorbe** 'her father died' (change from alive → dead)
- Some emotional or physical changes that you cannot influence: **bisch verschrocke?** 'Did you get scared?', **ich bi verwachtet** 'I woke up', **si sind scho ii gschlaafe** 'they've already fallen asleep'.
- Four very common verbs with **sii** are **schtaa** 'to stand', **hocke** 'to sit', **ligge** 'to lie' and the verb **sii** 'to be' itself: **er isch genau deet gschtande** 'he stood right there', **ich bi ai Schtund lang ghockt** 'I sat for an hour', **mir sind jede Taag i de Sune gläge** 'we laid in the sun every day'.

For most other verbs, **haa** is used in the past tense.

Ich bin fascht  
am iischlaafe.



## C3.1



Number the sentences (1-9) in the correct order and connect the beginning of each sentence with the appropriate ending.

## C3.2



Underline all verbs that are formed in the past with *sii* with one color and all verbs with *haa* with another color.

As part of the project “+1 at the table” (see Unit 1), Hawi goes to his mentoring family for dinner every Thursday evening. At the dinner table, the mother asks Hawi what he has done today. He begins to talk about his day in Swiss German. Unfortunately, the order of his statements gets mixed up.

<input type="checkbox"/>	I de letschte Lektion im Döötsch händ	e Mattiprüeffig ghaa.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Am halbi sibni bini	mit Koleege i de Mensa ggässe.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Vor em Mittag hämmer	e halb Schtund i de prale Sune ume gränt.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Churz nach em sibni bini	en Snack ggässe und tuschet.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Am früene Aabig dihai hani	mer e Koleegin no bi de Ufzgi ghulfe.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Am Morge vo acht bis zääsimmer	zwei us de Klass no en Voortraag über es Buech ghalte.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nach de Schuel hät	uufgschtande und han mich paraat gmacht.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Am Mittag hani	mit em Bus i d Schuel gfaare.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Im Schport am Namittaag simmer	zwei Schtund i s Brueffsinformationszäntrum ggange.

# Graduation, Education and Higher Education

There are several schools that offer courses for adult secondary education:

[welcometoschool.ch](http://welcometoschool.ch)

[weiterbildung.ch/real-und-sekundaer-zugang-f%C3%BCr-erwachsene](http://weiterbildung.ch/real-und-sekundaer-zugang-f%C3%BCr-erwachsene)

If you are considering starting an apprenticeship, studies or further training in Switzerland, you will find a lot of information on the following website:

[berufsberatung.ch](http://berufsberatung.ch)

You can find more information on vocational training (for example, on an apprenticeship contract or professional qualifications for adults) here:

[berufsbildung.ch](http://berufsbildung.ch)

If you have children and want to find out more about compulsory schooling in Switzerland, you will find it here: [ch.ch/de/obligatorische-schule](http://ch.ch/de/obligatorische-schule)

PERSPEKTIVEN – STUDIUM provides information on access to higher education in Switzerland – for refugees who want to study and for people who can support them: [perspektiven-studium.ch](http://perspektiven-studium.ch)



Standard German is spoken almost exclusively in school lessons and often in training. But even here you can find examples of written Swiss German! Translate the Swiss German parts in the images below. Where are these texts likely to be found and who are they aimed at?



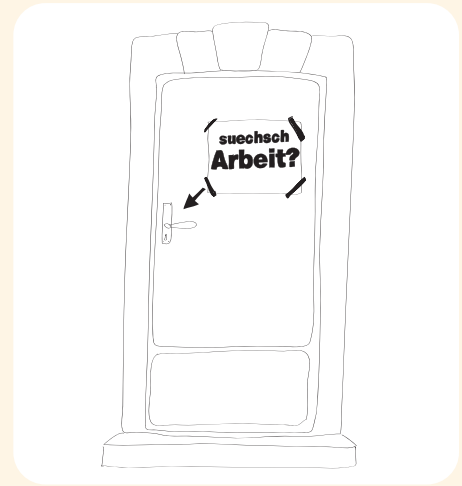

---



---



---



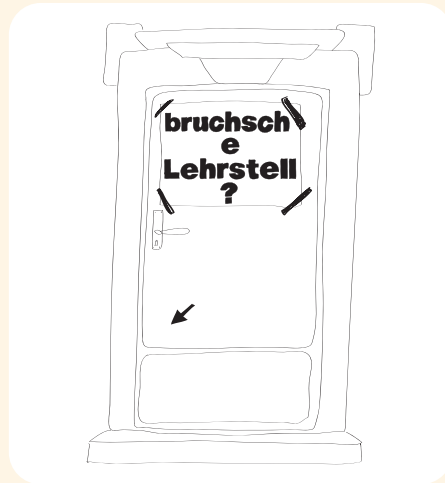

---



---



---




---



---



---




---



---



---

# Last but Not Least

Now you can test your knowledge to see if you meet the learning goals of this unit. Solve the exercises below and then check in the solution section and discover how many points you have scored. Here is our advice:

## Points

0-50	Better check out the unit again.
51-80	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
81-100	Great - proceed with the next unit right away!

## D1

### D1.1



Mi is talking about what will happen at school today. At the end of the day, you tell someone else about what she did today. Adjust the sentences on the right side accordingly. (2 points for each sentence)

## Experiences at School

### Example:

Hüüt schtaani uuf. → Hüüt ischsi uufgschtande.

Am Morge gaats mit Musig loos.

Dän isch Znüüni.

Nacher schriibemer e Düütsch-Prüeffig.

Für die muesi no lärne.

Hoffetlich wirdsi nöd so schwirig wi letschts Maal.

I de Mittagspause issi öppis.

Ich glaub, hüüt gits Spaghetti Bolognese zum Zmittag.

Am Nami hämmer Schport.

Da froii mi scho druuf!

Mir schpiled sicher wider Volleyball.



## D2.2



What did you do after school?  
Use the keywords on the right side to formulate different answers in Swiss German to this question (each in past tense first person singular, e.g. *Ich han es Buech gläse*). (2 points for each sentence)

(to) start an apprenticeship

(to) repeat the last grade

(to) move out from home

(to) continue to go to school

(to) travel around the world for a year

## D3

### D3.1



Cahaya und Urs are looking into further education opportunities on the Internet. The pages are all in Standard German, but they speak Swiss German with each other. Match the following headings and sentences to their comments. (2 points per pair of sentences)

## Initial and Further Education

### Phrase on the Website

- 1 Erwerben Sie die Berufsmatur in nur zwei Jahren
- 2 Korrekte Buchhaltung: die Grundlage für Ihren Unternehmenserfolg
- 3 Wir unterstützen Schüler und Schülerinnen auf dem Weg in die Selbständigkeit
- 4 Deutsch für den Berufsalltag mit persönlichem Coaching
- 5 Eidgenössische Fachausweise bringen Sie beruflich weiter!

### Commentary

- a Ich wür mi scho no gärn verbessere, vor alem bim Schriibe. Aber wisoo isch das so tüür?
- b Das töönt no guet, aber isch sicher megaschträng i däre churze Ziit.
- c Aa, das git s au no... Informaati-ker... technischi Chauffrau... das isch glaub wi-n en Bewiis, das d i dim Brueff guet bisch.
- d Das wär öppis für diich. Du häsch doch früener scho Rächlige und so Züügs gmacht, oder?
- e Ich glaub, da simmer jetzt bi-mene Gimi glandet, da simmer scho z alt imfal.

## D3.2



Connect the words that go together. (1 point each)

1 de Fachuuswiis

2 e Prüeffig

3 amene Kurs

4 d Matuur

5 Düütsch

6 s KV

7 es Handwärch

8 uf d Aabigschuel

9 es Praktikum

10 sich Computerkänntnis

a ablegge

b uuffrüsche

c erwärbe

d mache

e gaa

f naahole

g absolviere

h lärne

i aaaigne

j tailnäa

## D3.3



Read the text and answer the questions. (3 points for each correct answer)

Letscht Wuche hani min Läbenslauf aagluaet und überlait, was i chönt mache zum echli wiiterchoo. Irgende Wiiterbildig wäär sicher nöd schlächt, aber waas? I de Schwiiz gits so vil Möglichkaite! Mis Düütsch isch okay, aber viliicht sötti no en Tescht ablegge, damit me s au gseet, wän i mi noimed bewirbe. Aber was mer wükli fäält, isch das Kompi-Züügs. Ich bi froo, chani min Kompi ii- und uusschalte. Aber i jedere Aazaig lisi «Sie haben ein Flair für IT». Ich glaub, ich müest emal öppis für Büro-Software mache, da chumi überhaupt nöd druus. Also guet, dän muesi nur no usefinde, wo s Kürs git!

Was würi gärn mache?  Vo daa wägga  noii Möglichkaite entdecke

Wiso en Düütsch-Tescht?  Ich wais mis Niveau nöd.  Ich wett mis Niveau gärn zaige.

Was isch für miich wichtiger?  IT-Känntnis  Düütsch

I Büro-Software hani ...  z wenig Wüsse  Grundkänntnis

Ich lärn am liebschte ...  alai  imene Kurs





# 3. Work

## Learning Goals

### You're able to...

- ...make an appointment for a formal meeting over the phone.
- ...have a job interview.
- ...talk about various professions and career aspirations.

# Mir würed Si gern iilade

## A1

A few days ago, Aaron Scholz applied for a job as a professional child care provider. He is hoping to be invited to an interview. His cell phone rings. Read through the dialogue and listen to it.



K3 -  
Audio A1



A: Aaron Scholz.

D: Guete Taag, da isch Diaga.

A: Grüezi, Frau Diaga.

D: Si händ sich ja bi ois uf d Schtel als Fachmaa Betroi-  
ig beworbe. Als erschts muesi vilich fröoge, öb Si imer  
no intressiert sind?

A: Jaa, sicher!

D: Mir händ Iri Bewärbigsunderlage seer intressant  
gfunde und würed Si drum gärn zumene Bewärbigs-  
gspröoch iilade.

A: Oo, das froit mi natürlu seer!

D: Wän passts Ine am beschte? Wür Ine Ziischtig oder  
Mittwuchvormittag gaa?

A: Mittwoch wär guet für miich.

D: Dän machemer am Mittwoch am Viertel vor 9i, wän  
das für Sii in Ornig isch?

A: Jaa, das gaat mer guet, märsi vilmaal.

D: Mir würed s Bewärbigsgschpröoch dän z zwaite  
füere. Näbscht miir wird no mini Koleegin debii sii, wo  
für s Personal zueschtändig isch.

A: Mol, das isch doch supper, ich froi mich!

D: Also, dän simmer gschpant, Si känezlärne. En  
schöne-n Aabig no, Herr Scholz.

A: Märsi, gliichfals, ade Frau Diaga.

# Introductory Exercises

## A2



What is correct? Circle the right response(s)

1) Aaron and Miss Diaga are meeting ...

a  ... on Tuesday.

b  ... on Wednesday.

2) The meeting takes place ...

a  ... at 8.45 am.

b  ... at 9.15 am.

3) There will be ...

a  ... two people attending the meeting.

b  ... three people attending the meeting.

## A3



Aaron texts his friend Sebi after the conversation. Add the missing words.

**A:** Hoi Sebi! Si händ sich ändli bi mir gmolde und mich zumene .....  
iiglade! Und si händ gfunde, mini Bewärbigsunderlage seged seer  
.....

**S:** Hei, megaguet, froit mi für diich! Isch das die Schtel im Jugendträff,  
wo d dich druuf beworbe häsch?

**A:** Nai, das isch d Schtel als .....

**S:** A ja, das häsch mer gsait ghaa. Wän isch dän s Gschprööch?

**A:** Nööchsch ..... am .....

**S:** Ich wünsch der vil Glück und säg dän, wie s gloffe-n isch!

**A:** Märsi, ich schriib der dän.

Ich froi mi uf mis  
Bewärbigsgschprööch.



# Vocabulary

## CH

## EN

## DE

### d Schtel (d Schtele)

Häsch di scho uf d Schtel bi de Poscht beworbe?

### position

Have you already applied for the position at the post office?

### Stelle

Hast du dich schon für die Stelle bei der Post beworben?

### schaffe (hät gschaffet)

Was schaffsch du?

### to work

What do you do (for work)?

### arbeiten

Was arbeitest du?

### schträng (schtränger)

Din Job isch ja mega-schträng!

### exhausting, stressful

Your job is very stressful!

### anstrengend, stressig

Dein Job ist ja superstressig!

### s Bewärbigsgschprööch (d Bewärbigsgschprööch)

S Bewärbigsgschprööch gaat öppe driisg Minuute.

### interview

The interview will take about 30 minutes.

### Bewerbungsgespräch

Das Bewerbungsgespräch dauert ungefähr 30 Minuten.

### d Bewärbigsunterlage (Pl.)

D Bewärbigsunterlage schicksch au mitem Mail mit.

### application documents

Send the application documents also via email.

### Bewerbungsunterlagen

Die Bewerbungsunterlagen schickst du auch im Mail mit.

### d Zuesaag (d Zuesage)

Ich ha d Zuesaag für e supper Schtel überchoo.

### admission

I have received an admission for a great position.

### Zusage

Ich habe die Zusage für eine super Stelle bekommen.

### d Absaag (d Absage)

Mängisch en Absaag überchoo isch normal.

### rejection

It is normal to get a rejection sometimes.

### Absage

Manchmal eine Absage zu bekommen, ist normal.

### gschpanet

Mir sind gschpanet, dich känezlärne!

### curious/eager

We are eager to meet you!

### gespannt

Wir sind gespannt, dich kennenzulernen!

### iilade (hät iiglade)

Du chasch gärn dini Fründe zum Ässe-n ii lade.

### to invite

You can (are welcomed to) invite your friends over for a meal.

### einladen

Du kannst gerne deine Freunde zum Essen einladen.

### passe (hät passt)

Fals es am 3 nöd gaat, würs für miich au am 4i passe.

### to be fine / to fit

If 3 does not work, 4 (o'clock) would be fine for me as well.

### passen

Falls es um 3 Uhr nicht geht, würde es für mich auch um 4 Uhr passen.

**intressiert (intressierter)**

Mich intressiert am maischte d Abtailig mit de Pflanze.

**interested**

I am most interested in the section with the plants.

**interessiert**

Mich interessiert am meisten die Abteilung mit den Pflanzen.

**s Personaal (-)**

S Personaal wünscht sich mee Uswaal bi de Uniform.

**staff**

Staff would like more choices when it comes to the work-wear.

**Personal**

Das Personal wünscht sich mehr Auswahl bei der Uniform.

**zueschtändig**

D Koleegin isch für s Personaal zueschtändig.

**responsible**

The colleague is responsible for the staff.

**zuständig**

Die Kollegin ist fürs Personal zuständig.

**de Fachmaa (d Fachmäner)**

Als Fachmaa für Gsundhait muesch e langi Uusbildig mache.

**expert**

As a health expert, you have to go through a long period of training.

**Fachmann**

Als Fachmann für Gesundheit musst du eine lange Ausbildung machen.

**füere (hät gfüert)**

D Frau Glanz wird s Gschpröoch füere.

**to lead**

Miss Glanz will lead the conversation.

**führen**

Frau Glanz wird das Gespräch führen.

**d Betroiig (-)**

D Betroiig vo Chind isch mängisch schträng.

**care**

Childcare is sometimes exhausting.

**Betreuung**

Die Betreuung von Kindern ist manchmal anstrengend.

**de Jugendträff (-)**

I mim Quartier gits sit geschter en tole Jugendträff!

**youth club**

Since yesterday, there is a great youth club in my neighbourhood!

**Jugendtreff**

In meinem Quartier gibt es seit gestern einen tollen Jugendtreff!

**näbscht**

Näbscht mir wird no de Idris mitchoo.

**besides**

Besides me, Idris will come.

**neben**

Ausser mir wird noch Idris kommen.

**mol**

When someone assumes something that is wrong and you want to correct them in a quick manner, mol! is useful: **Du häsch gad kä Ziiit, oder? - Mol!** 'You do not have any time now, do you? - I do!', **I de Schwiiz dörffed Fraue nöd ab schtme. - Mol, dörffeds!** 'In Switzerland, women cannot vote. - Yes, they can!'. When a meeting is over and an agreement has been reached, you can say: **Mol, dän machemer das esoo!** 'Okay then, let's do it like this!'



# Grammar

In Swiss German, there are a number of things to keep in mind when talking to people you do not know or with whom you have formal dealings. The system is similar to standard German and other European languages, but there are also small differences. This grammar section deepens the knowledge from Book 1, Unit 3.1.

## Expressing Yourself Politely

When referring to the person you are talking or writing to, you have three pronouns to choose from:

CH	DE	EN	How many people?	Politeness
du	du	you	one	familiar/informal
ir	ihr	you	several	familiar/informal
Si	Sie	you	one or more	unknown/formal

These pronouns also contain their own possessive words, e.g., *dis Huus*, *oies Huus*, *Ires Huus*, and their own verb forms, e.g., *du machsch*, *ir mached*, *Si mached*. The formal form *Si* is used, for example, in the following situations:

- When you talk to someone you don't know on the street: *Wüssed Si, wo de Baanhoof isch?* 'Do you know where the train station is?'
- When you talk to people who have a specific role in the situation, e.g., seller, doctor, civil servant, bank employee: *Händ Si kä WC-Papiir me?* 'Don't you have toilet paper?', *Wo tuet s lne wee?* 'Where does it hurt?', *Füled Si bitte das Formulaar uus* 'Please fill in this form', *Ich wür dän für Si es nois Konto eröffne* 'I would then open a new account for you'.
- In the workplace, most people use *Si* in the beginning and change – depending on the company – to *du/ir* later. One often then says *Wämmer nöd Duzis mache?* 'Shall we use du with one another?'
- When you meet new people in your free time, most people start right away with *du/ir*: *Bisch öfters daa?* 'Do you often come here?'
- Adults say *du* to all children: *Wo sind dän dini Eltere?* Where are your parents? But children say *Si* to adults they don't know: *Ich find si nüm, dörft i äch Ires Natel bruuche?* 'I can't find them anymore, maybe I could use your phone?'

In most situations, you can use *du* and *ir*. Don't forget that even when speaking to multiple people, it's important to differentiate between *ir* and *Si*. If you e.g., ask your friends when they are free, you would always use *Wän gaat s oi?*, and never *Wän gaat s lne?*

## Polite Forms of Address and Greetings

Depending on whether you use **du/ir** (*duzen*) or **Si** (*siezen*) for someone, there may be change on how to use names and titles:

- **Du/ir** is almost always combined with the first name: **Olga, wo bisch?** 'Olga, where are you?'
- **Si** is almost always combined with salutation + last name: **Was mained Sii, Här Paudyal?** 'What do you think, Mr Paudyal?'

There are also different expressions for greeting and farewell:

- Using **du/ir**: for the greeting **hoi** or **halo**, for the farewell **tschüss** or **tschau**. **Halo** is a little more formal than **hoi**, so some people use it in combination with **Si** as well.
- Using **Si**: for the greeting **grüezi**, for the farewell **ade/adjö**, (*uf*) **widerluege** or newly **tschüss**. Even more polite than **grüezi** is **grüezi wool**.

These formulas are used when greeting or saying goodbye to a single person. If there are several people, you add a word, namely, **zäme** for **ir** (for example, **hoi zäme**, **tschüss zäme**) and **mitenand** for **Si** (for example, **grüezi mitenand**, **ade mitenand**).

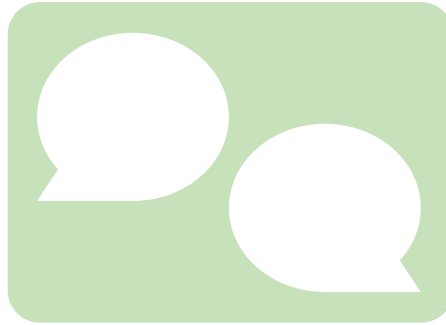


# Exercises

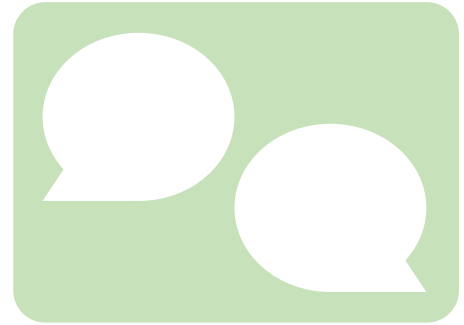
## B1



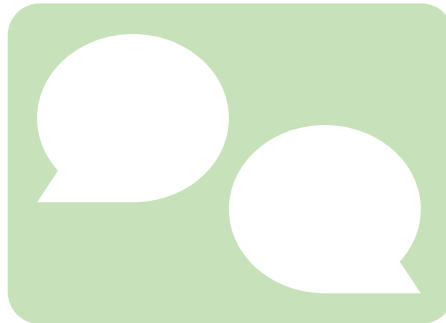
People in different relationships address each other differently. Write a suitable greeting/farewell form in each speech bubble and alternate between different forms. Where the name of the person is known, you can also include the salutation.



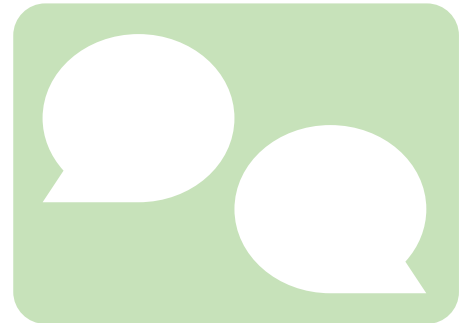
Teacher Rahwa Hussein greets second grader Donard Ismaili in the morning.



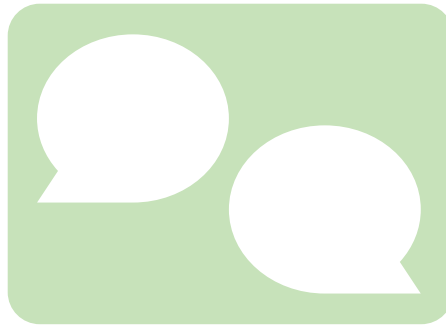
Tanja and Sia Goreva bought shoes in a shop. When they leave, the seller says goodbye to them.



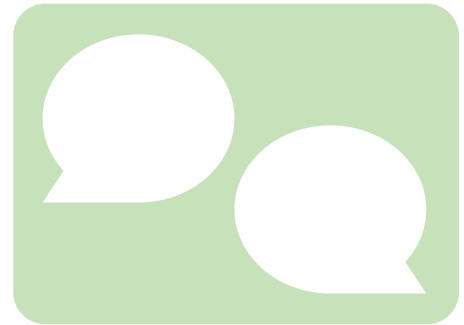
Fabio Moreira meets some friends.



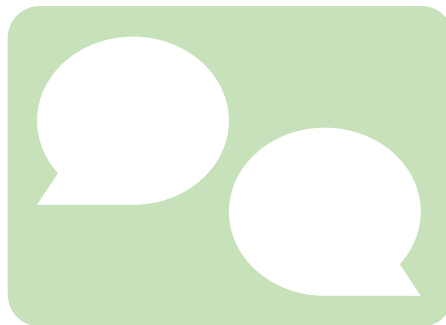
The boss of the company, Christina Hassan, welcomes her team to the meeting in the morning.



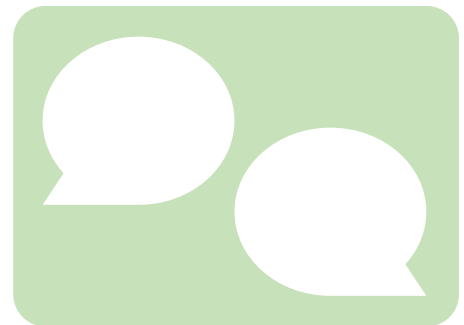
Sahid Faizi is at the post office counter to deliver a package. The employee's name tag says "Raul Marques".



Tina and Dani Amstutz are hiking in a lonely area. Then another couple comes towards them.



Laila Bucher says goodbye to her parents after a visit.



Aryia Sirimisetty ends a phone call with Rachel Martinez, whom he invited for an interview.



## B2



Put the verb in the correct form and add the pronoun.

- 1) Customer advisor to the customer: Da une (müese) \_\_\_\_\_ unterschriibe.
- 2) During the break among employees: (Wele) \_\_\_\_\_ au en Kafí?
- 3) Pjotr to his friend: \_\_\_\_\_ ja völlig verruckt (sii).
- 4) Team leader to their team: Märsi vilmaal, (haa) \_\_\_\_\_ ali supper Arbet glaischtet.
- 5) A woman at the bus stop: Tschuldigung, (chöne) \_\_\_\_\_ mir churz hälfe?
- 6) Seller to the buyer: (Zale) \_\_\_\_\_ baar oder mit de Charte?
- 7) Educator to the children in the day care center (Haa) \_\_\_\_\_ scho fártig ggässe?
- 8) Solveig to her brother Björn: Nööchschts Mal (usebringe) \_\_\_\_\_ de Güsel \_\_\_\_\_ !

## B3

### B3.1



Is there another way to say that? Choose a word from the box on the right.

## Sich bewärbe

d Bewärbigsunderlage	verantwortlich sii
sich bewärbe	d Schtel
iiglade wärde	imer no
sich go vorschele	intressiert sii

- 1) e Bewärbig abgää  
One can also say: \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) glängwiilet sii  
The opposite is: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) nüm  
The opposite is: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) d Verantwortig haa  
One can also say: \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) de Job  
One can also say: \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) s Bewärbigsdossier  
One can also say: \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) en Absaag überchoo  
The opposite is: \_\_\_\_\_
- 8) zum Vorschteligsgschprööch gaa  
One can also say: \_\_\_\_\_

## B3.2

3



Fill in the blank with the appropriate term.

- 1) Häscht di scho uf d \_\_\_\_\_ beworbe?
- 2) Är füert als Chef es Team mit 12 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3) Ich chan mich nööchscht Wuche go \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) Sind Sii immer no a oisem Aagebot \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5) D Personalchefin isch verantwortlich für s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) De \_\_\_\_\_ als Leererin passt perfekt zu dir!

## B4



In the evening, Albert talks to his roommate Elif. Read the dialogue and answer the questions. You can also look for a partner for this exercise.



- E** Hoi Albert, du bisch aber schpaat draa. S isch scho Viertel ab 7ni! Hät de Zuug Verschpöötig ghaa?
- A** Halo Elif, nai, ich ha de Zuug verpasst und e halb Schtund müese warte.
- E** A drum, defür isch s Ässe jetz scho fascht färtig. Wie isch din Taag gsii?
- A** Schträng. Hüt am Morge am sibni, wo-n i us em Huus bin, hät mer mini Chefin aaglüte, das e Mitarbeiterin chrank seg und ich alai zu zää Chind mues luege.
- E** Wow, das töönt aaschträgend!
- A** Jaa, ich bin de ganz Taag umegrännt und han zelt, ob ali Chind no daa sind. Und ais Chind isch no vercheltet gsii und hät de ganz Taag brüelt. Aber so isch de Job halt.
- E** Ich han mer au mal no überlait ghaa, mit Chind z schaffe, aber wän i diich so ghööre, vergaht mer d Luscht echli.
- A** Nai, la dich vo miir nöd la abschrecke, de Job hät au sini guete Siite. S isch imer öppis loos, wämmer mit Chind schafft, das gfalt mer no. Aber du bisch ja ee zfride mit dim Job, oder?
- E** Jaa, ich schaffe gärn bi de Bank. Ich bin eender en Bürogumi und mir gfaldet di underschidliche Uufgabeberich.
- A** Säg emal, wo isch aigetlich d Lou?
- E** Die hät doch hüüt Nachtdienscht im Schpitaal.
- A** Ja schtint, hani ganz vergässe. Das chönt iich nöd, imer so unregelmässig schaffe!
- E** Ich glaub, d Spaghetti sind färtig, wämmer ässe?
- A** Ja, ich han Hunger!

## B4.1

Um weli Ziiit gaasch duu normalerwiis us em Huus? Muesch au de Zuug oder de Bus nää? Wie gseet din Arbetstaag us und mit wäm redsch drüber?

---

---

## B4.2

Häsch s au oft schträng i dim Brueff? Was isch als Chind din Traumjob gsii - und was wüsch hüüt am liebschte mache?

---

---

## B4.3

Wie schaffsch duu am liebschte - häsch s lieber ruig oder häsch gärn öppis loos? Häsch lieber gregleti Arbeitsziite oder flexiibli - und häsch scho mal Schicht gschaffet? Bisch lieber dine oder verusse?

---

---



# Working in Switzerland

Working hours in Switzerland vary depending on the industry. In most jobs, however, 42 working hours per week and four to five weeks of vacation per year apply in a full time employment. If you work more, you can note the extra hours as overtime and get paid. In some sectors - especially in shift work - there is no fixed monthly salary at all, but billing is always based on the number of hours spent working. All employers have to pay social

benefits for their employees. However, the exact amount may differ. Some employers pay a 13th monthly salary at the end of the year. In Switzerland, it is possible to work part-time in many jobs. 80% part-time work means, for example, that you work 80% of the 100% working time and also earn 80%.

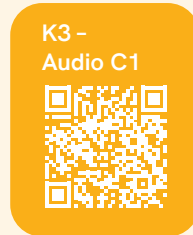
# Deepen Your Knowledge

## C1

### Ab wän wäred Si verfüegbar?



Wednesday at 8:45am – Aaron has his interview! Listen to it, and then check out the exercises C1.1 to C1.4.



## CH

## EN

## DE

### aagschtelt (-)

Si isch binere groosse Firma z Züri aagschtelt.

### employed

She is employed by a large company in Zurich.

### angestellt

Sie ist bei einer grossen Firma in Zürich angestellt.

### de Bscheid (d Bscheid)

Häsch scho Bscheid überchoo wäg dinere Bewärbig?

### decision

Have you already received a decision regarding your application?

### Bescheid

Hast du schon Bescheid wegen deiner Bewerbung bekommen?

### d Chündigungsfrischt (d Chündigungsfrische)

D Chündigungsfrischt sind normalerwiis drüü Mönät.

### notice period

The notice period is usually three months.

### Kündigungsfrist

Die Kündigungsfrist sind normalerweise drei Monate.

### diskutiere (hät diskutiert)

Mir händ de ganz Aabig diskutiert, aber kai gmain-sami Lösösig gfunde.

### to discuss

We discussed the whole evening, but didn't find a common solution.

### diskutieren

Wir haben den ganzen Abend diskutiert, aber keine gemeinsame Lösung gefunden.

### de Schluss (d Schlüss)

Wän machsch hüt Schluss im Gschäft?

### ending/closure

When are you leaving work today?

### Schluss

Wann machst du heute Schluss mit der Arbeit?

### verfüegbaar (-)

Ab wän sind Si verfüegbaar?

### available

When will you be available?

### verfügbar

Ab wann sind Sie verfügbar?

K3 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 1



## C1.1



Do you think the interview went well? Why?

Notes:

## C1.2



Listen to the text "Ab wän wääred Si verfügbar?" again. Tick the correct answers:

Trinkt de Aaron es Wasser?

jaa

nai

Was isch de Vorname vo de Frau Galli?

Stefanie

Melanie

Ab wän chönd de Aaron aafa schaffe?

ab em Juni

ab em Juli

Wivil Prozänt wüerer gärn schaffe?

60% (sächzg)

80% (achzg)

Bis wän gits de Bschaid?

morn

nööchscht Wuche

## C1.3



In the audio text, we left out the part between the beginning and the end so as not to make it too long. What questions might the company have asked here? Start with the examples on the right side - all you have to do is translate them into Swiss German. With a job of your choice in mind, you can also come up with answers.

- Why do you want to do this job? What is your motivation?

-----

- Where do you see your strengths? Can you give an example where this has helped you in previous jobs?

-----

- What are your weaknesses and how do you deal with them?

-----

- Where do you see yourself in five years?

-----

## C1.4



Can you think of any other questions? Formulate directly in Swiss German. Here, too, you can think of answers, if you have a specific job in mind.

Notes:



Read through the dialogue.

## Bruuched Si en Uushilf?

D Lemlem macht gad en Uusbildig. Näbebii wottsi echli Gäld verdiene und suecht drum en aifachi Arbet. Si fröögt zerscht iri Fründin, d Semhar.

**L** Du Semhar, waisch du, wo s gad Arbet git?

**S** Wisoo?

**L** Ich bi doch die Uusbildig am Mache und mis Gäld wird echli knapp. Bis i färtig bin, würi gärn öppis näbebii mache.

**S** Und waas?

**L** Irgendöppis wo me kä groossi Qualifikatione bruucht. Waisch, putze, Bouschtel, so öppis.

**S** Hm. Häsch scho mal an es Reschti tänkt, Service?

**L** Wiso nööd? Känsch da ais?

**S** Ich bi nöd sicher, aber i däm Kafi näbet em Alterszäntrum isch amigs megavil loos. Gaa doch det emal go frööge.

Am nööchschte Taag chunt d Lemlem is Kafi ine. Es isch zwai und nanig vil loos.

**R** Hoi!

**L** Grüezi! Min Name-n isch Lemlem Senai. Ich ha ghöört, Si chönted vilich en Uushilf bruuche.

**R** Ahaa, jaa, das chöntemer scho. Häsch dän scho mal Service gmacht?

**L** Nai, das wär mis erschte Maal. Aber ich ha gsee, das am Nami vil elteri Lüüt da ane chömed und das hät mer äbe gfale!

**R** Wie daas?

**L** Wüssed Si, ich mach gad en Uusbildig zur Pflägeri. Ich ha no gärn elteri Lüüt und chum au megaguet mit ine zrächt. Und ich waiss, die wartet nöd gärn uf ire Chueche! Wär sicher guet, wän i chli mithilfe.

**R** Also guet, probieremer s doch. Chasch ächt morn am 11i namal choo und din Läbeslauf mitbringe? Dän chömmer luege, öb s wükli passt und alefals no über s Ghalt rede. A jaa, und iich bi übrigens d Rosina, gäl.

**L** Okay, froit mi, Rosina! Supper, dän gseemer ois morn, märsi vilmal!

# CH

# EN

# DE

## s Alterszäntrum (d Alterszäntre)

I däm Alterszäntrum schafed über füzg Lüüt.

## retirement center

More than fifty people work in this retirement center.

## Alterszentrum

In diesem Alterszentrum arbeiten über fünfzig Leute.

## s Ghalt (d Ghälter)

Wie hööch isch s Ghalt bi dem Job?

## salary

What is the salary for this job?

## Gehalt

Wie hoch ist das Gehalt bei diesem Job?

## de Läbeslauf (d Läbesloif)

Ich mues no min Läbeslauf färtig schriibe.

## Curriculum Vitae/resume

I still have to finish my resume.

## Lebenslauf

Ich muss noch meinen Lebenslauf fertig schreiben.

## loos sii (isch ... gsii)

Und, isch am erschte Mai vil loos gsii oder wenig?

## going on

And, was there a lot going on on the first of May or not much?

## los sein

Und, war am ersten Mai viel los oder wenig?

## putze (hät putzt)

Ich putze s Baad ainisch pro Wuche.

## to clean

I clean the bathroom once a week.

## putzen

Ich putze das Bad einmal pro Woche.

## de Service (-)

Häsch du scho mal im Service gschaffet?

## (food) service

Have you ever worked in (food) service?

## Service

Hast du schon einmal im Service gearbeitet?

## d Uushilf (d Uushilfe)

Sueched Si im Momänt en Uushilf?

## temporary help (in an organisation)

Are you currently looking for temporary help?

## Aushilfe

Suchen Sie im Moment eine Aushilfe?

## gäl

## right

## gell

*Gäl* is always at the beginning or end of a sentence. You're asking for confirmation of something you're already pretty sure about: *Gäl, du chunsch morn au?* 'You're coming tomorrow too, aren't you?', *Die Öpfel sind fain, gäl* 'The apples are delicious, aren't they?'. If you address several people, the right form is *gäled* (*Das git dän aber z tue, gäled*. 'But then there is a lot to do, let me tell you that') and when you address someone with *Si, gäled Si* (*Gäled Si, ich han Ine das Rückgäld scho ggää?* 'I already gave you the change, didn't I?'). With *Sorry, gäl!* one apologises at the same time and asks for understanding.



### C2.1



Translate the conversation between Lemlem and Semhar into your language.

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

### C2.2



Have you ever thought about looking for a part-time job? Find a partner and agree on an industry. Then recreate a conversation like the one between Lemlem and Rosina, either in person or over the phone. Swap roles after one round.

Notes:

### C2.3



When Rosina sees Lemlem for the first time, she uses *du*, while Lemlem uses the *Sie* form for Rosina. Have you ever experienced a situation like this? What could be the reason for this?

-----

-----





## The Most Beautiful and the Best

If you want to express that something or someone is particularly beautiful or runs particularly fast, you use the superlative for the adjective. You already got to know forms like *isch am schöönschte* 'is the most beautiful' or *lauft am schnälschte* 'runs the fastest' in Book 1 (Unit 6.2).

In addition to this form, you can also combine the superlative with nouns, e.g., *di schöönschte Feerie* 'the most beautiful holiday', *de schnälscht Zuug* 'the fastest train'.

This form of the superlative changes like all other adjectives:

*de hööch(i) Bärg* 'the high mountain'

→ *de hööchst(i) Bärg* 'the highest mountain'

*die hööche Bärge* 'the high mountains'

→ *die hööchste Bärge* 'the highest mountains'

### C3.1



On the right side, various people share what excites them about their job. Put the adjectives in brackets in the superlative.



De (schpanend) \_\_\_\_\_ Tail vo däre-n Arbet isch für mich, mit so vilne underschidliche Lüüt in Kontakt z choo.

Für mich isch es s' (schöön) \_\_\_\_\_ Gfüül, wän d Gescht zfride sind.

Ich han di (guet) \_\_\_\_\_ Chefin - si bhandlet ois ali mega reschpächtvol und lost ois imer zue.

Au wän i als Fachfrau Betroiig nöd de (hööch) \_\_\_\_\_ Loon ha, liebi mini Arbet mit de Chind seer.

Ich bi aine vo de (jung) \_\_\_\_\_ Mitarbaitende bi ois im Büro, aber es reschpektiered mich ali mega.

Ich ha zwar de (lang) \_\_\_\_\_ Arbetswääg vo alne, bi aber gliich di erscht, wo am Morge-n im Schuelhuus isch. Ich gnüüsse daas, zur (ruig) \_\_\_\_\_ Ziiit vom Taag chame ganz anderscht schaffe.

Ziischtig und Mittwuch sind für mich imer di (schträng) \_\_\_\_\_

Tääg vo de Wuche, wil ich dän früe aafa schaffe und vil Sitzige haa.

Defür chocht am Mittaag d Helena für ali und es git imer es (fain)

\_\_\_\_\_ Ässe.

## CH

## EN

## DE

**bhandle (hät bhandlet)**

D Chefin bhandlet ois seer reschpäktvol.

**to treat**

The boss treats us very respectfully.

**behandeln**

Die Chefin behandelt uns sehr respektvoll.

**d Fachfrau (d Fachfraue)**

Si hät en Uusbildig als Fachfrau Betroiig.

**expert, specialist**

She is trained as a caregiver expert.

**Fachfrau**

Sie hat eine Ausbildung als Fachfrau Betreuung.

**de Gascht (d Gescht)**

Hüüt zaabig hämmer Gescht zum Znacht iiglade.

**guests**

Tonight we have invited guests to dinner.

**Gäste**

Heute Abend haben wir Gäste zum Abendessen eingeladen.

**de Loon (d Löönn)**

Si sind nöd zfride mit irem Loon und verlanged e Loonerhööchig.

**wage**

They are not satisfied with their wages and ask for a wage increase.

**Lohn**

Sie sind nicht zufrieden mit ihrem Lohn und verlangen eine Lohnerhöhung.

**reschpäktvol (reschpäktvoler)**

En reschpäktvole-n Umgang isch mer bsunders wichtig.

**respectful/with respect**

Treating people with respect is particularly important to me.

**respektvoll**

Ein respektvoller Umgang ist mir besonders wichtig.

**reschpektiere (hät reschpektiert)**

Wichtig isch, das mer ois gägesitig reschpektiered.

**to respect**

It is important that we respect each other.

**respektieren**

Wichtig ist, dass wir uns gegenseitig respektieren.

**d Sitzig (d Sitzige)**

Wän isch namal di nööchst Teamsitzig?

**meeting**

When is the next team meeting?

**Sitzung**

Wann ist nochmal die nächste Teamsitzung?

**defür****for that/about that****dafür**

When one thing doesn't work out, but another does instead; if you have to do something that you don't like or that means work, but you also get something good in return - then you use defür: *Schaad, rägnet s hüüt. Defür gfroied sich d Pflanze.* 'Too bad it's raining today. The plants are happy about that, though.' *Geschter hani namal müese lenger schaffe, defür nimi morn frei.* 'Yesterday I had to work longer, so I'll take tomorrow off.'



## C4



Read the text.

## Verschidnigi Brüeff

There are many professions that can be learned in Switzerland. Some require a degree and others require training, such as an apprenticeship. In order that you also know the most important professions in Swiss German, we have described some job descriptions for you here. In Swiss German, there is a male and a female term for almost every profession. Try reading the exercises first. If there are words you do not know yet, you can look them up below.

### C4.1



Match each description to the correct profession. In some cases, you need to adjust the gender, e.g. d *Büürin* 'the (female) farmer' - de *Buur* 'the farmer'. Attention, a few professions remain unmatched at the end!

1) Si schafft a de Kasse-n im Coop.

2) Är bringt d Poscht.

3) Si flüügt Flugzüüg uf Paris.

4) Är schniidt Haar.

5) Si behandellet chranki Tier.

6) Är repariert Autos.

7) Si bringt im Restaurant s Ässe.

8) Är verchauft Fleisch.

9) Si bacht Broot und Chueche.

10) Är schafft i de Schuel.

a) Mechaanikerin

b) Chälnerin

c) Beck

d) Pilotin

e) Chauffeur

f) Pöschterin

g) Coiffeur

h) Chöchin

i) Tierarzt

j) Leerer

k) Verchoifferin

l) Metzg

### C4.2



Do you know these professions? Describe their main task in a short sentence in Swiss German.

En Choch .....

E Schriinerin .....

E Schriftschtelerin .....

En Bouarbaiter .....

E Beamtin .....

En Profässer .....

## CH

## EN

## DE

**d\*e Becker\*in (d Becker\*ine)**

S Broot vo dere Beckerin isch aifach s Bescht!

**baker (female)**

This (female) baker's bread is simply the best!

**Bäcker\*in**

Das Brot dieser Bäckerin ist einfach das Beste!

**bache (hät pache)**

Tuesch gärn bache?

**to bake**

Do you like baking?

**backen**

Backst du gerne?

**s Brot (d Broot)**

Si chauffed s Broot imer bim Beck.

**bread**

You always buy the bread from the baker.

**Brot**

Sie kaufen das Brot immer beim Beck.

**de Chueche (d Chüeche)**

Wämmer am Wuchenänd en Chueche bache?

**cake**

Shall we bake a cake for the weekend?

**Kuchen**

Wollen wir am Wochenende einen Kuchen backen?

**d\*e Bouarbaiter\*in (d Bouarbaiter\*ine)**

Als Bouarbaiter muesch körperlich megafit sii.

**construction worker**

As a construction worker, you have to be very physically fit.

**Bauarbeiter\*in**

Als Bauarbeiter musst du körperlich sehr fit sein.

**d Bouschtel (d Bouschtele)**

Näb minere Wonig häts wider mal e Rise-Bouschtel, s isch so luut!

**construction site**

There's another huge construction site next to my apartment, it's so loud!

**Baustelle**

Neben meiner Wohnung hat es wieder einmal eine Riesenbaustelle, es ist so laut!

**d\*e Chälner\*in (d Chälner\*ine)**

Die Chälnerin hät au en schtränge Job!

**waitress**

This waitress has a demanding job too!

**Kellner\*in**

Diese Kellnerin hat auch einen anstrengenden Job!

**d\*e Verchoiffer\*in (d Verchoifer\*ine)**

Si schafft als Verchoifferin imene Chlaidlerlade.

**saleswoman**

She works as a saleswoman in a clothing store.

**Verkäufer\*in**

Sie arbeitet als Verkäuferin in einem Kleiderladen.

**verchauffe (hät verchaufft)**

Si hät mer ires Auto verchaufft.

**to sell**

She sold me her car.

**verkaufen**

Sie hat mir ihr Auto verkauft.

**d Kasse (d Kassene)**

Die wo i de Migros a de Kasse schaffed sind imer megafreundlich.

**cash register**

The people who work at the cash register at Migros are always super friendly.

**Kasse**

Die, die im Migros an der Kasse arbeiten, sind immer megafreundlich.

<b>d*e Metzger*in (d Metzger*ine)</b> Wän i Flaisch chauffe, dän nur bim Metzger!	<b>butcher (male)</b> When I buy meat, it's only from the butcher.	<b>Metzger*in</b> Wenn ich Fleisch kaufe, dann nur beim Metzger.
<b>s Flaisch (-)</b> Issisch du Flaisch?	<b>meat</b> Do you eat meat?	<b>Fleisch</b> Isst du Fleisch?
<b>d*e Mechaaniker*in (d Mechaaniker*ine)</b> Sin Vatter isch Mechaaniker inere Garaasch.	<b>mechanic</b> His father is a mechanic in an auto repair shop.	<b>Mechaniker*in</b> Sein Vater ist Mechaniker in einer Autowerkstatt.
<b>d*e Pfläger*in (d Pfläger*ine)</b> Pfläger*ine händ en schtränge-n Altaag.	<b>nurse (female)</b> Nurses have a demanding everyday life.	<b>Pfleger*in</b> Pfleger*innen haben einen anstrengenden Alltag.
<b>d*e Piloot*in (d Pilot*ine)</b> Wän i groos bi, wirdi Pilotin!	<b>pilot (female)</b> When I grow up, I will be a pilot!	<b>Pilot*in</b> Wenn ich gross bin, werde ich Pilotin!
<b>d*e Pöschtl*in (d Pöschtl*ine)</b> Isch d Pöschtl*in hüüt scho daa gsii?	<b>postman</b> Has the postwoman come today?	<b>Briefträger*in</b> War die Briefträgerin heute schon da?
<b>de Coiffeur/ d Coiffeuse (d Coiffeur)</b> Jesses, mini Haar sind so lang, isch sött schnäl-schtens zum Coiffeur.	<b>hairstylist</b> Oh dear, my hair is so long, I should go to the hairstylist as soon as possible.	<b>Coiffeur/ Coiffeuse</b> Oh je, meine Haare sind so lang, ich sollte schnellstens zum Coiffeur.
<b>schniide (hät gschnitte)</b> Ich sött wider emal go d Haar schniide.	<b>to cut</b> I should go get my hair cut again.	<b>schneiden</b> Ich sollte wieder einmal die Haare schneiden lassen gehen.
<b>d*e Schriiner*in (d Schriiner*ine)</b> Dää Sumer faatsi d Uusbildig zur Schriinerin aa.	<b>carpenter (female)</b> This summer, she will start an apprenticeship as a carpenter.	<b>Schreiner*in</b> Diesen Sommer fängt sie die Ausbildung zur Schreinerin an.
<b>repariere (hät repariert)</b> Chasch mer duu mis Velo repariere?	<b>to repair</b> Can you repair my bike for me?	<b>reparieren</b> Kannst du mir mein Velo reparieren?

**d\*e Schriftschtel\*er\*in (d Schriftschtel\*er\*ine)**

Sie hät scho imer wele Schriftschtel\*er\*in wärde.

**writer (female)**

She always wanted to be a writer.

**Schriftsteller\*in**

Sie wollte schon immer Schriftsteller\*in werden

**d Tierärztin\* (d Tierärztine)**

Als Chind hani wele Tierärztin wärde!

**vet (female)**

When I was a kid, I wanted to be a vet!

**Tierärztin**

Als Kind wollte ich Tierärztin werden!

**d\*e Chauffeur\*in (d Chauffeurine)**

Trämli-Chauffeur dunkt mi en easy Job.

**driver (male)**

Tram driver looks like an easy job to me.

**Chauffeur\*in**

Trambahn-Chauffeur sieht mir nach einem einfachen Job aus.

**d Duschi (d Duschene)**

Ui nai, i de Duschi chunt kä warms Wasser!

**shower**

Oh no, there's no hot water in the shower!

**die Dusche**

Oh nein, in der Dusche kommt kein warmes Wasser!



# Working in Switzerland

In order to be able to work long-term as a migrant in Switzerland, nationality and residence status play a central role. If these requirements are met, it is important to clarify questions such as sufficient knowledge of German, possibly diploma recognition and various training paths. Further information on this with many useful links can be found on the following information sheet or the following web-

sites:

[berufsberatung.ch/dyn/show/9192](https://berufsberatung.ch/dyn/show/9192)

[ch.ch/de/arbeiten-schweiz-als-auslander/](https://ch.ch/de/arbeiten-schweiz-als-auslander/)

[migrweb.ch/](https://migrweb.ch/) - on this website, migrants also provide other migrants with helpful information on everyday life and, among other things, on work in Switzerland in 18 languages.

## C5

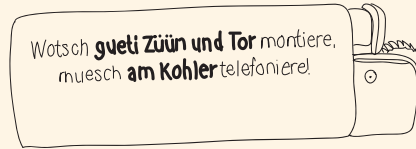
## Verschiednigi Firmene

### C5.1



On the right you can see some advertising slogans. Which companies or organisations do they belong to?

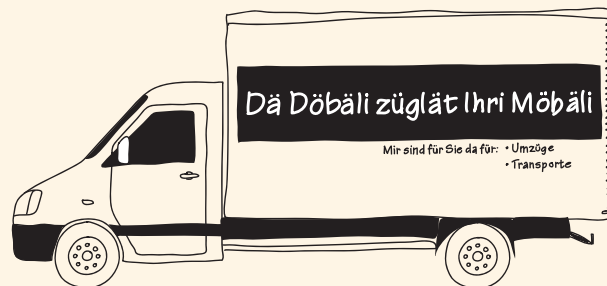
- a) moving company
- b) nonprofit organization
- c) fence manufacturer



1



2



3

### C5.2



What is the main information in the next picture? Do you think this business is a good or bad work place and why?

#### Öffnigsziitä:

Mäntig bis Früütig 5.30-19.00

Samschtig 7.30-17.00

Am Sunntig lömmer eusnö MitarbeiterInnä,  
wo Nachtschicht schaffed, Ziit für Fründä und Familiä

## A Typical Day at the Office

There are many office jobs in Switzerland. A typical office day starts at 8 a.m. and ends at 5 p.m. At noon there is usually a lunch break, which lasts between half an hour to an hour. Coffee breaks can be inserted in between. But not all office jobs

are structured the same way – in some cases, employees work on their computers from home at different times. In jobs which do not depend on the computer, this is, however, rarely the case.

# Last but Not Least

Now you can test your knowledge to see if you meet the learning goals of this unit. Solve the exercises below and then check in the solution section and discover how many points you have scored. Here is our advice:

## Points

0-50	Better check out the unit again.
51-80	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
81-100	Great - proceed with the next unit right away!

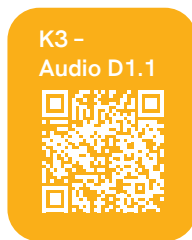
## D1

### D1.1



You get a call - it's about a job interview. Listen to one sentence at a time and then answer - ideally out loud! Depending on the sentence, you have to formulate, select or translate an answer. (3 points per sentence)

## Make an Appointment via Phone Call



- 1) Respond freely.
- 2) Pick: *Jaa, schtimt! / Oo, danke!*
- 3) Respond freely.
- 4) Pick: *Am Dunschtig Nami wür s mer gaa. / Am Friitig Nami chönti guet.*
- 5) Translate: *Eins ist ein bisschen früh. Geht es auch um drei?*
- 6) Pick: *Ja, deet am Baanhoof. / Ja, das isch de foift Mai dän.*
- 7) Translate: *Ich mich auch. Auf Wiedersehen, Herr Bhatia!*

### D1.2



Who is calling? Write down the appropriate greeting or farewell. (1 point per sentence)

#### 1) Your brother

Greeting: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2) Someone from the customer service

Farewell: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3) Video call for an interview with three participants

Greeting: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 4) Video call with two of your colleagues

Greeting: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 5) Your flatmate

Farewell: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 6) The interview from above is now over

Farewell: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 7) Your boss

Farewell: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 8) Pizza delivery

Greeting: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 9) Someone from the same German course

Greeting: \_\_\_\_\_



## D2

## Conduct a Job Interview

### D2.1



Find a partner who speaks Swiss German well. Imagine you are interested in a job and the other person invited you to an interview. First, briefly discuss (regardless of the language) which position and which company it is about. Have the conversation in Swiss German. At the end, your partner should rate you: 20 points if he/she understood everything well, 0 points if he/she didn't understand anything at all. Everything in between is also possible.

Notes:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

### D2.2



The Standard German sentences on the right side could come from a job interview. Can you also say them in Swiss German? Translate! (2 points per sentence)

- Das ist eine gute Frage.

---

- Ich finde sympathisch, dass Sie so viel für Familien machen.

---

- Nein, ich habe kein Problem mit Teamarbeit.

---

- Mir gefällt es einfach, wenn ich am Ende des Tages sehe, was ich geschafft habe.

---

- Ich würde gern 100% arbeiten.

---

- Ich könnte im August anfangen.

---





## D3.2



Some people introduce themselves and tell about their career aspirations. Listen to their statements and find out who it is about. Afterwards, tick the correct answers. (2 points per line)

K3 -  
Audio D3.2



Name	Current profession or place of work	Desired profession or place of work	Additional question - which statement is correct?
Faizal	<input type="checkbox"/> Parkhuus <input type="checkbox"/> Garage	<input type="checkbox"/> Ingenieur <input type="checkbox"/> Elektriker	<input type="checkbox"/> ... hät en nette Chef. <input type="checkbox"/> ... suecht no en Näbejob.
Jelena	<input type="checkbox"/> Schuel <input type="checkbox"/> Brueffsschuel	<input type="checkbox"/> Schuel <input type="checkbox"/> Brueffsschuel	<input type="checkbox"/> ... schafft gärn mit Chind. <input type="checkbox"/> ... plaant en Umschuelig.
Ali	<input type="checkbox"/> Kassierer <input type="checkbox"/> Filiallaiter	<input type="checkbox"/> Sälbschtändig <input type="checkbox"/> Chälner	<input type="checkbox"/> ... isst gärn Pomes. <input type="checkbox"/> ... lait Gäld uf d Siite.
Jacques	<input type="checkbox"/> Gmüeslade <input type="checkbox"/> Buurehof	<input type="checkbox"/> Masseur <input type="checkbox"/> Waiss es nanig	<input type="checkbox"/> ... hät Schmärze wäg sim Brueff. <input type="checkbox"/> ... schafft au am Aabig.
Pramila	<input type="checkbox"/> Versicherig <input type="checkbox"/> Huusfrau	<input type="checkbox"/> Versicherig <input type="checkbox"/> Leererin	<input type="checkbox"/> ... rächnet gärn. <input type="checkbox"/> ... mues iri Uusbildig zale.



# 4. Shopping and Food

## Learning Goals

### You're able to...

- ...communicate with the sellers at the grocery store.
- ...understand the Swiss-German designation of important food and dishes.
- ...communicate and exchange about some recipes with your friends while cooking together.

# Grüezi, was hetted Si gärn?

## A1

While doing groceries there is always something to ask. What do you need? Is it alright? How would you like to pay? Read through the following four purchase dialogues. You can as well listen to them.

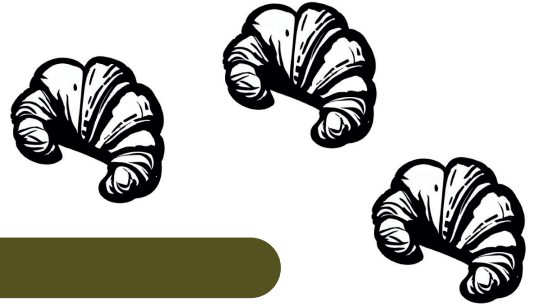


K4 -  
Audio A1



## Bim Beck

De Oleg isch bim Beck.



V: Grüezi, was hetted Si gärn?

O: Grüezi, ich hetti gärn zwai Gipfeli.

V: Seer gärn. Dörfs suscht no öppis sii?

O: Nai, danke, das isch ales.

V: Das macht dän 3 Franke 50. Händ Si d Quittig wele?

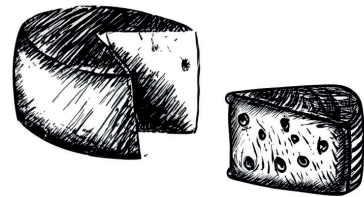
O: Nai, danke, die bruuchi nöd.

V: Merci vilmaal und en schöne Taag!

O: Danke, gliichfalls, adel!

## A de Chäästeeke

D Seda isch a de Chäästeeke-n am luege.



S: Grüezi, ich hetti gärn es Shtuck vom Appezäler Chääs.

V: Seer gärn. Wi vil dörfs sii?

S: Öppe 200 Gramm.

V: Isch so guet? Söli s esoo schniide?

S: Gärn no es bitzli mee. Jaa, so isch wunderbaar.

V: Das sind 220 Gramm. Das macht dän 5 Franke 40.

S: Danke vilmaal. En schöne Taag no!

V: Mersi, gliichfalls!

## A de Kasse

De Bikas isch a de Kasse zum Zale.



**V:** Grüezi.

**B:** Grüezi. Daas und e Role GÜselseck brüüchti no.

**V:** Sicher, vwala. Samled Si Boonuspünt?

**B:** Nai, tueni nöd. Aber chönti bitte no es Seckli haa?

**V:** Ja, klar, s choschtet alfech 5 Rappe.

**B:** Kais Problem, das zali doch gärn.

**V:** Dän wäreds 25 Franke 35, bitte. Zaled Si baar oder mit de Charte?

**B:** Gärn mit em Chärtli.

**V:** Da anehebe ... danke.

**B:** Ade, schööne Taag.

**V:** Mersi gliichfals, ade.

## Im Chlaiderlade

D Liridona hät e Fraag im Chlaiderlade.



**L:** Entschuldigung, händ Si däa Puli au i de Gröössi M?

**V:** Ain Momänt, ich luege gschwind im Lager naa. (...) Nai, laider nöd, aber mir chönted en bschtele, wän Si wänd?

**L:** Ja, seer gärn.

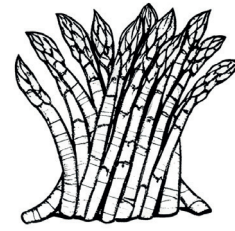
**V:** Er sött öppe inere Wuche daa sii. Mir lüüted Ine dän aa. Wie isch Iri Telefoonnumere?

**L:** Das wäär 075 725 56 63. Danke vilmaal, bis dän.

**V:** Danke-n au, bis bald!

## I de Frücht- und Gmües-Abtailig

D Raifah schtaat vor em Gmüesregaal und suecht Schpargle.



**R:** Tschuldigung, ich brüüchti Schpargle, händler im Momänt ekai?

**V:** Tuet mer laid, die händler im Momänt no kä Saison, Schpargle häämer erscht öppe-n ab April.

**R:** A ja klaar, die wachsed ja au nöd s ganze Jaar! No öppis anders. Ich han gsee, dass d Orangsche nümme-n esoo guet uusgseend, s hät es paari wo scho schimlig sind. Han tänkt, ich säge s lne lieber.

**V:** Ou ja, danke-n lne vilmaal, ich sortiere s dämfaal grad gschwind uus.

**R:** Wunderbaar, danke vilmaal und no en schööne Namittaag.

**V:** Danke, gliichfals.



# Introductory Exercises

## A2



Answer the questions as briefly as possible.

■ How many *Gipfeli* does Oleg buy?

■ What does Seda buy?

■ How does Bikas pay?

■ Can Liridona take the sweater with her immediately?

■ What is wrong with the oranges?

## A3



Who says what? Connect the sentences with the right person. "V" stands for "shop assistant"

- 1 Oleg
- 2 V: Beck
- 3 Seda
- 4 V: Chäästeeke
- 5 Bikas
- 6 V: Kasse
- 7 Liridona
- 8 V: Chlaidlerlade
- 9 Raifah
- 10 V: Früch und Gmües

- a Ich hetti gärn zwai Gipfeli.
- b Händ Si däa Puli au i de Gröössi M?
- c Mir lüüted Ine dän aa.
- d Gärn mit de Charte.
- e Gärn no es bitzli mee.
- f Wie vil dörf s sii?
- g Ich sueche d Schpargle.
- h Dörf s suscht no öppis sii?
- i Samled Si oisi Boonuspükt?
- j Die händ im Momänt no kai Saison.



# Vocabulary

## CH

## EN

## DE

### s Ai (d Aier)

Zum Zmorge hani gärn es Ai.

### egg (eggs)

I would like an egg for breakfast.

### Ei

Zum Frühstück mag ich gern ein Ei.

### d/de Butter (-)

Gonfi isch am beschte uf Butterbrot!

### butter

Marmalade works best with butter bread.

### Butter

Marmelade ist am besten auf Butterbrot!

### s Määl (-)

Brootmääl und Chuechemääl sind nöd s Gliche.

### flour

Bread flour and cake flour are not the same

### Mehl

Brotmehl und Kuchenmehl sind nicht dasselbe.

### s Gipfeli (d Gipfeli)

Sind die Gipfeli deet vo hüüt?

### croissant (croissants)

Are the croissants from today?

### Gipfel

Sind die Gipfel dort von heute?

### d Milch (-)

Si vertrait kä Milch, si überchunt Buuchwee de-vo.

### milk

She doesn't tolerate milk, she gets stomach ache.

### Milch

Sie verträgt keine Milch, sie bekommt Bauchweh davon.

### de Wii (d Wii)

Nimsch au chli Wii zum Ässe?

### wine (wines)

Would you also like some wine with the meal?

### Wein

Nimmst du auch ein bisschen Wein zum Essen?

### de Riis (-)

Riis wird sogaar i de Schwiiz aapout.

### rice

Rice is actually also grown in Switzerland.

### Reis

Reis wird sogar in der Schweiz angebaut.

### s Rüebli (d Rüebli)

Wän d Rüebli echli süess sind, händ si d Chind au gärn.

### carrot (carrots)

When the carrots have a sweet taste even children like them.

### Karotte

Wenn die Karotten ein bisschen süess sind, mögen sie auch die Kinder.

### d Zwible (d Zwible)

Bim Zwible-Schniide mueni amigs brüele.

### onion (onions)

While cutting onions, I always have to cry.

### Zwiebel

Beim Zwiebelnschneiden muss ich immer weinen.

### de Lauch (-)

Lauch gits fascht s ganze Jaar dure.

### leek

Leek is available almost the whole year.

### Lauch

Lauch gibt es fast das ganze Jahr über.

**d Linse (d Linse)**

Ich find, Linse bruuched  
imer echli Essig.

**lentil (lentils)**

I think that lentils always  
need a little vinegar.

**Linsen**

Ich finde, Linsen brauchen  
immer etwas Essig.

**d Schpargle (= Plural, kein Singular)**

Schpargle sind fain, aber  
tüür.

**asparagus**

Asparagus are delicious but  
expensive.

**Spargeln**

Spargeln sind fein, aber  
teuer.

**d Saison (-)**

Jetzt isch d Saison für  
Eppeeri.

**season**

Now is the season for straw-  
berries.

**Saison**

Jetzt ist die Saison für Erd-  
beeren.

**s Salz (-)**

Chasch mer s Salz gää? Ich  
bruuche-n imer echli mee.

**salt**

Can you give me the salt? I  
always need a little more.

**Salz**

Kannst du mir das Salz ge-  
ben? Ich brauche immer ein  
bisschen mehr.

**de Zucker (-)**

Nimsch au Zucker in Kaff?

**sugar**

Do you also add sugar to  
your coffee?

**Zucker**

Nimmst du auch Zucker in  
den Kaffee?

**d Soosse (d Soossene)**

I de Schwiiz gits vil Soos-  
sene mit Raam.

**sauce (sauces)**

In Switzerland there are  
many sauces with cream.

**Sauce**

In der Schweiz gibt es viele  
Saucen mit Sahne.

**fain (fainer)**

Findsch de Chueche fain?

**delicious (more delicious)**

Do you think the cake is  
delicious?

**lecker**

Findest du den Kuchen le-  
cker?

**s Päckli (d Päckli)**

Hoffetlich isch mis Päckli  
hüüt Morge gliferet worde!

**parcel (parcels)**

Hopefully my parcel was  
delivered this morning.

**Paket**

Hoffentlich wurde mein Paket  
heute morgen geliefert!

**s Seckli (d Seckli)**

Bruched Si es Seckli?

**a small bag (small bags)**

Do you need a small bag?

**Tüte**

Brauchen Sie ein Tüte?

**s Schtuck (d Schtuck)**

Wettsch no es Schtuck  
Chueche?

**piece (pieces)**

Would you like another piece  
of cake?

**Stück**

Möchtest du noch ein Stück  
Kuchen?

**s Gram (d Gram)**

Für daas Rezäpt bruuche-  
mer 500 Gram Määl.

**gram (grams)**

For this recipe we need 500  
grams of flour.

**Gramm**

Für dieses Rezept brauchen  
wir 500 Gramm Mehl.

**d Role (d Rolene)**

S isch wider emaal nume  
ai Role WC-Papiir voorig.

**roll**

Again, there is just one roll of  
toilet paper left.

**Rolle**

Es ist wieder einmal nur  
noch eine Rolle WC-Papier  
übrig!

<b>de GÜselsack (d GÜsel-seck)</b> Hämmer no GÜselseck oder söli noii chauffe?	<b>rubbish bag (rubbish bags)</b> Do we still have any rubbish bags or should I buy new ones?	<b>Kehrrechtsack</b> Haben wir noch Kehrrecht-säcke oder soll ich neue kaufen?
<b>d Abtailig (d Abtailige)</b> I welere-n Abtailig schaffsch?	<b>department (departments)</b> Which department do you work in?	<b>Abteilung</b> In welcher Abteilung arbeitest du?
<b>s Regaal (d Regaal)</b> Das Regaal gheit scho fasch usenand, dänk mir bruuched es nois.	<b>shelf (shelves)</b> This shelf is already falling apart, I guess we need a new one.	<b>Regal</b> Dieses Regal fällt schon fast auseinander, ich glaube, wir brauchen ein neues.
<b>d Gröössi (d Grössene)</b> Si brüüchtet bi däne Schue ai Gröössi chliiner.	<b>size (sizes)</b> You would need a size smaller for these shoes.	<b>Grösse</b> Sie bräuchten bei diesen Schuhen eine Grösse kleiner.
<b>s Lager (d Lager)</b> Händ Si no mee Grösse-ne uf Lager?	<b>warehouse (warehouses)</b> Do you still have more sizes on stock?	<b>Lager</b> Haben Sie noch mehr Größen auf Lager?
<b>zale (hät zalt)</b> Zaled Si baar oder mit de Charte?	<b>pay (paid)</b> Do you pay in cash or by card?	<b>zahlen</b> Zahlen Sie bar oder mit Karte?
<b>baar (-)</b> Chani baar zale?	<b>cash</b> Can I pay in cash?	<b>bar</b> Kann ich bar zahlen?
<b>de Franke (d Franke)</b> Das Broot choschtet 5 Franke!	<b>franc (francs)</b> This bread costs 5 francs.	<b>Franken</b> Dieses Brot kostet 5 Franken!
<b>d Quittig (d Quittige)</b> Bruuched Si d Quittig?	<b>receipt (receipts)</b> Do you need a receipt?	<b>Quittung</b> Brauchen Sie die Quittung?
<b>hebe (hät ghebt)</b> Heb emal churz des Päckli.	<b>hold (held)</b> Hold the parcel for a moment.	<b>halten</b> Halt mal kurz das Paket.
<b>samle (hät gsamlet)</b> Früener hätsi imer Schtai gsamlet.	<b>collect (collected)</b> Earlier she always used to collect stones.	<b>sammeln</b> Früher hat sie immer Steine gesammelt.
<b>sueche (hät gsuecht)</b> Chasch mer hälfe, en Job sueche?	<b>look for (looked for)</b> Can you help me look for a job?	<b>suchen</b> Kannst du mir helfen, einen Job zu suchen?

**uussortiere (hät uussortiert)**

Ich sött mini Medis wider emaal uussortiere, di maischte sind scho abgloffte.

**sort out (sorted out)**

I should sort out my pharmaceuticals, most of them have already expired.

**aussortieren**

Ich sollte meine Medikamente wieder mal aussortieren, die meisten sind schon abgelaufen.

**schimlig (schimliger)**

Häsch die schimlige Marronis duu kaufft?

**mouldy (mouldier)**

Did you buy these mouldy marrones?

**schimmelig**

Hast du diese schimmeligen Marroni gekauft?

**wäsche (hät gwäsche)**

Ich mues no schnäl mini Händ go wäsche.

**wash (washed)**

I have to wash my hands quickly.

**waschen**

Ich muss noch schnell meine Hände waschen gehen.

**halbieren (hät halbiert)**

Tüemer d Rächnig halbiere?

**halve (halved)**

Shall we halve the bill?

**halbieren**

Halbieren wir die Rechnung?

**würfle (hät gwürflet)**

De Tofu tuesch würfle und dän aabröötle.

**cube (cubed)**

Cube the tofu and then fry it.

**würfeln**

Den Tofu würfelst du und dann brätst du ihn an.

**umrüere (hät umgrüert)**

Bevoor de Chueche-n in Ofen tuesch, muesch d Mischig guet umrüere.

**stir (stirred)**

Before you put the cake in the oven, you have to stir the mixture well.

**umrühren**

Bevor du den Kuchen in den Ofen tust, musst du die Mischung gut umrühren.

**chnätte (hät knättet)**

De Taig für es Suurtaigbroot muesch wäärend Shtunde imer wider chnätte.

**knead (kneaded)**

The dough for a sourdough bread you have to knead again and again for hours.

**kneten**

Den Teig für ein Sauerteigbrot musst du während Stunden immer wieder kneten.

**voorhaize (hät voorghaizt)**

Isch de Ofen scho gnueg voorghaizt?

**preheat (preheated)**

Has the oven been preheated enough?

**heizen**

Ist der Ofen schon genug vorgeheizt?

**würze (hät gwürzt)**

Du würzisch s Ässe imer so fain, wie machsch das au?

**season (seasoned)**

You always season the meals very well, how do you do that?

**würzen**

Du würzt das Essen immer so lecker, wie machst du das bloss?

**dämfal**

When you have finished discussing something, you say **dämfal**, to confirm the result: **Dämfal gseemer ois morn 8i!** `So then, we will see each other tomorrow at 8!` Often the conversation ends like this: **Dämfal hämmer s glaub, oder?** So then, I think we've got it, haven't we? Therefore you can use these words even on their own to say goodbye.: **Dämfal, schööns Tägli no!** `So then, have a nice day!`

**then, so then, in this case****dann, ja dann, in dem Fall****vwala**

**Vwala** you say, if you hand someone something over, which he or she has already been waiting for: **Voila, da hettemer Ires Päckli!** `Here you go, this is your parcel`, **Voila, din noie Schlüssel** `Here, your new key. `Some people use it as well, if they have seen or heard something interesting, for what they themselves have been waiting for: **Voila, das isch jetzt aine vo de sältnerer Vögel!** `Ah, this is now one of the rare birds!`, **Voila, du häsch s erkänt** `Exactly, you got it (right).`

**voilà, here you go, there you go****voilà, bitteschön, na also**

# Grammar

In Swiss German there are, comparable to Standard German, rules in which composition words appear in a sentence. Following three rules are the most important:

1. In the first place of a sentence there is a subject, a person or a background information, in the second place the conjugated verb.
2. The order of the remaining parts of the sentence is relatively free. Already known information comes first, then new ones.
3. Certain parts of verb forms always come at the end of a sentence.

Let's have a closer look at this.

## First a Subject, Then a Verb

Subject, object and other parts of the sentence often appear in completely different places in German sentences. The secret: these terms are not that important in German! Instead, remember that in most sentences the subject comes first and then the verb follows. For example, the sentence **Ich schick der hüt es Päckli mit de Poscht** 'I'll send you a parcel by post today' can be rearranged as follows:

Thema	Verb	Rest
Ich	schick	diir hüt es Päckli mit de Poscht.
Hüt	schick	i der es Päckli mit de Poscht.
Diir	schick	i hüt es Päckli mit de Poscht.
Es Päckli	schick	i diir hüt mit de Poscht.
Mit de Poscht	schick	i diir hüt es Päckli.

No matter what the subject is - the verb always comes second! The meaning of the sentence always remains the same, only the focus changes.

## First the Familiar, Then the New

In longer sentences, things and people you have already talked about or that are known come first. They either come first in the sentence or as soon as possible after the verb. New topics or unfamiliar things and people, on the other hand, come later. You can see an example below. In sentence 1, a topic comes up. In sentence 2, this **topic** comes before other, new information.

### sentence 1

**Oisere Chatz** isch  
längwiilig.

'Our cat is bored.'

**De chlii Vogel** deet isch  
megafräch.

'The little bird there is  
very cheeky.'

### sentence 2

Hüt hätsi **ire aigeti Schwanz**  
gjagt.

'Today she chased her own  
tail.'

Hüt hät **en** scho oisi Chatz  
gjagt.

'Today our cat already  
chased him.'

### Sentence structure sentence 2

**Subject** (known) →  
**Object** (new)

**Object** (known) →  
**Subject** (new)

## The Best at the End

In Swiss German, verbs often form close connections with other words. These other words can be placed before or after the verb, directly next to it or very far away. Here we look at where they appear in main clauses. In unit 7, we will deal with how they behave in subordinate clauses.

In the following explanations and examples, you can recognize the **verb** and the **other words** by their color. Here are the most important cases:

- **Verb** + **word** like **ab** (**nimt ab** 'takes off') or **uuf** (**nimt uuf** 'takes on')
- **Verb** + **nöd** 'not': **schtimt nöd** 'is not true', **gaat nöd** 'does not work'
- **Auxiliary verb** + **past tense**: **isch ggange** 'has worked', **hät gschriben** 'has written'
- **Verb** + **infinitive** (with or without z): **cha lauffe** 'can run', **versuecht z lauffe** 'tries to run'



The **verb** form comes second in the sentence, as described above. However, **the other words** come at the very end - no matter how long the sentence is! Let's take a look at a few examples here too:

Subject	Verb (part 1. verb form)	...	Verb (part 2: remaining words)
Ich	nime	s Telefoon	ab.
'I pick up the phone'			
Ich	nime	der jetzt zersch emal dini Tasche	ab.
'First of all, I'll take your bag.'			

Subject	Verb (part 1. verb form)	...	Verb (part 2: remaining words)
Ich	waiss	es	nöd.
'I don't know it.'			
Ich	waiss	das ales imfal gar	nöd.
'I don't even know all that.'			

Subject	Verb (part 1. verb form)	...	Verb (part 2: remaining words)
Ich	ha	vorane no	gschlaaffe.
'I don't know it'			
Ich	ha	i de letschte Ziit, wil s imer so dunkel gsii isch, zimli vil	gschlaaffe.
'I've been sleeping quite a lot recently because it's always been so dark.'			

Subject	Verb (part 1. verb form)	...	Verb (part 2: remaining words)
Ich	wott	en Chueche	bache.
'I want to bake a cake.'			
Ich	wott	für d Mariko wider so-n en faine-n Öpfelchueche	bache.
'I want to bake another one of these delicious apple pies for Mariko.'			



# Exercises

## B1

### B1.1



Put the words in the correct order. The first block should always form the beginning of the sentence.

## Words in the Correct Order

1) Hüt / ich / i / gaa-n / d Bäрге

2) Ich / si / am ói / ab / hol / jede Taag

3) Am nööchschte Samschtig / ich / laider / nöd / cha-n

4) Ich / in / oft nöd / verschtaa-n

5) Wän s Wätter schön isch / mir / schpööter / en chliine Schpaziergang / wänd / go / mache

6) Ich / uusleene / dir / mis Skateboard / cha / gärn

7) Aachoo / si / sind / uf jede Fal

8) Är / geschter / isch / useggange / am Aabig / namal

9) Zum Schaffe / ich / bin / choo / geschter / nüme / rächtziitig

10) Ich / ii / boue / di noie Brämse / morn

## B1.2



Try to form as many variants as possible of the sentences 1, 6 and 9 from the exercise B1.1 by rearranging the words. Formulate a follow-up sentence for each variant that makes it clear in what kind of situation it may be used.

Subject (focus)	Verb	Rest	Example for context
Ich	glaub	das nöd.	S töönt aifech wie uustänkt.
Daas	glaubi	nöd.	Aber di ander Gschicht chönd scho waar sii.
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			

## B2



On the right you can see one sentence and two sentences that could follow subsequently and that are correct in themselves. But which variant fits better? Remember that known information comes first.

Context	1st variant	2nd variant
De Chueche isch ja wäg!	<input type="checkbox"/> Viliich hät en d Mara ggässe.	<input type="checkbox"/> Viliicht hät d Mara en ggässe.
Dää Beck macht di beschte Bröötli.	<input type="checkbox"/> Tüür ischer aber.	<input type="checkbox"/> Aber er isch tüür.
Wetted Si gärn es Seckli?	<input type="checkbox"/> Jaa, ich chönti scho es chliises bruuche.	<input type="checkbox"/> Jaa, es chliises chönti scho bruuche.
Wo chame daa Fisch chauffe?	<input type="checkbox"/> Fisch gits a däm Schtand deet hine.	<input type="checkbox"/> A dem Schtänd deet hine gits Fisch.
Ich sött es Pfund Broot haa.	<input type="checkbox"/> Gärn, schniide tueni s gad, isch guet?	<input type="checkbox"/> Gärn, ich tue s gad schniide, isch guet?
En schöne Taag. Vergäsed Si Ires Chärtli nöd!	<input type="checkbox"/> Ou jaa, des hetti fascht la ligge!	<input type="checkbox"/> Ou jaa, ich hetti des fascht ligge laa!



Put the word or words in brackets in brackets in the sentences next to them. The easiest way to do this is to mark the appropriate place with a small arrow. Vocalize the finished sentence once without looking at the page.

Ich glaub nöd. (*das ales*)

Bitte trink uus! (*jetzt dini Milch*)

Du chasch choo. (*gärn au zum Znacht*)

Er isch haiggange. (*scho am 8i*)

Si chunt nöd. (*wider emal*)

Chum, mir gönd no schnäl ine. (*i de Lade*)

Si händ glueged. (*di ganz Ziit uf d Uur*)

Ir losed zue. (*ois wenigstens*)

Höör uuf jamere! (*de ganz Taag*)

Mir händ abproche. (*des Projäkt*)

Si probiert z choo. (*a oisi Hochzig*)

S hät grägnet. (*geschter megavil*)

Das macht nüüt. (*mer infal gar*)

Machsch uuf, bitte? (*mer gschnäl d Tüüre*)



# B4

# Bim iichaufe

## B4.1



You will hear some words for food. Write them in Swiss German next to the matching picture.



-----



-----



-----



-----



-----



-----



-----



-----



-----



-----



-----

K4 - Audio B4.1

## B4.2



Link the food to the shop where it is most likely to be bought.

- Chlaidlerlade
- Suppermärt
- Metzg
- Kiosk
- Beck
- Chäästeeke

## B4.3



What do you buy where? Make sentences with the words from task B4.1 and say them out loud. Perhaps you can think of other foods and shops?

## B5

## B5.1



Read through the recipes and highlight all the terms related to food and shopping.

## B5.2



What are the most important things needed for the dishes? Select one of the texts and write a shopping list:

Examples:

**Broot:** S Broot chauffi bim Beck.

**Chlaidlerlade:** Im Chlaidlerlade chauffi en Puli.

## Lieblingsässe

Mis Lieblingsässe-n isch Schpagetti mit Tomaatesoosse. Ich isse des so gärn, wil s megaschnäl und aifach kochet isch, wämme im Shtress isch. Wämmer echli mee Ziiit hät, chame d Tomaatesoosse spezieler und uufwändiger mache. Dän chame no vil verschidnigs Gmües inetue und si lang la iichoche. Dezue chame entweder Parmesan gribе diräkt us em Sack nää oder de Parmesan a de Chäästeeke am Shtuck chauffe und sälber drüber raffle.

Mis Lieblingsässe-n isch Chueche. Ich bache seer gärn sälber. Wän öpper Geburi hät, bringi maischtens en Schoggichueche mit. Sälbergmacht isch natürli am fainschte. Aber bim Beck gits au seer gueti Chüeche. Ich han algemain gärn süessi Sache, zum Biischpil Guezli, Schoggigipfel oder Schoggischtängeli.

Mis Lieblingsässe-n isch Linsenaintopf. Dän tueni vil Gmües ine: Zwible, Rüebli, Lauch, Seleri oder was i suscht no im Chüelschrank finde und es bitzli Tschili. Mängisch hani gärn no Riis dezue, oft issi s aber aifech esoo.

### EINKAUFSLISTE

- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
-



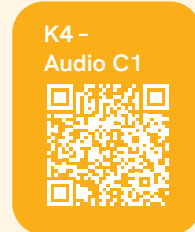
# Deepen Your Knowledge

## C1



Raffaella goes to the market to buy fresh fruit and vegetables for her flat share. It's Raffaella's turn and a clerk serves her. Take a look at the new vocabulary first and then listen to the dialogue together with the first exercise. Listen to the dialogue.

## Ufem Märt



## CH

## EN

## DE

### s Eppeeri (d Eppeeri)

Die Eppeeri sind no ganz grünen, die sind sicher nänig riiff!

### strawberry

These strawberries are still quite green, they are certainly not ripe yet!

### Erdbeere

Diese Erdbeeren sind noch ganz grün, die sind sicher noch nicht reif!

### de Öpfel (d Öpfel)

Uf em Märt gits mee verschidnigi Öpfelsorte.

### apple

On the market, you will find a wider variety of apples.

### Apfel

Auf dem Markt gibt es mehr verschiedene Apfelsorten.

### d Rabarbere (= Plural, kein Singular)

Was chame mit Rabarbere usser Chueche no mache?

### rhubarb

What can you make with rhubarb other than cake?

### Rhabarber

Was kann man mit Rhabarber ausser Kuchen noch machen?

### d Böle (d Böle)

Hämmer no Böle dihai?

### onion

Have we got onions left at home?

### Zwiebel

Haben wir noch Zwiebeln zuhause?

### de Champignon (d Champignons)

Die Champignons sind no ärdig, muesch wäsche.

### mushroom

The mushrooms are still muddy, you need to wash them.

### Champignon

Die Champignons sind noch erdig, die musst du waschen.

### de Chnobli (d Chnobli)

Mängi Lüüt händ Chnobli nöd gärn, wil er schtinkt.

### garlic

Some people don't like garlic because it has a strong smell.

### Knoblauch

Manche Leute mögen Knoblauch nicht, weil er stinkt.



<b>de Händöpfel (d Händöpfel)</b> Für e Rööschti bruuchtme kochti Händöpfel.	<b>potato</b> For a "Rösti", you need boiled potatoes.	<b>Kartoffel</b> Für eine Rösti braucht man gekochte Kartoffeln.
<b>d Oberschiine (d Oberschiine)</b> Ich find, Oberschiine sind grilliert am beschte.	<b>aubergine, eggplant</b> I think aubergines are best when grilled.	<b>Aubergine</b> Ich finde, Auberginen sind grilliert am besten.
<b>d Pepperooni (d Pepperoonis)</b> Chasch mer die Pepperooni chlii schniide?	<b>bell pepper</b> Would you chop these peppers for me?	<b>Paprika</b> Kannst du mir diese Paprika klein schneiden?
<b>de Pilz (d Pilz)</b> Wänn d Pilz wottsich go samle, muesch si guet käne.	<b>mushroom</b> If you want to go mushroom picking, you need to know them well.	<b>Pilz</b> Wenn du Pilze sammeln gehen willst, musst du sie gut kennen.
<b>d Rande (d Randene)</b> Wän d mit Rande chochsch, wird ales root.	<b>beetroot</b> If you cook with beetroot, everything turns red.	<b>Rande</b> Wenn du mit Randen kochst, wird alles rot.
<b>de Schpinaat (-)</b> Schpinaat mit Ai isch es schnäls Ässe.	<b>spinach</b> Spinach with egg is a quick dish.	<b>Spinat</b> Spinat mit Ei ist ein schnelles Essen.
<b>d Zuggetti (d Zuggettis)</b> Es git grüeni und gääli Zuggettis.	<b>courgette, zucchini</b> There are green and yellow courgettes.	<b>Zucchetto</b> Es gibt grüne und gelbe Zucchini.
<b>s Chrüütli (d Chrüütli)</b> Im Sumer chochi gärn mit früsche Chrüütli.	<b>herbs</b> In summer, I like to cook with fresh herbs.	<b>Kräuter</b> Im Sommer koche ich gern mit frischen Kräutern.
<b>de Peeterli (-)</b> Vom Peeterli chame au d Wurze-n ässe.	<b>parsley</b> You can also eat the roots of parsley.	<b>Petersilie</b> Von der Petersilie kann man auch die Wurzeln essen.
<b>de Bund (d Bünd)</b> Für daas Rezäpt bruuche-mer no en Bund Peeterli.	<b>bunch</b> We also need a bunch of parsley for this recipe.	<b>Bund</b> Für dieses Rezept brauchen wir noch einen Bund Petersilie.
<b>de Pfäffer (-)</b> Echli faad, ich wür säge, Pfäffer fäält.	<b>pepper</b> A little bland, I'd say pepper is missing.	<b>Pfeffer</b> Etwas lasch, ich würde sagen, Pfeffer fehlt.

**s Tschili (d Tschilis)**

Ich liebe Tschili, das git  
Für uf de Zunge!

**chilli, hot pepper**

I love chilli, it's like fire on the  
tongue!

**Chili**

Ich liebe Chili, das ist wie  
Feuer auf der Zunge!

**s Öl (d Öl)**

Z vil Öl vertrait min Mage  
nöd.

**oil**

My stomach doesn't take too  
much oil.

**Öl**

Zu viel Öl verträgt mein Ma-  
gen nicht.

**de Raam (-)**

I de Schwiiz hät me tradi-  
tionell vil Gricht mit Raam  
kochet.

**cream**

In Switzerland, many dishes  
have traditionally been co-  
oked with cream.

**Rahm**

In der Schweiz hat man  
traditionell viele Gerichte mit  
Rahm gekocht.

**de Taig (d Taig)**

Du chasch de Taig au ooni  
Aier mache.

**Teig**

Du kannst den Teig auch  
ohne Eier machen.

**Teig**

Du kannst den Teig auch  
ohne Eier machen.

**scharf (schärfer)**

Scharfs Ässe häter gar nöd  
gärn!

**hot, spicy**

He doesn't like spicy food at  
all!

**scharf**

Scharfes Essen hat er gar  
nicht gern!

**bitter (bitterer)**

Die Schoggi isch ja mega-  
bitter!

**bitter**

This chocolate is really bitter!

**bitter**

Diese Schokolade ist ja mega  
bitter!

**süesslich (süesslicher)**

Ich han lieber süessliche  
Öpfel.

**sweet, sugary**

I prefer sweet apples.

**süsslich**

Ich mag lieber süssliche  
Äpfel.

**suur (suurer)**

Si macht imer so-n e suuri  
Salaatsoosse.

**sour, acid, acidic**

She always makes such sour  
salad dressings.

**sauer**

Sie macht immer so saure  
Salatsaucen.

**süürlich (süürlicher)**

D Milch isch scho liecht  
süürlich, die trinksch bes-  
ser nüm!

**slightly sour**

The milk is already slightly  
sour, you better not drink it.

**säuerlich**

Die Milch ist schon leicht  
säuerlich, die trinkst du bes-  
ser nicht mehr.

**riiff (riiffer)**

Ändlich sind d Beeri i oi-  
sem Garte riiff!

**ripe**

Finally, the berries in our  
garden are ripe!

**reif**

Endlich sind die Beeren in  
unserem Garten reif!

**unriiff (unriiffer)**

Unriiffi Frücht ässe macht  
Buuchwee!

**unripe**

Eating unripe fruit gives you  
a stomach ache!

**unreif**

Unreife Früchte essen macht  
Bauchweh!

**saisonaal (saisonaaler)**

Ich chauff Gmües und  
Frücht imer saisonaal ii.

**seasonal**

I always buy seasonal fruit  
and vegetables.

**saisonal**

Ich kaufe Gemüse und Früch-  
te immer saisonal ein.

<b>härt (härter)</b> D Taigwaare müend no chli choche, si sind no ganz härt.	<b>hard</b> The pasta still needs to cook a little, it is still quite hard.	<b>hart</b> Die Teigwaren müssen noch ein bisschen kochen, sie sind noch ganz hart.
<b>waich (waicher)</b> Ou nai, itz sind d Taigwaare scho vil z waich worde ...	<b>soft, mushy</b> Oh no, now the noodles have become far too mushy...	<b>weich</b> Oh nein, jetzt sind die Nudeln schon viel zu weich geworden ...
<b>rund (ründer)</b> Ich han lieber rundi Chüssi als eggigi.	<b>round</b> I prefer round cushions to square ones.	<b>rund</b> Ich mag lieber runde Kissen als eckige.
<b>schpitzig (schpitziger)</b> Obacht, die Schtai sind megaschpitzig!	<b>pointed, sharp</b> Watch out, these stones are really sharp!	<b>spitzig</b> Achtung, diese Steine sind echt spitz!
<b>glatt (gletter)</b> Sini Haar sind ganz lang und glatt worde!	<b>smooth, straight</b> His hair has grown long and straight!	<b>glatt</b> Seine Haare sind ganz lang und glatt geworden!
<b>schrumplig (schrumpliger)</b> Die Öpfel sind scho chli alt, durum sindsi so schrumpelig.	<b>wrinkled, shrivelled</b> These apples are already a bit old, which is why they are so shrivelled.	<b>schrumplig</b> Diese Äpfel sind schon ein bisschen alt, darum sind sie so schrumpelig.
<b>glänzig (glänziger)</b> S Auto isch richtig glänzig jetzt, wo-n i s putzt han.	<b>gleaming, shining, shiny</b> The car is really shiny, now that I've cleaned it.	<b>glänzend</b> Das Auto glänzt richtig jetzt, wo ich es geputzt habe.
<b>d Hampfle (d Hampfle)</b> Jede Taag e Hampfle Nüss ässe isch gsund.	<b>handful</b> Eating a handful of nuts every day is healthy.	<b>Handvoll</b> Jeden Tag eine Handvoll Nüsse zu essen, ist gesund.
<b>d Schale (d Schale)</b> Vo Kütte chame d Schale nöd ässe.	<b>skin, peel</b> You cannot eat the skin of quinces.	<b>Schale</b> Von Quitten kann man die Schale nicht essen.
<b>de Gril (d Grils)</b> Ich ha mer en noie Gril kaufft fürs Gartefäscht am Wuchenänd.	<b>grill, barbecue</b> I bought a new grill for the garden party on the weekend.	<b>Grill</b> Ich habe mir einen neuen Grill gekauft für das Gartenfest am Wochenende.
<b>s Schpiessli (d Schpiessli)</b> D Schpiessli sind dure, wär wott ais?	<b>skewer, brochette</b> The skewers are done, who wants one?	<b>Spiesschen</b> Die Spiesschen sind gar, wer will eins?

## C1.1



Raffaella needs a lot of things!  
Listen to the dialogue again and  
write down what she buys and  
how much she buys (example:  
*foif Rüebli* 'five carrots').



Gmües:

---

---

---

---

---

Frücht:

---

---

## C1.2



Answer the following comprehension  
questions with a complete  
sentence:

Weli Gmües empfilt de Händler zum Grilliere?

---

Wiso nimt d Raffaela di grüne Schpargle?

---

Wiso bruucht d Raffaela Öpfel?

---

Was hetti d Raffaela fascht vergässe?

---

## C1.3



What do these quantities  
mean? Connect the right pairs.

1 e Hampfle

2 es Schäleli

3 en Bund

4 e Schale

5 es paar

a a bowl

b a handful

c a bunch

d some, a few

e a small bowl

## C1.4



Fruit and vegetables differ in flavour and appearance. On the right side you will find a few useful words. Choose four types of fruit or vegetables that you know and write down at least two suitable words for each.

### Taste

süess (sweet), süesslich (sweet, sugary)  
 suur (sour), süürlich (säuerlich)  
 scharf (scharf), mild (mild)  
 bitter (bitter)  
 früsch (fresh)  
 (un-)riif (un-)ripe

### Appearance

root, gääl, grüen (red, yellow, green)  
 rund (round), schpitzig (sharp)  
 lang (long), churz (short)  
 härt (hard), waich (soft)  
 glatt (smooth), runzlig (shriveled)  
 glänzig (shiny)

-----

-----

-----

-----

## C2



Read through the dialogue and pay particularly close attention to the sentence structure in interrogative clauses and imperative clauses. There is additional grammar on this topic on the right.

## Zum Mitnäa

David orders a kebab. He knows the owner of the place well, they are on familiar terms.

<b>B</b>	Hoi David, was laufft?	Hi David, what's going on?
<b>D</b>	Ales guet, aber han es Loch im Buuch!	All is well, but I'm starving.
<b>B</b>	Also was machemer?	So what would you like?
<b>D</b>	Machsich mer en Döner?	Would you prepare a kebab for me?
<b>B</b>	Für diich imer! Wottsch Zwieble, Tomaate, Chabis ...?	For you, always! Do you want onions, tomatoes, cabbage...?
<b>D</b>	Jaa, ales! Und tuen echli Tschili drii, ich bruuch gad öppis scharfs.	Yes, all of it! And put some chilli in it, I could do with some spice right now.
<b>B</b>	Machemer, Chef. Issisch en gad oder söl' en iipacke?	Sure, mate. Will you eat it straight away or should I wrap it up?
<b>D</b>	Nai, isch guet, ich iss en gad, aber gib mer no e Serviette. Mm, schmöckt scho so fain.	No, it's cool, I'll eat it straight away, but give me an extra napkin. Mmm, it smells so good already.
<b>B</b>	Bitte schön. Waisch ja, zää füfzg.	Here you go. You know, that's ten fifty.
<b>D</b>	Chani mit Charte zale?	Can I pay by card?
<b>B</b>	Jaa, lueg mis noie Gräätli!	Yes, look, my new device!
<b>D</b>	Hei, supper. Also, mach s guet!	Hey, great. Take care!
<b>B</b>	Mersi David, tschau!	Thanks, David. Bye!

## CH

## EN

## DE

**de Chabis (d Chabis)**

Chabis zum Zmorge isch Chabis.

**white cabbage, figurative: rubbish, nonsense**

White cabbage for breakfast is rubbish.

**Kabis**

Kabis zum Frühstück ist Blödsinn.

**s Loch im Buuch**

Ich ha de ganz Taag no nüüt ggässe, jetz hani es Riseloch im Buuch!

**"hole in the stomach" = to be hungry**

I haven't eaten all day, (now I have a big hole in my stomach) > now I am really hungry!

**Loch im Bauch**

Ich habe den ganzen Tag noch nichts gegessen, jetzt habe ich ein Riesenloch im Bauch.

**s Gräätli (d Gräätli)**

I oisere Chuchi hämmer jeenschti Chuchigräätli.

**device, utensil**

We have a variety of kitchen utensils in our kitchen.

**das Gerät**

In unserer Küche haben wir ganz verschiedene Küchengeräte.

**iipacke (hät iipackt)**

Häsch s Bilett iipackt?

**to pack, to bring, to have got**

Have you got the ticket with you?

**einpacken**

Hast du das Ticket eingepackt?

**schmöcke (hät gschmöckt)**

Mm, das schmöckt aber guet us de Chuchi!

**to taste, to smell**

Mmm, the cooking smells good.

**schmecken, riechen**

Mmh, das riecht aber gut aus der Küche!

**d Serviette (d Serviette)**

Dörfi no e Serviette haa?

**napkin**

Can I have an extra napkin?

**Serviette**

Kann ich noch eine Serviette haben?

**hei**

Hei, das wär imfal mis Zvieri gsii!

**hey**

Hey, that was supposed to be my afternoon snack!

**hey**

Hey, das war eigentlich mein Zvieri!

K4 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 2





## C2.2



On the right side you will see a few reactions that refer to the dialogue. Formulate appropriate questions in Swiss German.

----- ?  
 Er hät Hunger.

----- ?  
 en Döner

----- ?  
 ales

----- ?  
 mit de Charte

----- ?  
 «tschau»

## C2.3



When we want to be nice, in Swiss German we often ask instead of demanding something directly. For example, the request *Mach bitte s Faischter uuf!* can be formulated more politely as a question: *Machsch bitte s Faischter uuf?* or *Chasch bitte s Faischter uuf mache?* Fill in the missing forms in the table on the right. Pay attention to the difference between *du* and *Si*.

Request	Question
Gib mer bitte no es Seckli.	
	Chönd Si mir das bitte iipacke?
Laa de Chnobli wäg, bitte.	
Tüend Si bitte no chli mee Chääs druuf.	
	Braatisch s guet dure, bitte?
	Hei, schtönder bitte hine-n aa?





Listen to the dialogue.

Raffaella and her friend Esme haven't seen each other for a long time. Esme would like to invite Raffaella over for a meal. They phone to arrange a date the following week. As both of them have a lot going on, it's not that easy. Listen to the dialogue while looking at the first exercise.

K4 –  
Audio C3



## CH

## EN

## DE

**uufpasse (hät uufpasset)**

Ich mues daas Wuchenänd uf d Chatze vo mim Brüetsch uufpasse.

**to look after**

I have to look after my brother's cats this weekend.

**aufpassen**

Ich muss dieses Wochenende auf die Katzen meines Bruders aufpassen.

**denaach**

Zerscht braatisch d Böle-naa, denaach de Rescht vom Gmües.

**then**

Fry the onions first, then the rest of the vegetables.

**danach**

Zuerst brätst du die Zwiebeln an, danach das restliche Gemüse.

**de Diensch (d Diensch)**

Am Määntig bini nöd im Diensch.

**duty**

I'm not on duty on Mondays.

**Dienst**

Montags bin ich nicht im Dienst.

**eewigs**

I däm Restaurant muesch imer eewigs uf s Ässe warte.

**forever, for ages, an eternity**

In this restaurant you always have to wait for ages for your food.

**ewig**

In diesem Restaurant musst du immer ewig aufs Essen warten.

**irgendwie**

Irgendwie müemer die Türe doch wider uufbringe.

**somehow**

Somehow we have to get this door back open.

**irgendwie**

Irgendwie müssen wir diese Tür doch wieder aufbringen.

K4 –  
Zusatzwortschatz 3



### C3.1



While listening, fill in Raffaella's and Esme's agendas (time and appointment in each case). If you are unsure how to read the time in Switzerland, refer to Book 1, Unit 5.2.

K4 - Audio C3

Raffaella

WOCHENPLAN KALENDERWOCHE 34						
MONTAG	DIENSTAG	MITTWOCH	DONNERSTAG	FREITAG	SAMSTAG	SONNTAG

Esme

WOCHENPLAN KALENDERWOCHE 34						
MONTAG	DIENSTAG	MITTWOCH	DONNERSTAG	FREITAG	SAMSTAG	SONNTAG

### C3.2



When and where do Raffaella and Esme meet?



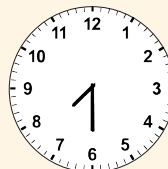
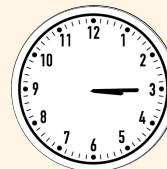




---

### C3.3



You hear some more times. Match them to the clocks displayed by noting the appropriate numbers.

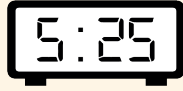
K4 - Audio C3.3

 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>
 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>

## C3.4



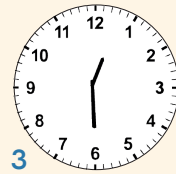
Someone asks you: «*Was isch für Ziit?*». Say the following times in Swiss German. Start the sentence like this: *Es isch ..*



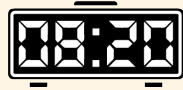
1



2



3



4



5

## C3.5



Like Raffaella, you invite someone over for a meal. Write a message in Swiss German with all the important elements (greeting, when, where, whether or not to bring something, closing).

A large, empty, light green speech bubble shape intended for writing a message in Swiss German.

# Eating at Other People's Homes

In Switzerland, it is customary to bring something when you are invited, such as a bottle of wine or flowers. When toasting with a glass of wine, champagne or even non-alcoholic drinks, people look each other in the eye, say "zum Wohl!" and usually repeat their appreciation for the invitation.

An invitation to a meal can mean that the hosts spend a long time in the kitchen preparing an appetif, a main course and a dessert. But it can also be more casual and they serve something simple like spaghetti with tomato sauce.

Eating habits vary in Switzerland. Some people eat vegetarian or vegan, others kosher or halal. There are also various food intolerances, such as to lactose or gluten, or allergies to nuts and other foods. So if you are inviting friends over for a meal, it is worth asking if there is anything you need to be aware of when cooking.





Esme is invited to Raffaela's for dinner. After an aperitif with olives and puff pastry, they have a vegetable lasagne and a salad. Esme is delighted and asks Raffaela how to prepare the lasagne.

Read through the dialogue.

- 
- E** Mm, die Lasagne isch megafain. Wie häsch die gmacht?
- 
- R** Danke, froit mi, das es gärn häsch. Also, muesch öppe-n es halbs Kilo Zuggetti fin schiible und mit echli Salz, Pfäffer und Chrüütli würze. Dän tuesch Pilz schiible und mit Zwible und eme Bund Peeterli in Öl aabröötle. I d Soosse chunt en halbe Litter Milch, grafflete Chääs und chli Muskatnuss. Die Soosse haisst Béchamel. Am Schluss schichtisch aifech Lasagnebletter, Gmües und d Béchamel abwächsligswiis übereinand und schtroisch no chli Parmesan drüber. E halb Schtund in Ofen und scho färtig. Isch au uupraktisch zum Voorberaite. S Rezäpt isch vo Betty Bossi, ich cha s der gärn schicke, wän d wilsch.
- 
- E** O jaa, seer gärn! Ich tuen au gärn Sache-n im Ofen mache, dän hätme scho chli Zitt zum Uufruume, wäärend s Ässe-n im Ofen isch. Zum Biischpil machi oft Pide zum no Reschte-n Uufbruuche. Du chasch en Pizzataig nää, tailsch en uuf, rolsch d Schtückli ovaal uus und belaisch vo de Mitti häär, zum Biischpil mit voorigem Chääs, Gmües, Flaisch - was halt gad dihai häsch. Bruucht nur e Viertelschtund im Ofen.
- 
- R** Das töönt supper, muesi unbedingt au mal probiere. Han amigs nöd so Idee'e, was i mit Reschte söl mache, dän isch so öppis supper.
- 
- E** Ja vol! S git übrigens au es Chochbuech, des haisst «**Kochen unter 5 Franken**». Deet häts nur Rezäpt dine, wo d für ali Zuetaate zäme nöd mee als 5 Franke zalsch! Es paar Rezäpt händs au gratis uf irere Websiite under [joelundmuriel.ch/pages/kochen-unter-5-fr](http://joelundmuriel.ch/pages/kochen-unter-5-fr).
- 
- R** Wua, töönt megaguet, das luegi mer nacher grad aa!
- 



## CH

## EN

## DE

**belegge (belait, hät belait)**  
Mit was wottscht du d Pizza belegge?

**to top, to put**  
What will you put on the pizza?

**belegen**  
Womit willst du die Pizza belegen?

**raffle (hät grafflet)**  
Mir müend für de Salaat no d Rüebli raffle.

**to grate**  
We also have to grate the carrots for the salad.

**raffeln**  
Wir müssen für den Salat noch die Karotten raffeln.

**d Schiibe (d Schiibene)**  
Häsch au e Schiibe Broot wele?

**slice**  
Would you also like a slice of bread?

**Scheibe**  
Möchtest du auch eine Scheibe Brot?

**schiihle (hät gschiihlet)**  
Iri Chind hälft ire imer bim Gmüesschiible.

**to chop**  
Her children always help her chop the vegetables.

**in Scheiben schneiden**  
Ihre Kinder helfen ihr immer beim Gemüse in Scheiben schneiden.

**voorberaite (hät voorberaitet)**  
Ich han ales voorberaitet, d Gescht chönd choo.

**to prepare**  
I have prepared everything, the guests may come.

**vorbereiten**  
Ich habe alles vorbereitet, die Gäste können kommen.

**uusrole (hät uusgrolt)**  
Am Schluss muesch de Guezlitaig nur no uusrole.

**to roll out**  
Then all you have to do is roll out the biscuit dough.

**ausrollen**  
Am Schluss musst du nur noch den Keksteig ausrollen.

**uufruume (hät uufgruumt)**  
Geschter hämmer di ganz Wonig gründlich uufgruumt.

**to tidy (up), to clear up**  
Yesterday, we thoroughly tidied the whole flat.

**aufräumen**  
Gestern haben wir die ganze Wohnung gründlich aufgeräumt.

**s Ässe (d Ässe)**  
Am liebschte hani indischs Ässe.

**food**  
My favourite food is Indian.

**Essen**  
Am liebsten habe ich indisches Essen.

**s Rezäpt (d Rezäpt)**  
Häsch mer s Rezäpt vo dinere berüemte Lasagne?

**recipe**  
Would you give me the recipe for your famous lasagne?

**Rezept**  
Kannst du mir das Rezept von deiner berühmten Lasagne geben?

**d Zuetaat (d Zuetaate)**  
Für daas Rezäpt bruuchsch nume foif Zuetaate.

**ingredient**  
For this recipe, you only need five ingredients.

**Zutat**  
Für dieses Rezept brauchst du nur fünf Zutaten.

**s Kilo (d Kilos)**  
Händ Si mir es Kilo Här-döpfel, bitte?

**kilo**  
Would you give me one kilo of potatoes, please?

**Kilo**  
Könnten Sie mir ein Kilo Kartoffeln geben, bitte?

**de Litter (d Litter)**

Pro Taag söttme mindesch-  
tens 1 Litter Wasser trinke.

**litre**

You should drink at least 1  
litre of water a day.

**Liter**

Pro Tag sollte man mindes-  
tens 1 Liter Wasser trinken.

**d Mitti (-)**

De Tisch schtaat i de Mitti  
vom Raum.

**middle, centre**

The table is in the middle of  
the room.

**Mitte**

Der Tisch steht in der Mitte  
des Raums.

**de Ofe (d Öfe)**

Si schtelt de Ofe uf 180  
Grad ii.

**oven**

She sets the oven to 180  
degrees.

**Ofen**

Sie stellt den Ofen auf 180  
Grad ein.

**praktisch (praktischer)**

Di noi Funktion bi däm Ra-  
dio isch megapraktisch!

**convenient, practical, handy**

The new feature of this radio  
is very convenient!

**praktisch**

Die neue Funktion bei die-  
sem Radio ist sehr praktisch!

**d Websiite (d Websiitene)**

Uf däre Websiite häts uuvil  
Wärbig, des närfst.

**website**

There are so many ads (ad-  
vertisements) on this web-  
site, it's annoying.

**Webseite**

Auf dieser Webseite ist so  
viel Werbung, das nervt.

**s Biischpil (d Biischpil)**

Er isst am liebschte Frücht,  
zum Biischpil Öpfel oder  
Aprikoose.

**example**

His favourite food is fruit, for  
example apples or apricots.

**Beispiel**

Er isst am liebsten Früch-  
te, zum Beispiel Äpfel oder  
Aprikosen.

**voorig (-)**

Isch no Ässe voorig?

**left (over)**

Is there any food left?

**übrig**

Ist noch Essen übrig?

**öppe****about, approximately,  
roughly****etwa, ungefähr**

*öppe* is used in two different ways. On one hand, it describes an approximate specifica-  
tion: *Ich han hüüt öppe scho vier Kafis trunke* 'I have already had about four cups of coffee  
today'. On the other hand, it is used for probable events: *Es gaat öppe scho* 'It will be fine /  
it is going to work out somehow'.



### C4.1



Which words in the dialogue C4 were new to you? Form 4-5 sentences using the new words.

Four sets of horizontal dashed lines for writing.

### C4.2



Now it's your turn: Invite one or more friends to do some cooking and explain to them what they need to do. First, think of a dish - whether it's an old family recipe or instructions from the internet, it doesn't matter. As a first exercise, write down all the ingredients in Swiss German and think about how you can explain how to use them. When you meet, you can briefly summarise the dish you are going to cook at the beginning. You will give the individual instructions when the time comes. *En guete!*

Multiple sets of horizontal dashed lines for writing.



# Food Waste and Reusing Leftovers

Many grocery shops and catering businesses have to throw away enormous quantities of food every day, which would still be edible. More and more projects are tackling this overproduction and the issue of food waste. Here are some projects in Switzerland that bring leftover or discarded food back to the people in the fight against food waste:

- **“Too good to go” ([toogoodtogo.com](https://toogoodtogo.com)):** App that allows you to reserve leftover food in your neighbourhood at a discounted price, pick it up and save it from going to waste.
- **“Äss-Bar” ([aess-bar.ch](https://aess-bar.ch)):** Project with various locations throughout Switzerland, which sells baked goods from bakeries from the previous day at a reduced price. Some bakeries directly offer bread from the previous day, which is still ideal for eating or otherwise for many delicious bread dishes.
- Ideas for reusing leftovers: [restegourmet.de](https://restegourmet.de), app **“Zu gut für die Tonne”**
- **“Essen für alle”** is an association that distributes food every week in Zurich to people living at or below the minimum subsistence level. Most of the food donated is food that would otherwise end up in the rubbish bin. [essenfueralle.org](https://essenfueralle.org)
- **“Foodsharing”** is an international organisation that is also active in Switzerland and works with businesses that donate surplus food. Members of Foodsharing collect the food for their own use, distribute it or place it in “Fairteiler” – publicly accessible refrigerators. [foodsharing.network](https://foodsharing.network)
- **“Madame Frigo”**: In various cities throughout Switzerland, there are publicly accessible refrigerators where people can put food that is still good but no longer needed. Other people can then take out what they need. [madamefrigo.ch](https://madamefrigo.ch)

Such projects have two major advantages: on one hand, they tackle food waste and on the other hand, they support people with limited financial resources.



## So fain, wie häsch das gmacht?

## C5.1



Many restaurants and food stalls use Swiss German, especially if they are more casual. Find the part in Swiss German on the signs and translate it.




---

---

---

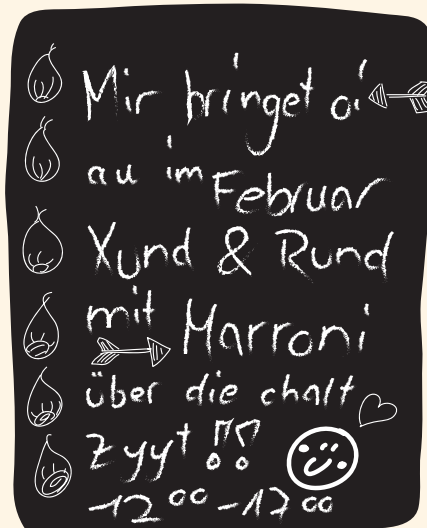
---

---

---

---

---




---

---

---

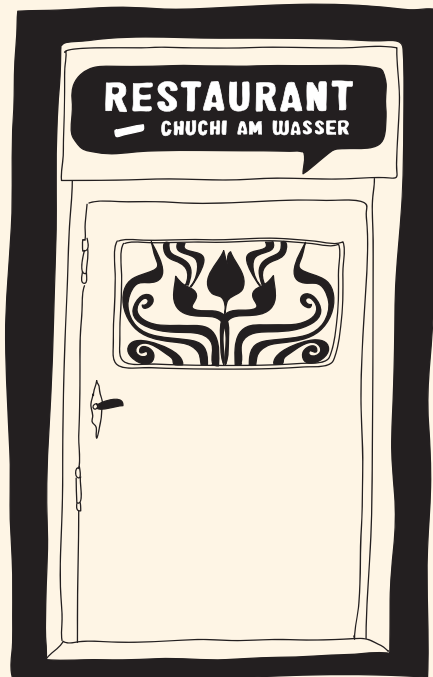
---

---

---

---

---




---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## C5.2



Here is the entire range of goods in Swiss German. Match the words (1 to 6) to the goods (a to f)! How do you normally say G'Hopfz (Ghopfts) ?

-----

And how would you spell *Burger* to reflect the Swiss German pronunciation?

-----



a



b



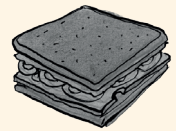
c



d



e



f



## C5.3



This sign is close to the dialect. What would you say in dialect - and how in German-speaking countries outside Switzerland?

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



# Last but Not Least

Now you can test your knowledge to see if you meet the learning goals of this unit. Solve the exercises below and then check in the solution section and discover how many points you have scored. Here is our advice:

## Points

0-50	Better check out the unit again.
51-80	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
81-100	Great - proceed with the next unit right away!

## D1

### D1.1



Match the questions with the appropriate answers. The questions come from shop assistants as well as from customers. (1 point per pair)

## Communicate With the Shop Assistants

1	Was dörfs sii?	a	Ja, suscht gaats kabutt.
2	Was isch daas dada?	b	Foif achzg.
3	Händ Si au Münz?	c	En Zopf hetti gärn.
4	Was choschtet s Kilo?	d	Ged deet bim Chääs.
5	Chönted Si des iipacke?	e	Nai, ich chume gad vom Bank-omaat!
6	Seckli wele?	f	Nai, bi ois laider nöd.
7	Egsgüsi, wo isch äch da d Hefe?	g	Das sind huusgmacht Biberli.
8	Gits das au als bio?	h	Jaa, mir fäält nume no ais!
9	Mues das in Chüelschrank?	i	Danke, ich han e Täsche debii.
10	Märkli samled Si?	j	Gärn. Langts Ine-n esoo?

### D1.2



How does the sentence structure change in interrogative and imperative clauses? Rewrite the sentences.

Das sind Zwätschge.

Question: .....

Si gänd mer es Kilo vo däne.

Imperative: .....

Gaats ois esoo?

Declaration: .....

Isch de Zopf günschtiger worde?

Declaration: .....

Si händ kä Broot mee.

Question: .....

Chönted Si mir des iipacke, bitte?

Imperative: .....

## D2

## Food and Dishes

### D2.1



What is this called? Write the correct word below each drawing. (1 point per drawing)



1

.....

Einheit: .....



2

.....

Einheit: .....



3

.....

Einheit: .....



4

.....

Einheit: .....



5

.....

Einheit: .....



6

.....

Einheit: .....



7

.....

Einheit: .....



8

.....

Einheit: .....



9

.....

Einheit: .....



10

.....

Einheit: .....

### D2.2



How is this measured? Write the measurements from the box next to the matching food items above and translate them. (1 point per drawing)

es Päckli/ es Glaas/ e Schtange/ es Schäleli/ en Laib/ en Bund/  
e Tafle/ en Sack/ e Hampfle/ e Fläsche

## D2.3



What characteristics does this have? Combine each food with a suitable adjective. At the end, each word may only be connected to one other word. (1 point each)

- 1 Guezli
- 2 Pfäffer
- 3 Öpfel
- 4 Nuss
- 5 Oberschiine
- 6 Butter
- 7 Rindfleisch

- a härt
- b glatt
- c root
- d süess
- e scharf
- f waich
- g rund

## D3

## D3.1



The kitchen dialogue on the right side is mixed up. Number the sentences in the correct order. (2 points per sentence)

- Isch guet.
- Chani der öppis hälfe?
- Das isch lieb vo dir.
- So, färtig. Und jetzt?
- Jetzt fiin schiible und nacher uuf d Siite tue.
- Ui, du häsch ja scho aagfange.
- Also lueg, die Härdöpfel daa chasch mer schele.
- Bisch ja megaschnäl.

## Talk About Recipes While Cooking

## D3.2



Listen to the text for this exercise. It is about a recipe. Then answer the questions. (3 points per answer)



## Chochrezäpt

Um weles Gricht gaats?

-----

Wivil Gramm nimtme pro Chopf?

-----

Wän wirts z gräämig?

-----

Was passiert, wänme z wenig umrürt?

-----

Was bruuchtme zum das Gricht chöne-n ässe?

-----

## D3.3



Find a partner who speaks Swiss German well. Explain to him/her a dish that you recently cooked. Then ask your partner to evaluate you: 20 points are awarded if your partner understood everything well, 0 points if they didn't understand anything at all. Anything in between is also possible.

Notes:

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----





# 5. Living space

## Learning Goals

### You're able to...

- ...get information about available apartments and participate in apartment viewings.
- ...give and understand instructions when moving to an apartment/a house.
- ...talk about topics that come up when living in a shared flat.

# Ich sueche-n e WG

## A1

*Living space wanted! Rooms or apartments can also be searched for or found in Swiss German. You can also listen to all of the following advertisements.*



K5 -  
AudioA1



## Zimer frei

Mir: Vier-Zimer-WG am Schtattrand. Du: ufigschtelt und erwachse!  
I oisere WG wird uf Aafang Auguscht es Zimer frei (20 m<sup>2</sup>, 860 CHF). D Wonig isch imene ruige Quartier, aber es hät Poschti-Möglichkaite und e Bushaltischtel i foif Minuute Entfärnig. Mir sind ali brueffstäätig und sueched drum öpper, wo nüm gad jedi Wuche Party macht und am beschte au scho chli WG-Erfaarig hät. Mir choched öppedie gärn zäme Znacht und händ en chliine Balkoon, wo me cha beplanze.

## Wonig z vermiete

Ich zügler wäg und sueche drum ab Februar Naachmieter\*ine für mini zäntrumsnööchi, günschtigi Wonig (drüü Zimer, 65 m<sup>2</sup>, 1875 CHF). D Wonig isch sunig, Altbou, ooni Balkoon aber miteme schöne Inehoof. D Aigetümerin hät gärn Chind und s läbige Quartier isch ideal für Familiene (Schpilplatz und chliine Park am Egge, kä gföörliche Schtraasse). Mini Mööbel wirdi nöd mitnäa, me chönt si nach Veriibaarig übernäa. Mues aber nöd sii, suscht mueni si ebe entsorge.

## WG gsuecht

Hoi zäme! Ich bi noi i de Schwiiz und sueche-n e luschtigi WG zum mee Lüüt känezleere. Ich bi 25 Jaar alt und vo Syrie, Nichtraucher und en ordentliche Typ. Ich los gärn Musig, schpil Gitare und bi kontaktfroidig. Am liebschte würi in e Schtudi-WG, wil i schpööter au gärn es Schtudium aafange würi. Isch aber käs Muss! Mis Budget isch bis 650 Franke.

## Zimer zur Undermieti

Mir sind es Ehepaar in Ränthe, wo es Zimer wett undervermiete. S Zimmer hät 23 m<sup>2</sup> und isch möbliert, ideal für Schtudis oder Leerling. Schööni Uussicht vom 13. Shtock, Mitbenutzig vo Baad und Chuchi ooni Schtube. ÖV und Läden i de Nööchi.

Bitte nur Bewärbige vo suubere, zueverlässige Persoone und mit Bild.

# Introductory Exercises

## A2



Which of the following four advertisements sound appealing to you and why? Which ad fits best to your needs and how do you picture the person who published the advertisement? Write a short text or exchange your thoughts orally with someone.



-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

## A3



You can always read between the lines in an advertisement. On the right side you can see the headlines of the advertisements on the left and statements from interested people on the right. What do you think - which statements fit best to which ads?

- 1 **Zimer frei**
- 2 **Wonig z vermiete**
- 3 **WG gsuecht**
- 4 **Zimer für Undermieti**

- a Mir sind es jungs Päärli, wo gad ghüüraate hät.
- b Ich bliibe nur es halbs Jaar für es Praktikum i de Schtatt.
- c Ich faa-n en noie Job aa und wone gärn mit anderne zäme.
- d Mir sind e luschtigi WG, wo vil zäme macht und lacht.

# Affordable Forms of Living

Living in Switzerland, especially in bigger cities (in Zurich in particular) is often very expensive. But there are possibilities to live affordably. Find below a few of these possibilities. Furthermore it is always recommended to look for a room or flat in the countryside or the outskirts of a city. The rents are lower there but there are still very good connections by public transport.

## WGs

There's a lot of flat sharing around Switzerland, especially among younger people. In a so-called "WG" (*Wohngemeinschaften*) people, who aren't necessarily related to each other, live together. Sometimes it's a bunch of friends, who are looking for a flat. But there are also WG's, where the flatmates don't know each other before moving in together. They find each other over advertisements or platforms, get to know each other and decide to move in together. The big advantage about sharing a flat is that the rent can be split. WG's are great for people who like company and don't want to live alone. Here are some websites where you can find rooms in WG's and people who are looking for a room:

[wgzimmer.ch](http://wgzimmer.ch)

[meinwgzimmer.ch](http://meinwgzimmer.ch)

[ronorp.net](http://ronorp.net) (for different cities)

[wegeleben.ch](http://wegeleben.ch) (focus Berne)

For many cities in Switzerland there are also Facebook groups about the topic of finding a shared apartment.

## Housing Cooperatives

Another form of housing is housing cooperatives. Apartments from cooperatives are usually cheaper than conventional rental apartments. The concept of the housing cooperative is that the residents are very actively involved in designing the living space. In some cooperatives there is a lot of shared living

space - common rooms, terraces, gardens, shared kitchens, etc. In these rooms, everyday life is organized together. They cook together, plan events, take care of the garden...

In some housing cooperatives the focus is no longer so much on communal living, but rather on being simply affordable housing under mostly fair conditions, as decisions are made by the cooperative itself and not by third parties such as owners or administration. Therefore, cooperative apartments are very popular and it is difficult to get a cooperative apartment. The waiting lists are long and there are usually a lot of interested people coming to see them. Most housing cooperatives also have shared apartments, which are easier to get into. On the website of the Swiss housing cooperatives you will find a list of almost all cooperatives in Switzerland and further information about searching for cooperative housing:

[wbg-schweiz.ch/information/wohnbaugenossenschaften\\_schweiz/mitglieder/genossenschaften](http://wbg-schweiz.ch/information/wohnbaugenossenschaften_schweiz/mitglieder/genossenschaften)

## City Apartments

There are so-called city apartments in almost all larger cities. Apartments that are subsidized by the city and can therefore offer slightly lower rents.

**Zürich:** [stadt-zuerich.ch/fd/de/index/wohnen-und-gewerbe/vermietungen.html](http://stadt-zuerich.ch/fd/de/index/wohnen-und-gewerbe/vermietungen.html)

**Berne:** [bern.ch/themen/wohnen/wohnen-und-mieten/mietobjekte](http://bern.ch/themen/wohnen/wohnen-und-mieten/mietobjekte)

**Basel:** [immobilienbs.ch](http://immobilienbs.ch)

**Luzern:** [lupk.ch/de/immobilien/mietwohnungen](http://lupk.ch/de/immobilien/mietwohnungen)

## Assistance in Finding Accommodation

There are also organizations and projects that can help you find accommodation, such as Kafi Klick:

[solinetz-zh.ch/projekte/wohnungssuche](http://solinetz-zh.ch/projekte/wohnungssuche)

[kafiklick.ch](http://kafiklick.ch)

# Vocabulary

## CH

## EN

## DE

### d\*e Aigetümer\*in (d Aigetümerine)

Känsch di noi Aigetümerin scho?

### owner

Do you already know the owner?

### Eigentümer\*in

Kennst du die neue Eigentümerin bereits?

### d Bewärbig (d Bewärbige)

Chöntsch äch mini Bewärbig korrigiere?

### application

Could you please correct my application?

### Bewerbung

Könntest du vielleicht meine Bewerbung korrigieren?

### s Bild (d Bilder)

Das Bild gfalt mer mega.

### picture

I really like this picture.

### Bild

Dieses Bild gefällt mir sehr gut.

### d Erfaarig (d Erfaarige)

Häsch mit wgzimmer.ch gueti Erfaarige gmacht?

### experience

Have you had good experiences with the page "Wgzimmer.ch"?

### Erfahrung

Hast du gute Erfahrungen mit Wgzimmer.ch gemacht?

### ideal

E Wäschmaschine i de Wohnig wär ideal.

### ideal

Having a washing machine in the flat would be ideal.

### ideal

Eine Waschmaschine in der Wohnung wäre ideal.

### d\*e Naachmieter\*in

Ich sueche-n e\*n Naachmieter\*in uf de 1. Juni.

### next tenant

I'm looking for a next tenant for June 1st.

### Nachmieter\*in

Ich suche eine\*n Nachmieter\*in auf 1. Juni.

### d Undermieti (d Undermietene)

Ich han es Zimer vo mine-re Wonig zur Undermieti uusgschribe.

### subletting

I have advertised a room in my apartment for subletting.

### Untermiete

Ich habe ein Zimmer meiner Wohnung zur Untermiete ausgeschrieben.

### undervermiete (hät undervermietet)

Das Zimer tueni undervermiete.

### to sublet

I sublet this room.

### untervermieten

Dieses Zimmer vermiete ich unter.

### d Veriibaarig (d Veriibaarige)

S isch wichtig, e Veriibaarig mit em Undermieter z mache.

### agreement

It is important to make an agreement with the subtenant.

### Vereinbarung

Es ist wichtig, eine Vereinbarung mit dem Untermieter zu machen.

<b>vermiete (hät vermietet)</b> Känsch öpper, wo es Zimer im Zäntrum vermietet?	<b>to rent out</b> Do you know anyone who rents a room in the center?	<b>vermieten</b> Kennst du jemanden, der ein Zimmer im Zentrum vermietet?
<b>zügle (isch züglet)</b> Nööchscht Samschtig zügli. Chunsch cho hälfe?	<b>to move flat/ house</b> I'm moving next Saturday. Are you coming to help?	<b>umziehen</b> Nächsten Samstag ziehe ich um. Kommst du helfen?
<b>s Zimer (d Zimer)</b> Wie vil Zimer hät dis Huus?	<b>room</b> How many rooms does your house have?	<b>Zimmer</b> Wie viele Zimmer hat dein Haus?
<b>d Schtube (d Schtubene)</b> D Schtube gseet no chli läär uus.	<b>living room</b> The living room still looks a bit empty.	<b>Wohnzimmer</b> Das Wohnzimmer sieht noch etwas leer aus.
<b>s Baad (d Beder)</b> Im Baad hät s e noii Duschi.	<b>bathroom</b> The bathroom has a new shower.	<b>Bad</b> Im Badezimmer hat es eine neue Dusche.
<b>de Balkoon (d Balköön)</b> Hät die Wonig en Balkoon?	<b>balcony</b> Does this flat have a balcony?	<b>Balkon</b> Hat diese Wohnung einen Balkon?
<b>d Chuchi (d Chuchene)</b> D Chuchi isch seer modern.	<b>kitchen</b> The kitchen is so modern.	<b>Küche</b> Die Küche ist sehr modern.
<b>s Mööbel (d Mööbel)</b> Im IKEA findsch schööni Mööbel.	<b>furniture</b> You can find beautiful furniture at IKEA.	<b>Möbel</b> Bei IKEA findest du schöne Möbel.
<b>möbliert</b> Isch die Wonig möbliert?	<b>furnished</b> Is the flat furnished?	<b>möbliert</b> Ist diese Wohnung möbliert?
<b>de ÖV (-)</b> I de Stadt bruuchi lieber de ÖV als wi s Auto.	<b>public transport</b> In the city I prefer to use public transport rather than the car.	<b>ÖV</b> In der Stadt benutze ich lieber ÖV als das Auto.
<b>de Schpilplatz (d Schpilplätz)</b> Gömmer uf de Schpilplatz go schpile?	<b>playground</b> Shall we go play on the playground?	<b>Spielplatz</b> Gehen wir auf den Spielplatz spielen?
<b>läbig (läbiger)</b> Züri isch e seer e läbigi Schtatt.	<b>lively</b> Zurich is a very lively city.	<b>lebendig</b> Zürich ist eine sehr lebendige Stadt.

**gföörlich**

Obacht, die Schtraass isch megagföörlich.

**dangerous**

Be careful, this road is very dangerous.

**gefährlich**

Achtung, diese Strasse ist sehr gefährlich.

**entsorge (hät entsorgt)**

Wo chani s Glaas entsorge?

**to dispose of**

Where can I dispose of glass?

**entsorgen**

Wo kann ich Glas entsorgen?

**ordentlich**

I oisere WG simmer nöd esoo ordentlich.

**tidy**

We're not so tidy in our shared flat.

**ordentlich**

In unserer WG sind wir nicht so ordentlich.

**suuber (süüberer)**

Ich ha s gärn sauber.

**clean**

I like it clean.

**sauber**

Ich mag es sauber.

**uufgschtelt (uufgschtelter)**

Sit min Brüeder inere WG wont, ischer vil uufgschtelter.

**organized**

Since my brother has been living in a shared flat, he has become much more organized.

**aufgestellt**

Seit mein Bruder in einer WG wohnt, ist er viel aufgestellt.

**zueverlässig**

Wenigschtens isch d Pöschterin no zueverlässig!

**reliable**

At least the postwoman is still reliable!

**zuverlässig**

Wenigstens ist die Postbotin noch zuverlässig!

**erwachse (erwachsener)**

Wän ich erwachse bin, woni imne groosse Huus mit Garte!

**grown-up**

When I grow up, I'll live in a big house with a garden.

**erwachsen**

Wenn ich erwachsen bin, wohne ich in einem grossen Haus mit Garten.

**de Schtudi (d Schtudis)**

A de Uni Züri häts vil Schtudis.

**student**

There are many students at the University of Zurich.

**Studierende**

An der Universität Zürich gibt es viele Studierende.

**s Schtudium**

Isch d Maja mit irem Schtudium färtig?

**studies**

Has Maya finished her studies?

**Studium**

Hat Maja ihr Studium beendet?

**öppedie**

Si hät öppedie schlächti Luune.

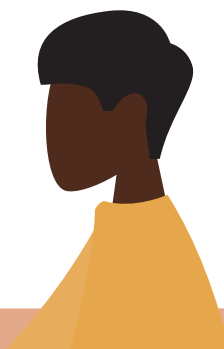
**now and then**

She's in a bad mood every now and then.

**ab und zu**

Sie hat ab und zu schlechte Laune.

K5 -  
Hauptwortschatz



# Grammar

There are prepositions in almost every Swiss German sentence. So far we have already learned many prepositions as words. In this unit, we review them in overview and treat their grammar more systematically than before.

## Prepositions and Cases

After a preposition you have to put nouns in the dative or accusative case. There is no genitive in Swiss German. You have to learn whether a preposition is used with dative, accusative or both cases. If both cases are possible, the meaning is different (see "Spatial prepositions" in Deepen Your Knowledge C4).

Here is an overview of the most important prepositions and their cases. Attention: Many of the prepositions have different meanings, which we cannot cover all in the overview – the examples only illustrate the most common ones.

CH	DE	EN	Dative	Accu- sative	Example
a	an	at	x	x	<i>Wär isch a de Türe?</i> 'Who is at the door?', <i>Gaa-n a d Türe</i> 'Go to the door'
ab	ab	from	x		<i>Ab de sibne zaigemer en Film</i> 'From 7 o'clock we will show a film.'
bi	bei	by	x		<i>Dis Bier schtaat bi de Gleser</i> 'Your beer is by the glasses.'
bis (a / zu)	bis (- / zu)	until	x		<i>De Bus faart bis zum Baanhoof</i> 'The bus goes until the train station.'
dur	durch	through		x	<i>D Sune schiint dur d Faischter</i> 'The sun shines through the windows.'
für	für	for		x	<i>Dää Chueche isch für dini Mueter</i> 'This cake is for your mother.'
gäg	gegen	against		x	<i>Schüss mer ja nöd de Bal gäg s Faischter!</i> 'Don't shoot the ball against my window!'
i	in	in/into	x	x	<i>I de Schtatt häts vil Lüüt</i> 'A lot of people live in the city', <i>Ich wett i d Schtatt zügge</i> 'I would like to move into the city'
hinder	hinter	behind	x	x	<i>S Huus isch hinder de Boim</i> 'The house is behind the trees', <i>Si isch hinder s Huus gloffe</i> 'She ran behind the house.'
mit	mit	with	x		<i>Ich bi mit mim Vatter i s Kino</i> 'I went to the cinema with my father.'
näbet	neben	next to	x	x	<i>Isch näbet diir no frei?</i> 'Is there a space next to you?', <i>Chum, hock näbet miich.</i> 'Come sit next to me.'
nach	nach	after		x	<i>Nach de Schuel gömmer hai</i> 'We go home after school.'
ooni	ohne	without		x	<i>Ooni d Irina hät s kän Schpaas gmacht.</i> 'There was no fun without Irina.'

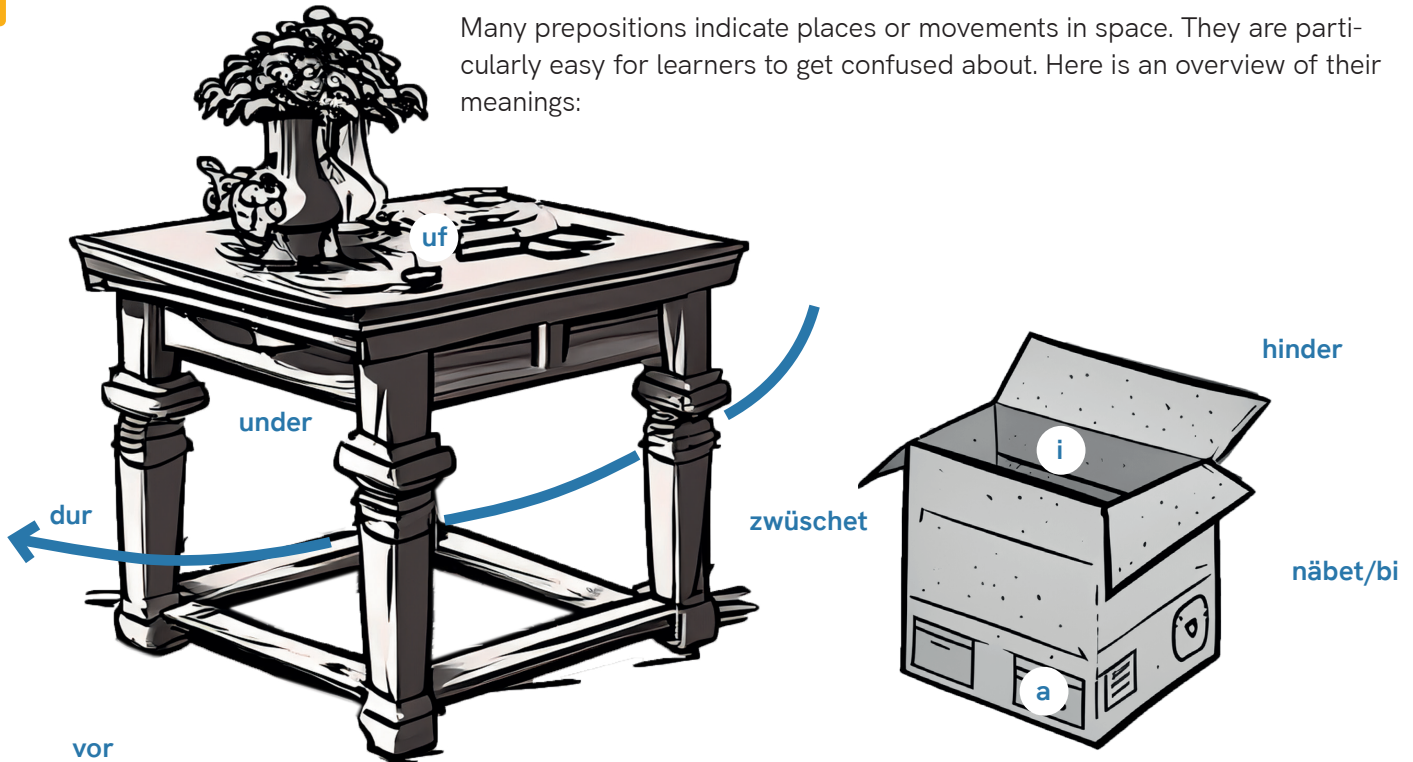




CH	DE	EN	Dative	Accu- sative	Example
sit	seit	since	x		<i>Sit däre Ziit bin i vorsichtiger</i> 'Since then I have been more careful.'
über	über	over/ above	x	x	<i>Über em Regaal hät s es Bild</i> 'There's a picture above the shelf', <i>Da chömmer über d Schtraass gaa</i> 'We can cross the street here.'
uf	auf	on	x	x	<i>Uf oisem Dach hät s en Schtorch</i> 'There's a stork on our roof', <i>Schtelemer d Suppe doch uf de Tisch</i> 'Let's put the soup on the table.'
um ... ume	um	around		x	<i>Sinder um de ganz See umegloffe?</i> 'Did you walk around the whole lake?'
under	unter	under	x	x	<i>Dini Schue sind under em Sofa</i> 'Your shoes are under the sofa', <i>Er isch under de Tisch kroche</i> 'He crawled under the table.'
us	aus	out of	x		<i>Us dinere Täsche tropft öppis</i> 'Something is dripping out of your bag'
ussert	ausser	except	x		<i>Niemer hät wele ussert de Pjotr</i> 'Nobody wanted it except Pjotr.'
vo	von	from	x		<i>Vom See chunt chüeli Luft</i> 'Cool air comes from the lake'
vor	vor	in front of	x	x	<i>Vor em Lade wartet scho Lüüt</i> 'There are people waiting in front of the store', <i>Faar direkt vor s Huus</i> 'Drive straight to the front of the house.'
wäg	wegen	because of	x		<i>Wäg mim Hueschte bini dihai plibe</i> 'I stayed at home because of my cough.'
zwüschet	zwischen	between	x	x	<i>Zwüschet de Buecher hät s kän Platz mee</i> 'There is no more space between the books', <i>Die Pflanze schtelemer zwüschet s Faischter und s Sofa</i> 'We place this plant between the window and the sofa.'

## Spatial Prepositions

Many prepositions indicate places or movements in space. They are particularly easy for learners to get confused about. Here is an overview of their meanings:



The spatial prepositions are also those that can be used with both the dative and the accusative. The dative indicates the location ("Where is it?"), the accusative indicates the destination ("Where is it moving?"). Here are some examples:

CH	Dative: where?	Accusative: where to?
a	<i>A de Wand i de Schtube hanged en Uur.</i> 'There's a clock hanging on the wall in the living room.'	<i>Sölemer de Kaländer a d Wand hänke?</i> 'Should we hang the calendar on the wall?'
i	<i>Si isch i irem Zimmer am Läse.</i> 'She's reading in her room.'	<i>Gaa-n i dis Zimmer go läse!</i> 'Go into your room to read!'
hinder	<i>Hinder de Hütte wachsed au Eppeeri.</i> 'Strawberries also grow behind the hut.'	<i>D Eppeeri chöntemer hinder d Hütte pflanze.</i> 'We could plant the strawberries behind the hut.'
näbet	<i>Näbet em Bett wär no es Chäschtli guet.</i> 'A (night) table would be good next to the bed.'	<i>Schtelemer doch das Chäschtli näbet s Bett.</i> 'Let's put this box next to the bed.'
über	<i>Droone chönd au über em Bode schwebe.</i> 'Drones can also hover over the ground.'	<i>Bi miir isch geschter e Droone über s Huus gfloge.</i> 'A drone flew over my house yesterday.'
uf	<i>Uf däm Schild schtaat, das me da nöd inedörf.</i> 'On this sign, it says you're not allowed in there.'	<i>Schriib uf s Schild, das mer hüt früener zue-tüend.</i> 'Write on the sign that we're closing early today.'
under	<i>Hei Schpätzli, was machsch dän du da under em Bett?</i> 'Hey sweetie, what are you doing here under the bed?'	<i>Waisch, wän si Angscht hät, chrüüchtsi män-gisch under s Bett.</i> 'You know, when she's scared, she sometimes crawls under the bed.'
vor	<i>Wiso liit Güsel vor em Huus?</i> 'Why is there rubbish lying in front of the house?'	<i>Chasch no de Karton vor s Huus legge?</i> 'Can you still put the box in front of the house?'
zwü-schet	<i>Det zwüschet de Boim schtaat öpper.</i> 'There's someone standing between the trees.'	<i>Nachane ischer zwüschet d Boim gloffe und verschwunde.</i> 'Then he ran into/between the trees and disappeared.'

Most Swiss German spatial prepositions are very similar to their standard German counterparts. However, there is an important difference with spatial proper names (e.g. names of cities or countries):

	CH	DE	Example
Place	z	in	<i>z Bärn</i> 'in Bern' ( <i>in Bern</i> ), <i>z Indien</i> 'in India' ( <i>in Indien</i> )
Movement	uf	nach	<i>uf Gämf</i> 'to Geneva' ( <i>nach Genf</i> ), <i>uf Italie</i> 'to Italy' ( <i>nach Italien</i> )

## Articles and Prepositions With Articles

Prepositions are often used with articles. You already know their basic forms from Volume 1 (Unit 4). The dative and accusative forms are also common - and you can't avoid them, especially when it comes to prepositions. Here is an overview of all article forms (always *Schwiizerdüütsch* and *Hochdeutsch*).

Definite article	masculine	feminine	neuter	all
	singular	singular	singular	plural
Nominative ('who?')	de der	d die	s das	d die
Dative ('whom?')	em dem	de der	em dem	de den
Accusative ('whom?')	de den	d die	s das	d die

Indefinite article	masculine	feminine	neuter	all
	singular	singular	singular	plural
Nominative ('who?')	en ein	e eine	es ein	- -
Dative ('whom?')	emene einem	enere einer	emene einem	- -
Accusative ('whom?')	en einen	e eine	es ein	- -

When combining prepositions with articles, the two often merge:

- *dem* is shortened to *-m* in *am, bim, im, vom*
- *de* (accusative singular masculine, = standard German *den*)
  - becomes *-n* in *an* (= *a + de*) and *in* (= *i + de*)
  - But this does not happen with the identical definite articles *de* (feminine, dative singular) and *de* (all genders, dative plural): *de See* 'the lake' → *in See* 'in the lake', *aber d Gunte* 'the puddle' → *i de Gunte* 'in the puddle', *d Flüss* 'the rivers' → *i de Flüss* 'in the rivers'
  - Nothing happens with the other prepositions with accusative, e.g. *dur de, ooni de, vor de*.
- *emene* and *enere* are usually shortened:
  - to *-mene, -nere* after vowel: *amene, binere, imene, vonere*
  - to *-eme, -ere* after consonant: *miteme, ufere, usere, voreme*
- In Standard German there are also mergers with *das* (neuter, definite, accusative singular), e.g. *auf + das* → *aufs*. In Swiss German, the form of this article is always *s*, so there is nothing else to note: *für s, gäg s, uf s* etc.



# Exercises

## B1

## Prepositions

### B1.1



On the right side you can see two groups of example sentences with prepositions. Underline the correct preposition in each case. Which group uses the dative and which uses the accusative?

Ich wone **bis / mit / wäg** minere Schwöschter zäme.

Si woned scho lang **z / vor / vo** Basel.

S Sofa isch **i / zu / über** de Schtube.

**Sit / hinder / bi** mir dihai isches imer suuber.

De Erkin isch **ab / wäg / über** sim Fründ seer pingelig mit de Ornig dihaime.

**Us / Uf / Näbet** ere moderne Chuchi büüet die Wonig no e groossi Schtube.

Es isch vil ruiger worde, **um / sit / für** d Wonig **gäg / under / ussert** ois noi vermietet isch.

Er cha sich e Wonig **ooni / uf / a** en Balkoon nöd voorschtelle.

Rüersch bitte dini Chlaider nöd imer **für / über / us** de Färnsee.

Am Suntig lauffi ainisch **über / under / um** de Block ume.

D Thea hät en noie Schrank **zu / uf / für** iri Fründin kauft.

Si händ s Bild im Schlaaffzimer nur **zwüschet / über / gäg** d Wand gleent.

Ich gaa schnäl **hinder / in / ooni** de Eschtrich.

Ich hett jetzt persöönlich de Äss-tisch nöd **uf / under / näbet** de Teppich gschtelt.

### B1.2



Which prepositions in the example sentences can also be used with the other case (dative instead of accusative, accusative instead of dative)? Check the individual sentences and, if necessary, try to rephrase them so that they fit the other case.

Example: Ich gaa schnäl in Eschtrich. → Ich bi jetzt im Eschtrich.

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

Latifah has moved to a new city where she doesn't know her way around well. Luckily, she can always write to her friend Friederike, who will help her.

## B2.1



Connect the beginnings of the chat messages with the appropriate ending (several combinations possible).

Latifah writes ...

Ich schtaa ...

Ich gaa ...

... i de Migros.

... hinder de Park.

... uf em Zentralplatz.

... i d Hauptschtraass.

... uf d Brugg.

... hinder em Baanhoof.

Friederike writes ...

Bisch ...

Lauff ...

vor em Kafi?

a s Ändi vo de Schtrass.

zwüschet em Schpilplatz und de Schuel?

vor de Manor.

am Seeufer aachoo?

zwüschet de Haltischtel und em Kiosk?

## B2.2



Mark the prepositions in the messages. What do you notice? Try to write more examples. What changes if you choose a different beginning?

Example: Bisch vor em Kafi? → Lauff vor s Kafi.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

## B2.3



Continue the dialogue started here. Can Latifah find the way?

L: Hoi Friederike, ich han mich wider emal verlauffe. Chasch mer schnäl hälfe?

F: Ja klaar, wo bisch grad?

## B3

### B3.1



Match each word with the opposite meaning.

### Mir isch wichtig bim zämewone ...

suuber

zueverlässig

vermiete

unordentlich

Noibou

gföörllich

unmöbliert

kontaktfroidig

mürisch

läbig

verschlosse

ordentlich

harmloos

dräckig

unzueverlässig

uufgschtelt

toot

miete

Altbou

möbliert

## B3.2



What kind of people do you want to live with? Formulate a few sentences orally. The beginnings of the sentences in the box on the right and the words from exercise B3.1 can help you.

- Mänsche, wo mit mir zämewoned, sötted ...
- Mir isch wichtig, das es i de Wonig ...
- Ich sueche-n öpper, wo ...
- Ich hett gärn, das ...
- Wär mit mir zämewont, mues unbedingt ...
- S wär schön, wän ...
- S wür mi froie, wän ...

## B4



Fill in the blanks. Attention: there is one word still to be conjugated!

Balkoon / Zimer / Schpilplatz / Baad / Aigetümerin / Chuchi / Schtudium / entsorge / undervermiete / zügler

I oisere noie Wonig häts e groossi \_\_\_\_\_.

Uf mim \_\_\_\_\_ schiint de ganz Tag d Sunel!

Wil dä Pablo im Härbscht go raise gaat, tueter sis Zimer

\_\_\_\_\_

Zum Glück hät s für Chind i de Nööchi en groosse

\_\_\_\_\_

Känsch du d \_\_\_\_\_ vo däm Huus?

Ui, s \_\_\_\_\_ isch megadräckig, des muesi unbedingt no putze hüt!

Chasch du hüt bitte no s Glas \_\_\_\_\_?

Wo \_\_\_\_\_?

Wäärend em \_\_\_\_\_ hät d Thaïs no inere 4er-WG gläbt.

Isch daas s Won- oder s Schlaaff \_\_\_\_\_?





# Deepen Your Knowledge

## C1



Before you sign a rental agreement, you arrange a viewing. Swiss German is usually spoken at a viewing appointment.

### Si sind für d Besichtigung daa?

*D Gül und de Walter sind e Wonig am Sueche. Hüt lueged si e Wonig aa, wo de Besichtigungstermin scho i de Aazaig aaggää gsii isch. De Vermieter begrüesst si a de Türe.*

**W:** Grüezi mitenand. Si sind für d Besichtigung daa?

**G:** Jaa, genau! Dörfemer inechoo?

**W:** Sicher, chömed Si nur. Es hät scho es paar Lüüt.

**G:** Sölemer d Schue abzie?

**W:** Nai nai, das isch käs Problem.

**G:** Lueg emal Walti, de Blick vom Faischter use isch megaschöön.

**W:** Scho, aber im Sumer wirts da au megahaiss. Das isch d Süüdsiite.

**G:** Lieber schön und haiss als chüel und gruusig, nöd?

**W:** Hmm ... D Chuchi isch au scho chli elter, wi s uusgseet.

**G:** Chum jetzt, Hauptsach, si funktioniert! lich finde, d Qualität macht en guete-n lidruck. - Egsgüsi, dörfi Si no öppis frööge?

**V:** Ja sicher?

**G:** Vo wän isch dän d Chuchi?

**V:** Die müest jetzt öppe 20 Jaar alt sii, isch aber no guet im Schuss. Nur de Chüelschrank hämmer letscht Jaar müese ersetze.

**W:** Ich han au no e Fraag. Im Baad häts ja käs Faischter, ischs da nöd z füecht?

**V:** Bishäär nöd, nai. Si müend aifech nöd vergässe, d Lüftig iizschalte, suscht chönts Schimmel gää.

**W:** Aa, dän isch guet, märsi.

# CH

# EN

# DE

## d Aazaig (d Aazaige)

Mini Fründin luegt jede Taag d Aazaige dure, aber s hät aifach kai Wonig, wo für ois wür passe.

## advertisement

My girlfriend looks through the ads every day, but there is simply no apartment that would suit us.

## Anzeige

Meine Freundin schaut jeden Tag die Anzeigen durch, aber es gibt einfach keine Wohnung, die für uns passen würde.

## d Besichtigung (d Besichtigung)

Morn gaani ane Besichtigung vonere wunderschöne Wonig, ich bi ganz uufgret!

## viewing

Tomorrow I'm going to view a beautiful apartment. I'm quite excited!

## Besichtigung

Morgen gehe ich an eine Besichtigung einer wunderschönen Wohnung, ich bin ganz aufgeregt!

## d\*e Vermieter\*in (d Vermieter)

Wär isch de Vermieter vo däm noie Block?

## landlord

Who is the landlord of this new block?

## Vermieter\*in

Wer ist der Vermieter von diesem neuen Block?

## der lidruck (d lidrück)

Min erschte-n lidruck vo de Wonig isch megaguet gsii!

## impression

My first impression of the apartment was great!

## Eindruck

Mein erster Eindruck der Wohnung war megagut!

## de Blick (d Blick)

Hobala, häsch dä hässig Blick au grad gsee?

## sight, look

Oops, did you just see that angry look too?

## Blick

Hoppla, hast du den wütenden Blick auch gerade gesehen?

## de Teriin (d Teriin)

Am Midwuch hani en wichtige Teriin, dä dörfi nöd vergässe!

## appointment

I have an important appointment on Wednesday that I can't forget!

## Termin

Am Mittwoch habe ich einen wichtigen Termin, den darf ich nicht vergessen!

## aaluege (hät aaglueget)

Ir lueged mi ali so komisch aa, was isch äch loos?

## to look at

You're all looking at me so strangely, what's wrong?

## anschauen

Ihr schaut mich alle so komisch an, was ist denn los?

## abzie (hät abzoge)

Si müend d Schue nöd abzie für d Besichtigung.

## to take off

You don't have to take off your shoes to visit.

## ausziehen

Sie müssen die Schuhe nicht ausziehen für die Besichtigung.

## d Türe (d Türe)

Häsch d Türe bschlosse?

## door

Did you lock the door?

## Tür

Hast du die Tür abgeschlossen?

**s Faischter (d Faischter)**

Chasch bitte s Faischter zuetue, ich han mega chatt!

**window**

Can you please close the window, I'm super cold!

**Fenster**

Kannst du bitte das Fenster schliessen, mir ist mega kalt!

**de Bode (d Böde)**

De Bode vo de Wonig gfalt de Gül bsunders guet.

**floor**

Gül particularly likes the floor of the apartment.

**Boden**

Der Boden der Wohnung gefällt Gül besonders gut.

**de Eschtrich (d Eschtriche)**

Häsch du d Buecherchishte scho ufem Eschtrich versorgt?

**attic**

Have you already taken care of the book box in the attic?

**Dachboden**

Hast du die Bücherkiste schon auf dem Dachboden versorgt?

**de Chüelschrank (d Chüelschränk)**

Oise Chüelschrank isch wider emal läär, gaasch du go poschte?

**refrigerator**

Our fridge is empty again, can you go shopping?

**Kühlschrank**

Unser Kühlschrank ist wieder mal leer, gehst du einkaufen?

**chüel (chüeler)**

Geschter Aabig ufem Balkon isch fasch echli chüel worde.

**chilly**

It almost got a bit chilly on the balcony last night.

**kühl**

Gestern Abend auf dem Balkon wurde es fast ein bisschen kühl.

**d Wöschmaschine (d Wöschmaschinene)**

Normaalerwiis muesmer d Wöschmaschine mit de anderne Lüüt im Huus taile.

**washing machine**

Usually you have to share the washing machine with the other people in the house.

**Waschmaschine**

Normalerweise muss man die Waschmaschine mit den anderen Leuten im Haus teilen.

**wäsche (hät gwäsche)**

Bisch grad am Wäsche oder isch d Maschine frei?

**to wash**

Are you washing or is the machine free?

**waschen**

Bist du gerade am Waschen oder ist die Maschine frei?

**d Lüftig (d Lüftige)**

Häts bi dir im Baad e Lüftig?

**ventilation**

Do you have ventilation in your bathroom?

**Lüftung**

Hat es bei dir im Bad eine Lüftung?

**füecht (füechter)**

Die Wand isch imer füecht, das chönt emal schimle.

**damp**

This wall is always damp, so it could get moldy.

**feucht**

Diese Wand ist immer feucht, da könnte es mal schimmeln.

**schtriiche (hät gschtriche)**

Mini Tochter wott ires Zimmer blau schtriiche.

**to paint**

My daughter wants to paint her room blue.

**streichen**

Meine Tochter möchte ihr Zimmer blau streichen.

**iischalte (hät iigschalte)**

Wenn d Giselle haichunt, schaltetsi gad de Färnsee ii.

**to turn on**

When Giselle comes home, she immediately turns on the television.

**einschalten**

Wenn Giselle nach Hause kommt, schaltet sie sofort den Fernseher ein.

**aaschlüsse (hät aagschlosse)**

Geschter hani gmaint, de Toaster seg kaputt, aber er isch nur nöd aagschlosse gsii!

**to unplug**

Yesterday I thought the toaster was broken, but it just wasn't plugged in!

**anschiessen**

Gestern dachte ich, der Toaster wäre kaputt, aber er war nur nicht angeschlossen!

**funktioniere (hät funktioniert)**

De Bachofe funktioniert ja wieder tipptopp, danke häs en gflickt!

**to operate**

The oven is working perfectly again, thank you for fixing it!

**funktionieren**

Der Backofen funktioniert ja wieder tipptopp, danke hast du ihn geflickt!

**bishäär**

De Walter hät bishäär kä Glück ghaa bi de Wonigsuechi.

**so far**

Walter hasn't had any luck finding an apartment so far.

**bisher**

Walter hatte bisher kein Glück bei der Wohnungssuche.

**echli**

Findsch des nöd echli tüür?

**a little bit**

Don't you think that's a bit expensive?

**ein bisschen**

Findest du das nicht ein bisschen teuer?

**letscht (-)**

Geschter hani de letscht Zuug verpasst.

**last**

Yesterday I missed the last train.

**letzt-**

Gestern habe ich den letzten Zug verpasst.

**d Siite (d Siitene)**

Uf däre Siite häts echli mee Platz.

**side**

There is a little more space on this side.

**Seite**

Auf dieser Seite ist etwas mehr Platz.



## C1.1



Gül and Walter have different approaches. Fill in the appropriate names in the sentences on the right side.

\_\_\_\_\_ hät en kritische Blick für Details.

\_\_\_\_\_ isch offe und kontaktfroidig.

\_\_\_\_\_ gseet eender di guete Sache.

## C1.2

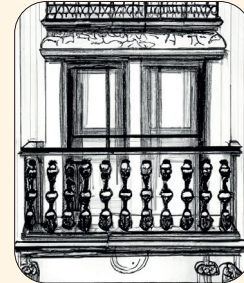


The right question for every room! Write the appropriate word under the pictures and put one or more letters for the questions that could be asked there.

1



2



3



4



5



a) Funktioniert der Abzug guet?

b) Ischs daa nöd oft windig?

c) Isch das en Parkettbode?

d) Häts Platz für oisi Velos?

e) Chöntme daa e Wöschmaschine aaschlüsse?

f) Chöntme daa noi schtriiche?

g) Muesme sich für s Wäsche-n iiträge?

## C1.3



*Have you ever looked for an apartment? How do you think a viewing can improve your chances of getting an apartment, and if so, how? Discuss with another person in Swiss German.*

# Tips for Finding and Handing over an Apartment

There are a few things that need to be taken into account when moving and documents that you should have ready when applying for an apartment. For example, it is common for the administration to require a form in which you should record the most important information about yourself. Sometimes this form is already attached to the advertisement and you can take it with you to the viewing, sometimes you only get the form on the viewing appointment. Most of the time you will also be required to submit an application letter in which you introduce yourself and explain your motivation for moving into the apartment. It is also common for the administration to request an extract from the debt collection register. You can find out exactly what it is, where you can order it and other useful tips on the subject of renting and living here:

[ch.ch/de/wohnen](https://www.ch.ch/de/wohnen)

There are also a few things to consider when moving out of an apartment. If there is major damage to the apartment, the repairs will be deducted from the deposit you paid when you moved in. The remaining amount will be refunded when you move out. If no major repairs need to be made, the entire amount will be refunded.

A thorough cleaning of the apartment is also required. This is best done after all the furniture and boxes have already been moved into the new apartment. This also includes cleaning the oven, dishwasher, windows, etc.

You can find a checklist for moving, as well as information about deregistering and registering at your old or new place of residence here:

[ch.ch/de/wohnen/umzug/](https://www.ch.ch/de/wohnen/umzug/)

If you have problems finding, renting and handing over an apartment, if you feel that you have been treated unfairly or if you are not sure of your rights, you can contact the Tenants' Association for advice and support:

[mieterverband.ch/mv/mietrecht-beratung.html](https://www.mieterverband.ch/mv/mietrecht-beratung.html)



Read the dialogue.

## Wo ane chunt das?

D Seyneb hät bi de Schtiftig «Preisgünstiges Wohnen» e 1,5-Zimer-Wonig gfunde. Am erschte-n April isch de Zügeltermiin; zwai Fründi-ne und en Fründ hälfed mit. Si händ ales imene Transporter a di noi Adräss gfaare und sind jetzt d Möbel und de Seyneb ires Züügs am Ineträge. D Seyneb sait, woo waas anechunt:

S Bett chunt gad da i d Mitti vom Zimer a d Wand.

S Sofa schteleder bitte vor s Faischter.

Die zwai Seck chömed under de Tisch i de Chuchi.

Dää Schpiegel chasch aifech mal voorsichtig hinder s Sofa schtele.

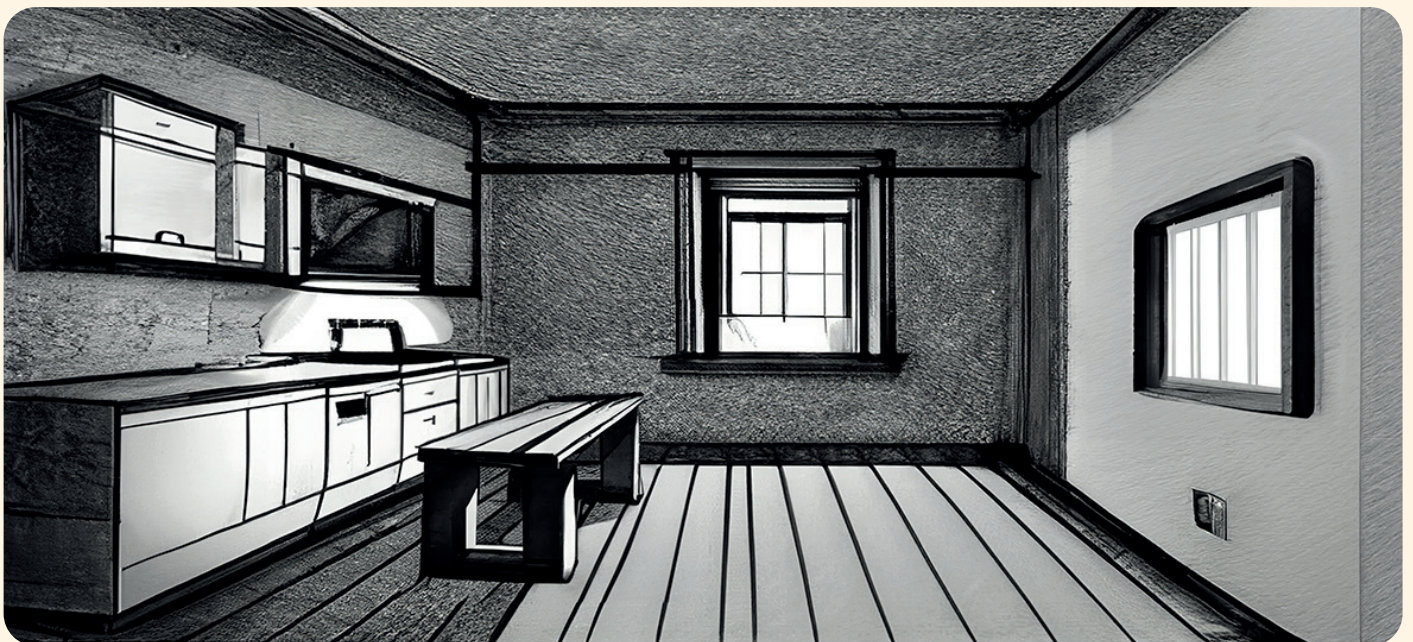
Die Dinger aifach deet uf de Teppich legge.

Die Schranktaili chasch gad da rächts näbet s Bett schtele.

D Madratze chunt gad scho uf de Bettrooscht druuf.

Die drüü Chischtene chasch zwüschet s Bett und s Sofa schtele.

Laisch de Teppich für de Momänt deet in Egge, bitte?





# CH

# EN

# DE

**der Egge (d Eggene)**

Das Gschtel chömmmer deet in Egge schtele!

**corner**

We can put the shelf in the corner there!

**Ecke**

Das Gestell können wir dort in die Ecke stellen!

**d Chischte (d Chischte)**

Pass uuf, die Chischte da isch megaschwäär!

**box**

Be careful, this box is super heavy!

**Kiste**

Pass auf, diese Kiste da ist megaschwer!

**de Sack (d Seck)**

Ich han no en Sack voll Chlaidler, woni nüme bruuch dihai.

**bag**

I still have a bag full of clothes at home that I no longer need.

**Sack**

Ich habe noch einen Sack voll Kleider, die ich nicht mehr brauche, zuhause.

**s Züügs (-)**

I däm Lade häts so vil schööns Züügs, ich möcht am liebschte ales chauffe!

**stuff**

There is so much beautiful stuff in this store, I want to buy it all!

**Zeugs**

In diesem Laden hat es so viel schönes Zeugs, ich möchte am liebsten alles kaufen!

**de Transporter (d Transporter)**

Känsch öpper, wo-n en Transporter zum Uusleene hät?

**van**

Do you know anyone who has a van to borrow?

**Transporter**

Kennst du jemanden, der einen Transporter zum Ausleihen hat?

**de Schpiegel (d Schpiegel)**

Vo wo häsch de Schpiegel? Ich möcht au so aine.

**mirror**

Where did you get this mirror? I want one like that too.

**Spiegel**

Woher hast du diesen Spiegel? Ich möchte auch einen solchen.

**de Teppich (d Teppich)**

De Gion wünscht sich en marokkanische Teppich für d Schtube.

**carpet**

Gion wants a Moroccan carpet for the living room.

**Teppich**

Gion wünscht sich einen marokkanischen Teppich fürs Wohnzimmer.

**d Madratze (d Madratzene)**

Waisch duu, wo-n i e günschtigi Madratze für mis Bett überchume?

**mattress**

Do you know where I can get a cheap mattress for my bed?

**Matratze**

Weisst du, wo ich eine günstige Matratze für mein Bett herkriege?

**träge (trait, hät trait)**

Hilfsch mer schnäl, d li-choiff i d Wonig ufeträge?

**to carry**

Can you quickly help me carry the groceries into the apartment?

**tragen**

Hilfst du mir schnell, die Einkäufe in die Wohnung zu tragen?

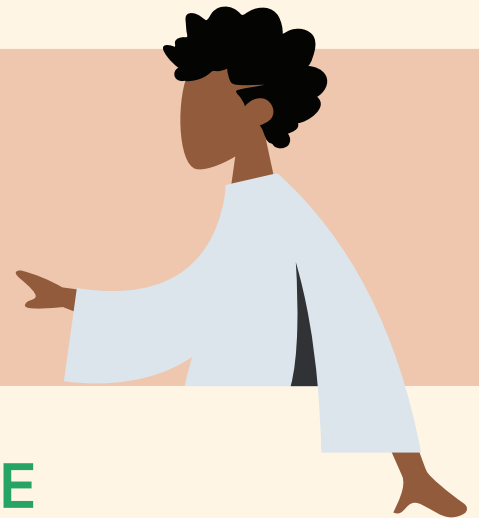
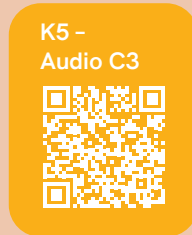


## C3



Listen to the dialogue and then do the exercises.

## Das isch doch gruusig!



### CH

### EN

### DE

#### d Abwäschmaschine (d Abwäschmaschinene)

Ich ha laider ekai Abwäschmaschine, ich mues ales vo Hand mache.

#### dishwasher

Unfortunately I don't have a dishwasher so I have to wash everything by hand.

#### Geschirrspüler

Ich habe leider keinen Geschirrspüler, ich muss alles von Hand abwaschen.

#### d Undsgi (-)

D Duyen laat iri Undsgi imer uf em Sofa la ligge.

#### underwear

Duyen always leaves her underwear on the sofa.

#### Unterwäsche

Duyen lässt ihre Unterwäsche immer auf dem Sofa liegen.

#### d Wösch (-)

Morn mueni unbedingt d Wösch mache, han kai früschi Undsgi meel!

#### laundry

I really have to do laundry tomorrow, I don't have any fresh underwear left!

#### Wäsche

Morgen muss ich unbedingt Wäsche machen, ich habe keine frische Unterwäsche mehr!

#### ligge (liit, isch gläge)

Chasch bitte no schnäl mis Handy hole? Liit uf em Chuchitisch.

#### to lie

Can you please get my cell phone quickly? It lies on the kitchen table.

#### liegen

Kannst du bitte noch schnell mein Handy holen? Es liegt auf dem Küchentisch.

#### umeligge (liit ume, isch umegläge)

Hei bitte laa dis Züügs nöd imer überall la umeligge!

#### to lie around

Hey, please don't leave your stuff lying around everywhere!

#### rumliegen

Hey, lass bitte dein Zeug nicht immer überall rumliegen!

#### iitröchne (isch iitröchnet)

Wän d Fläche machsch, dörfsch si jaa nöd la iitröchne!

#### to dry out

If you make stains, you can't let them dry!

#### eintrocknen

Wenn du Flecken machst, darfst du sie ja nicht eintrocknen lassen!

#### sauber (süüberer)

D Wonig vo de Layla isch imer eso sauber!

#### clean

Layla's apartment is always so clean!

#### sauber

Laylas Wohnung ist immer so sauber!

**ordentlich (ordentlicher)**

D Layla isch ordentlicher als mir ali zäme!

**neat**

Layla is neater than all of us combined!

**ordentlich**

Layla ist ordentlicher als wir alle zusammen!

**s Tassli (d Tassli)**

Zum Geburi überchumi imer es Tassli.

**cup**

I always get a cup for my birthday.

**Tasse**

Zum Geburtstag bekomme ich immer eine Tasse.

**wäg (-)**

S tuet mer laid, aber d Wonig isch scho wäg!

**away**

I'm sorry, but the apartment is already gone away!

**weg**

Es tut mir leid, aber die Wohnung ist schon weg!

**sich uufrege (hät sich uufregt)**

Reg dich nöd eso uuf, es chunt scho guet!

**to be upset**

Don't get so upset, everything will be fine!

**sich aufregen**

Reg dich nicht so auf, es wird alles gut!

**flueche (hät gfluechet)**

Mini Chind dörfet dihai nöd flueche.

**to swear**

My children are not allowed to swear at home.

**fluchen**

Meine Kinder dürfen zu Hause nicht fluchen.

**sich verträge (vertrait sich, hät sich vertrait)**

Zum Glück verträget sich de Gion und de Erkin wider!

**to reconcile with**

Luckily, Gion and Erkin are reconciled with each other again.

**sich vertragen**

Zum Glück vertragen sich Gion und Erkin wieder.

**eerlich (eerlicher)**

Bis lieber eerlich, suscht git s schpööter nume no mee Ärger.

**honest**

It's better to be honest, otherwise there will only be more trouble later.

**ehrlich**

Sei lieber ehrlich, sonst gibt es später nur noch mehr Ärger.

**nämlich (-)**

Häsch du umgschtelt? Mich dunkt, s gseet nämlich scho anderscht uus.

**namely / because**

Have you moved things around? Because I think it looks different.

**nämlich**

Hast du umgestellt? Ich finde es sieht nämlich anders aus.

**schiinbar (-)**

Schiinbar hät sich d Seyneb verliebt, häsch scho ghöört?

**apparently**

Apparently Seyneb has fallen in love, have you heard?

**scheinbar**

Scheinbar hat sich Seyneb verliebt, hast du schon gehört?

**schwäär (schwäärer)**

Uff, de Chaschte-n isch megaschwäär, mir händ en z zwaite fasch nöd chöne träge.

**heavy**

Ugh, this closet is extremely heavy, we almost couldn't carry it between the two of us.

**schwer**

Uff, dieser Schrank ist megaschwer, wir konnten ihn zu zweit fast nicht tragen.

### imfal

### imfal

### übrigens

On the one hand, Scho has a very specific temporal meaning - it is used when something happens earlier than expected: **Bisch du au scho dihai?** 'Are you home already?' In a figurative sense, you also use it when you determine or ask something that you would rather expect to be not the case: **Das isch scho guet** 'That's fine (even if you think it isn't)', **Du bisch aber scho de Brüetsch vo de Nini, oder?** 'You're already Nini's brother, aren't you? (So far I thought so, but maybe I'm wrong.)' You can also use scho alone when you hear unexpected news: **Hüüt Nami söl s cho rägne. - Scho?** 'It's supposed to rain this afternoon. - Oh really?'

### scho

### already

### schon

On the one hand, scho has a very specific temporal meaning - it is used when something happens earlier than expected: **Bisch du au scho dihai?** 'Are you home already?' In a figurative sense, you also use it when you determine or ask something that you would rather expect to be not the case: **Das isch scho guet** 'That's fine (even if you think it isn't)', **Du bisch aber scho de Brüetsch vo de Nini, oder?** 'You're already Nini's brother, aren't you? (So far I thought so, but maybe I'm wrong.)' You can also use scho alone when you hear unexpected news: **Hüüt Nami söl s cho rägne. - Scho?** 'It's supposed to rain this afternoon. - Oh really?'



## C3.1



True or false? Answer the questions to the text.

True False

Em Gion sini Undsgi liit uf em Sofa.

 — 

De Erkin isch nöd eso ordentlich.

 — 

De Gion regt sich so fescht uuf, das er fluecht.

 — 

De Erkin märkt nöd, wän d Duschi dräckig isch.

 — 

Am Faischter schtaat sit geschter e Tass Kafi.

 — 

De Gion und de Erkin verträged sich wider.

 — 

K5 -  
Audio C3





The living room is pretty messy!  
Five objects are in the wrong  
place. Where are they now and  
where should they go?

Make sentences according to the following pattern:

Das isch es Tassli. Es schtaat am Bode. Es sött i d Abwäschmaschine.

You can also create different variations:

Das Tassli am Bode sött i d Abwäschmaschine.

Isch das diis Tassli, wo da am Bode schtaat? Chasch das i d Abwäschmaschine tue?



-----  
-----  
-----  
-----  
-----  
-----  
-----

## C3.3

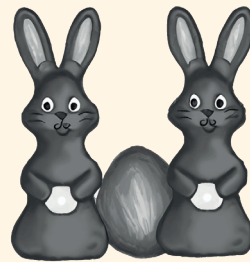


Have you ever had an argument with someone you lived with? What was it about and what bothered you the most? Find a second person and share your experiences.

## C4



### Dezwüschet hät s no ais!



*A Oschtre verschtecked i de Schwiiz vil Lüt Aili und Hase-n us Schoggi, wo dän anderi zum Schpaass müend sueche. D Meryam und de Didi sind Gschwüschterti und sind gad dihai Aili am Sueche, wo iri Eltere verschteckt händ. Es paar fäaled aber no!*

---

**M:** Häsch uf em Färnsee scho glueget?

---

**D:** Jaa, sind käni druuf.

---

*De Didi zaigt uf s Sofa.*

---

**D:** Aber da isch ais drunder gsi!

---

**M:** Seer guet. Und dehinder?

---

**D:** Wart gschnäl ... juhuhu, da isch en Haas! Das isch jetzt aber miine.

---

**M:** Hei, und iich?

---

**D:** Ja muesch sälber finde! Zie doch emal die Schublade-n use.

---

*D Meryam luegt ine.*

---

**M:** Nai, isch nüüt dine.

---

**D:** Hmm... hinder de Bluemetöpf?

---

**M:** Na'a... aber dezwüschet häts no ais, so-n es roots!

---

**D:** Und was isch daas für e Schachtle deet uf em Chaschte? Hol doch die mal abe.

---

*D Meryam mues sich zimli schtrecke.*

---

**M:** Uff ... Ha, da isch miin Haas dine! Und denäbet isch au no öppis Glänzigs...

---

**D:** Was isches? Ich chum nöd ane, hol s duu füre, bitte!

---

**M:** Ui ... aa, das sind nur d Girlande vo mim Geburi!

---

**(d) Oschtre (-)**

Wie fiired iir Oschtre das Jaar?

**Easter**

How are you celebrating Easter this year?

**Ostern**

Wie feiert ihr Ostern dieses Jahr?

**d Schoggi (d Schoggene)**

Wettsch au chli Schoggi?

**chocolate**

Would you like some chocolate too?

**Schokolade**

Möchtest du auch ein bisschen Schokolade?

**d Blueme (d Blueme)**

Lueg, d Maria hät ois wunderschööni Blueme mitpraacht!

**flower**

Look, Maria brought us beautiful flowers!

**Blume**

Schau, Maria hat uns wunderschöne Blumen mitgebracht!

**de Chaschte (d Chäschte)**

Din groosse Chaschte hani in Chäler gschtelt.

**box / closet**

I put your big closet in the basement.

**Kasten**

Deinen grossen Schrank habe ich in den Keller gestellt.

**d Schachtle (d Schachtlene)**

Händ Si vo de Schue d Schachtle wele?

**box**

Would you like the box of the shoes?

**Schachtel**

Möchten Sie von den Schuhen die Schachtel haben?

**d Schublade (d Schubladene)**

Bim Züggle isch laider e Schublade vo de Komooode kabuttgange.

**drawer**

Unfortunately, a drawer in the chest of drawers broke during the move.

**Schublade**

Beim Umzug ist leider eine Schublade der Kommode kaputtgegangen.

**verschtecke (hät verschteckt)**

Du muesch s Geburigschänk vo de Lene no verschtecke, suscht gseetsi s grad.

**to hide**

You still have to hide Lene's birthday present, otherwise she'll just find it.

**verstecken**

Du musst das Geburtstagsgeschenk von Lene noch verstecken, sonst findet sie es gerade.

**fääle (hät gfäält)**

D Bank isch nanig stabil, wil d Schraubene no fääled.

**to lack**

This bench is not yet stable because the screws are still missing.

**fehlen**

Diese Bank ist noch nicht stabil, weil die Schrauben noch fehlen.

**hole (hät gholt)**

Ich hole no schnäl es paar Snacks us em Chäler.

**to grab**

I'll quickly grab a few snacks from the basement.

**holen**

Ich hole noch schnell ein paar Snacks aus dem Keller.



---

**zie (si ziend, hät zoge)**

A däre Tür muesme fescht zie, wil si es bizli chlämt.

**to pull**

You have to pull hard on this door because it's a bit stuck.

**ziehen**

An dieser Tür muss man fest ziehen, weil sie ein bisschen klemmt.

---

**sich schtrecke (hät sich gschtreckt)**

Ich mues mi schnäl chli schtrecke, bi z lang ghooket hüüt.

**to stretch oneself**

I need to stretch a bit quickly, I sat for too long today.

**sich strecken**

Ich muss mich schnell ein bisschen strecken, bin zu lange gesessen heute.

---

**sälber (-)**

De Said isch erscht im Chindsgi, aber cha scho sälber mit em Bus haigaa.

**oneself**

Said is only in kindergarten, but can already take the bus home by himself.

**selber**

Said ist erst im Kindergarten, aber kann schon selber mit dem Bus nach Hause gehen.

---



## Spatial Adverbs

Where is something, where does it go? Most of the time you can say this in two different ways, e.g. *Ich bi im Huus* ('I'm in the house', exact description) or *Ich bi dine* ('I'm in', listener already knows the exact location). Words like *dine* are called spatial adverbs. They often look quite different in Swiss German than in standard German. Some of them correspond to a specific preposition (in the example *i* 'in'), others have no exact correspondence.

Below you will find a list of the most important spatial adverbs (separated by location - 'where?' - and movement - 'where to?').

Adverbs of place			
CH	EN	DE	Compare to preposition
dehinder	behind	dahinter	hinder 'behind'
denäbet	next to	daneben	näb(et) 'next to'
dezwüschet	between	dazwischen	zwüsche 'between'
dine	in	drin	i 'in'
drunder	under	drunter	under 'under'
druuf	on	drauf	uf 'on'

Adverbs of movement			
CH	EN	DE	Compare to preposition
abe	downstairs	runter	-
ane	at	hin, ran, her	a 'at'
dure	through	durch	dur 'through'
füre	forward	vor, nach vorn	vor 'in front of'
hindere	backward	hinter, nach hinten	hinder 'behind'
ine	into	rein	i 'in'
übere	over	rüber	über 'over'
ufe	upwards	rauf, hoch	uf 'on'
use	out	raus	us 'out of'

The adverbs are often combined with *da(a)* 'here, there' or *deet* 'there': *da dine* 'in here', *deet ine* 'in there'. Sometimes prepositions and adverbs can occur at the same time: *im Huus* 'in the house' : *dine* 'in' : *im Huus dine* 'in the house'; *in Garte* 'into the garden' : *ine* 'into' : *in Garte-n ine* 'into the garden'.



## C4.3



Now it's your turn! Find someone to play Easter egg hunts with. In this case, the eggs are just made up - unless you're in the mood for chocolate! In each round, one of you thinks about where the egg should be. The other person tries to find out where it is by asking questions. Conducts dialogues according to the pattern on the right side:

**A:** Isches i de Schublade?

**B:** Nai, da isches nöd dine.

**A:** Häsches in Chüelschrank taa?

**B:** Nai, da hani s nöd inetaa.

**A:** Isches äch under de Chüssi?

**B:** Ja, da isches drunder!

As soon as an egg is found, you switch roles.

## C4.4



In particular, adverbs with the meanings 'where to?' and 'where from?' are often combined with verbs. In the dialogue you can find e.g. *usezie* 'pull out', *ineluege* 'look inside', *anechoo* 'get there'. Make up a suitable sentence for each of the combinations on the right side. Can you think of any other combinations for the forms from the list?

aberüere	
usebringe	
durefaare	
inegüüsse	
fürelauffe	
hindereschiebe	
übereruume	
anehocke	
ufelupfe	

## C4.5



Many spatial adverbs do not just have a literal meaning - when they are combined with different verbs, a figurative meaning can emerge. You can see some examples here. Can you imagine the meaning? Write the adverb-verb combination and its meaning under each sentence.

Example:

Sorry, us däm Buech chumi nöd druus.

**druuschoo** = 'to understand'

Am Suntig simmer aifech nur dihai umeghange.

Ich han en Chueche wele bache, aber ich ha s nöd aneprecht.

Du muesch jetzt a dinere Uusbildung draabliibe!

Geschter hani uufgrumet. Hei, was da ales fürechoo isch!

Si ziet ires Projäkt vol dure, ooni uf öpper z lose.

Dää Typ hät Millione hinderzoge und isch glich wider devoochoo.

Ich find, das isch z kompliziert gsait, mir müend s no chli abebräche.



# Last but Not Least

Now you can test your knowledge to see if you meet the learning goals of this unit. Solve the exercises below and then check in the solution section and discover how many points you have scored. Here is our advice:

## Points

0-50	Better check out the unit again.
51-80	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
81-100	Great - proceed with the next unit right away!

## D1

### D1.1



Match the advertisements (Standard German) with the appropriate comments from the two (Swiss German). (2 points per pair)

## Free Apartments and Apartment Viewings

De Hassan und d Rozhan erwartet Naachwuchs und sind drum e gröösseri Wonig am Sueche. Si underhalted sich über Wonigsaazaige amene schwarze Brätt.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>1</b> 2,5-Zimmer-Wohnung für junge Familie, 60 m<sup>2</sup> für 2300 CHF</p>  | <p><b>a</b> Hm, das isch wükli bilig. Chönt ja zmindescht e Zwüschelöösig sii.</p>                           |
| <p><b>2</b> 5 Zimmer mit Aussicht auf Zürich Nord, Besichtigung auf Anfrage</p>  | <p><b>b</b> OK, töönt sympathisch, aber wi vil choschtets äch?</p>   |
| <p><b>3</b> Wohnung 65 m<sup>2</sup> zur Zwischenmiete. Bin ein Jahr im Ausland und suche vertrauenswürdige Zwischenmieter, keine eigenen Möbel, dafür günstig (1200 CHF).</p> | <p><b>c</b> Töönt romantisch. Für ois alai gaats nöd, aber me chönt sich ja mit es paar anderne zämetue?</p> |
| <p><b>4</b> 18 m<sup>2</sup> Zimmer zur Untermiete, 800 CHF, Wipkingen</p>   | <p><b>d</b> Mir sind kä Schtudis, also vergiss es.</p>   |
| <p><b>5</b> Vermieten Zimmer an Student oder Studentin. 22 m<sup>2</sup> für 500 CHF, Mitbenutzung Küche Bad</p>   | <p><b>e</b> Uu, noobel ... ich glaub, da fröögemer lieber nööd, hä ...</p>                                   |
| <p><b>6</b> WG in Oerlikon sucht neue Mitbewohner*innen, gerne auch Paar mit Kind</p>  | <p><b>f</b> Das passt supper uf ois. Bitz tüür ischs alerdings scho.</p>                                     |
| <p><b>7</b> Putziges Häuschen mit Garten am Rand von Zürich, 4500 CHF / Mt., Haustiere möglich</p>   | <p><b>g</b> Das chunt gar nöd in Fraag, s isch nöd nume winzig, sondern au z tüür.</p>                       |
| <p><b>8</b> 3 Zimmer Altbau in Wollishofen, 70 m<sup>2</sup>, 1800 CHF kalt. Keine Raucher</p>   | <p><b>h</b> Das isch au no cool, aber du müestisch vo de Zigis wägchoo...</p>                                |

## D1.2



Listen to the dialogue and then answer the questions about it. (3 points per correct answer)



D Friederike ziet us irere Wonig uus. Ire Vermieter hät ire erlaubt, sälber e\*n Naachmieter\*in z sueche. Hüüt telefonierts i mit de Latifah, wo sich für d Wonig intressiert und es paar Fraage hät.

Wän chöntme iizie?  nur im Auguscht  ab Auguscht

Wi hööch isch d Mieti?  1600 Franke  1700 Franke

Wiso ziet d Friederike uus?  S isch ire z tüür worde.  De Vermieter isch nöd fair.

Was sait d Latifah zum Priis?  D Wonig isch tüür.  Si chönted sich s laischte.

Was fäält i de Wonig?  en Balkoon  en Eschtrich

## D2

### D2.1



When moving you have to ask a lot! Give short answers by combining the preposition i 'in' with the words in brackets. Translate the word and pay attention to the correct case (dative or accusative). (1 point per sentence)

## Communicate When Moving

D Latifah hät sich entschide, d Wonig vo de Friederike z übernää. Und scho isch de grooss Taag daa: Di ganz Familie hilft bim Zügge und zwai Fründe sind au no mitchoo.

Wo chömed die Schtüel ane? (kitchen)

Wo sind jetzt d Bluemetöpf? (living room)

Wo söli das anetue? (bathroom)

Wo hät das am beschte Platz? (basement)

Wo isch d Chischte mit de Tähler? (car)

Wo häsch d Madratze-n anetaa? (bedroom)

Wo isch d Rückwand vom Chaschte? (elevator)

Wo ane shteli das am gschidschte? (children's room)

Wo isch dän s Sofa ane choo? (hallway)

Wo chani es Glaas Wasser nää? (kitchen)

## D2.2



After moving your belongings to a new home we continue - unpacking is next! But where are things? For each picture, formulate a suitable question (e.g. *Was isch i däm Sack?*) and answer (e.g. *Bücher*). (1 point per picture for the correct word for the container and 1 point for the contents)




---



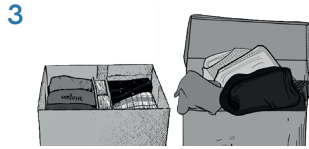
---




---



---




---



---




---



---




---



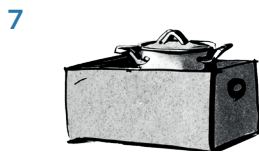
---




---



---




---



---

## D3

### D3.1



The conversation between Rozhan and Hassan got confused. Number the sentences in the correct order from 1 to 10. (1 point per sentence in the correct position)

## Exchange Ideas About Everyday Living

D Rozhan und de Hassan händ e gueti Wonig gfunde und ires Chind, de Farid, isch au scho uf d Wält choo. Jungi Eltere müend sich guet organisiere ...

- R: Wän i wüssti, wo si wider sind, chönti scho...

---

- H: Ich bi da gad oises Znacht am Choche, chasch gärn übernäa ...

---

- R: Jaa, ha si, märsi.

---

- De Chlii faat aafa schreie.*

---

- H: Du Schatz, chasch em Farid bitte d Windle wächsle?

---

- R: Ja waas, wottscht lieber de Papi? Dä isch jetzt aber i de Chuchi, da müemer dich zerscht sauber mache ...

---



- H:** Los, ich tue si imer a de gliich Ort, i de Chaschte-n im Baad, ich weiss au nöd, wiso das si nacher umewandered ...
- R:** Ja soo ... Aso chum, Farid, mir sueched ois es schööns Plätzli.
- H:** D Wickeldecki isch glaub no im Wonzimer.
- R:** Aa, ha si gfunde. Häsch duu kä Ziit?

### D3.2



Answer the questions about the text without reading it again. (3 points per correct answer)

- Wo isch de Hassan?  i de Chuchi  im Baad
- Wo sötted d Windle sii?  im Wonzimer  im Baad
- Wo isch d Windeldecki?  im Wonzimer  i de Chuchi
- Wär wächsled em Farid am Änd d Windle?  d Rozhan  de Hassan
- Wär schreit?  d Rozhan  de Farid

### D3.3



You have probably lived with someone before - with your parents, with a larger family, in a partnership or even with acquaintances. And there was definitely something that bothered you! Find a person who speaks Swiss German well. Tell them what bothered you and how you dealt with it. Then let yourself be evaluated: 20 points are given if your partner understood everything well, 0 points if he or she didn't understand anything at all. Everything in between is also possible.

Notes:

-----

-----

-----

-----

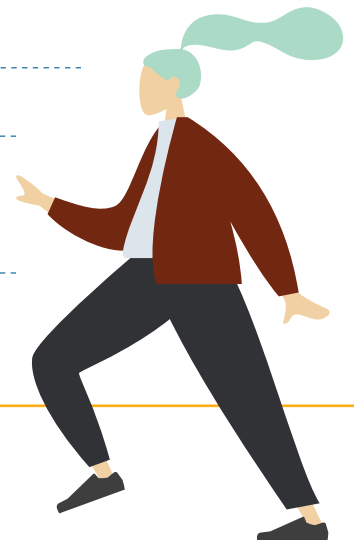
-----

-----

-----

-----

-----





# 6. Relationships and Feelings

## Learning Goals

You're able to...

- ...describe your relationships with different people.
- ...follow conversations about feelings and get yourself involved.
- ...have simple discussions with your partner.

# Uf Wulche 7?

## A1



Read through the dialogues.

K6 –  
Audio A1



Shirin and her best friend Guanghao are chatting. Shirin has romantic news.

**G:** Hei, wi häsch es?

**S:** Guet ... Wulche 7 🌈!

**G:** Verzel?

**S:** Bi verliebt 💕.

**G:** Nai! Wär isch es?

**S:** En noie Bürokolleeg. Eender so-n en ruige, koräkte, aber känsch ja mini Voorliebe ... Ruedi haisster!

**G:** Und du häsch de arm Ruedi gad überfale?

**S:** Ja nai, also nöd sofort ... Aber letscht Wuche han' en dän emal gfrööget für Kino und er hät sich mega gfroit.

**G:** Und dän häts knischtered.

**S:** Ja, aber nur wäg em Popcorn 🍿.

**G:** Und jetzt, sinder zäme?

**S:** Waiss nöd ... S füült sich scho so aa.

**G:** Hei, megaguet 👍!

Reza's girlfriend, on the other hand, broke up with him. He seeks comfort from his friend Nahom via messenger.

R: Sali, lauffts?

N: Jaa, ha frei hüt. Bi diir?

R: Pff, mich nimts gad härt. D Yael hät Schluss gmacht. 😞

N: Ui nai 😱! Wi lang sinder zäme gsii?

R: Fascht zwai Jaar.

N: Megaschaad! Was isch loos gsii?

R: Si hät aifech so gfunde, ich seg ire z unriiff.

N: Du bisch doch megavernünftig.

R: Jaa, fröög nöd 😞. Aigetlich gaats drum, das si unbedingt Chind wott. Aber sorry, ich han aifech kä Luscht uf Goofe!

N: Bisch äbe nanig riiff defür 😊.

R: Gaats no?

N: Chunsch uf es Bier verbii?

R: Hej, märsi Bro. Bi i 20 Minuute daa.

# Introductory Exercises

## A2



Who is what for whom? Connect the names with arrows and write the appropriate descriptions listed in the box on the right side. Can you assign the Swiss German translations to the descriptions?

(a male) friend, (a female) friend, (the) boyfriend/partner, (the) ex-girlfriend

de Koleeg / d Koleegin / de Fründ / d Ex

Shirin

Guanghao

Ruedi

Reza

Nahom

Yael

## A3



The sentences on the right side describe how the characters in the dialogues feel. If you understand the dialogues, you can also understand these sentences. Translate the highlighted words into your language.

- D Shirin isch **verliebt**.

-----

- D Guanghao **froit sich** für d Shirin.

-----

- De Reza isch **truurig** und au echli **hässig**.

----- / -----

- Em Nahom **tuet** de Reza **laid**.

-----

## A4



How do the people behave in the dialogues? Find the correct answer. Do you think this behavior is normal in Switzerland? Is it similar or different in your culture? Is there even such a thing as "normal" behavior? Discuss with a partner.

	a	b
1	Who does Shirin, a woman, talk to about her new love? <input type="checkbox"/> with a woman	<input type="checkbox"/> with a man
2	Who initiated Shirin and Ruedi's first date? <input type="checkbox"/> the woman	<input type="checkbox"/> the man
3	Who ended Reza and Yael's relationship? <input type="checkbox"/> the woman	<input type="checkbox"/> the man
4	How does Reza react to the bad news? <input type="checkbox"/> He doesn't care.	<input type="checkbox"/> He's feeling bad.
5	Who does Reza, a man, talk to about his feelings? <input type="checkbox"/> with a woman	<input type="checkbox"/> with a man

# Spending Your Life Together

In Switzerland, many people live in a (long-term) relationship without being married (*verheiratet*, *ghüüraate*). Many couples live together or have children together without being married. Officially, especially for tax purposes, you are considered "single" (*ledig*, *ledig*) as long as you are not married.

In addition to marriage, there is also the option of concubinage (*Konkubin*, *Konkubinaat*), which entails formal recognition of the partnership, but does not entail the same rights and obligations. Since 2022, same-sex couples are also allowed to marry in Switzerland.

# Vocabulary

## CH

## EN

## DE

### d Voorliebi (d Voorliebene)

Er hät e Voorliebi für Fraue mit churze Haar.

### preference

He has a preference for women with short hair.

### Vorliebe

Er hat eine Vorliebe für Frauen mit kurzen Haaren.

### riiff (riiffer)

Für ires Alter isch d Malaika scho megariiff.

### mature

Malaika is very mature for her age.

### reif

Malaika ist sehr reif für ihr Alter.

### unriiff (unriiffer)

Ich han unriiffi Banaane nöd gärn.

### unripe/immature

I don't like unripe bananas.

### unreif

Ich mag keine unreifen Bananen.

### koräkt (koräkter)

Iri Antwort isch koräkt.

### correct

Your answer is correct.

### korrekt

Ihre Antwort ist korrekt.

### arm (ärmer)

Au i de Schwiiz gits armi Mänsche.

### poor

There are poor people in Switzerland too.

### arm

Auch in der Schweiz gibt es arme Menschen.

### Schluss mache (hät Schluss gmacht)

De Tüpp isch aifech nöd guet für diich, du söttst Schluss mache.

### to break up

The guy is just not good for you, you should break up with him.

### Schluss machen

Der Typ tut dir einfach nicht gut, du solltest Schluss machen.

### laidtue (hät laidtaa)

Es tuet mer laid, hani kä besseri Naachrichte für dich.

### to feel sorry for

I'm sorry I don't have better news for you.

### leidtun

Es tut mir leid, dass ich keine besseren Nachrichten für dich habe.

### sich aafüüle (hät sich aagfüült)

De Kuss hät sich supper aagfüült.

### to feel

The kiss felt great.

### sich anfühlen

Der Kuss hat sich super angefühlt.

### wüetig (wüetiger)

Dä politisch Entscheid hät ois wüetig gmacht.

### angry

This political decision made us angry.

### wütend

Dieser politische Entscheid hat uns wütend gemacht.



**s Bier (d Bier)**

Gömmmer hüt zäme-n es  
Bier go trinke?

**beer**

Are we going to drink a beer  
together today?

**Bier**

Gehen wir heute zusammen  
ein Bier trinken?

**d Wolche (d Wolche)**

Am Himel isch kä ainzigi  
Wulche gsii.

**cloud**

There was not a single cloud  
in the sky.

**Wolke**

Am Himmel war keine einzige  
Wolke.

**de Goof (d Goofe)**

De Zuug isch vol mit Goofe  
gsii, wo di ganz Ziiit ume-  
gschroue händ.

**child, brat**

The train was full of children  
who were screaming the  
whole time.

**Kind, Fratz**

Der Zug war voller Kinder,  
die die ganze Zeit herumge-  
schrien haben.

**verbiichoo (isch verbiichoo)**

Chum doch hüt am 5i bi  
mir verbi.

**to come over**

Come over to my place at 5.

**vorbeikommen**

Komm heute um 5 bei mir  
vorbei.

**überfale (hät überfale)**

D Bank bim Paradeplatz  
isch überfale worde.

**to rob/to ambush sb with sth**

The bank at Paradeplatz was  
robbed.

**überfallen**

Die Bank beim Paradeplatz  
wurde überfallen.

**gaat um (isch um ... ggange)**

I däm Buech gaats um d  
Zuekunft vom Vercheer.

**(it) is about**

This book is about the future  
of transport.

**gehen um**

In diesem Buch geht es um  
die Zukunft des Verkehrs.

**sofort**

D Georgina mues sofort i s  
Schpitaal, si hät sich s Bai  
proche.

**immediately**

Georgina has to go to the  
hospital immediately becau-  
se she has broken her leg.

**sofort**

Georgina muss sofort ins  
Spital, sie hat sich ihr Bein  
gebrochen.

**emal**

Ich wott au emal an e  
Kundgäbig gaa.

**some day**

I want to go to a demonstra-  
tion some day.

**(ein)mal**

Ich will auch mal zu einer  
Kundgebung gehen.

K6 -  
Hauptwortschatz



# Grammar

In this unit we take a closer look at the two subjunctives.

## Subjunctive I

The subjunctive I is rarely used in standard German and usually only when writing. In Swiss German, however, the subjunctive I is often used – especially when speaking! Its meaning is best understood through an example. The decisive verb form is the one at the very end of the sentence:

	Example sentences	Explanation
<b>Standard (Indicative)</b>	Si händ em Andrej gsait, es rägnet.	They told Andrej that it was raining – and it's really raining.
<b>Subjunctive I</b>	Si händ em Andrej gsait, es rägni.	They told Andrej that it was raining – but whether that was true is unclear.

So, the subjunctive I is used when we don't know exactly whether what someone says, thinks or feels is actually true. You can also use it when you have doubts or even when you know for sure that something is wrong:

	Example sentences	Translation
<b>Standard (Indicative)</b>	Di richtig Antwort isch, das Bärn d Hauptschtatt vo de Schwiiz isch.	The correct answer is that Bern is the capital of Switzerland.
<b>Subjunctive I</b>	Si maint, Gänf segi d Hauptschtatt vo de Schwiiz.	She thinks that Geneva is the capital of Switzerland.

Uncertainty, doubt and rejection are common when we talk about other people's statements, thoughts and feelings, which is why the subjunctive I is so common.

The forms of the subjunctive I in Swiss German are significantly different from the standard forms ("indicative"). Here is an example of the form of *mache* 'do':

<b>1st pers. sg.</b>	ich mach-i	I make	ich mache
<b>2nd pers. sg.</b>	du mach-isch	you make	du machest
<b>3rd pers. sg.</b>	är/si/es mach-i	he/she/it makes	er/sie/es mache
<b>1st pers. pl.</b>	mir mach-id	we make	wir machen
<b>2nd pers. pl.</b>	ir mach-id	you make	ihr machet
<b>3rd pers. pl.</b>	si mach-id	they make	sie machen

All in all, the subjunctive I is more regular than the indicative. Umlauts and short forms that are present in the indicative are missing in the subjunctive I. Here are a few examples (all 3rd pers. sg.):

Basic form	Indicative	Subjunctive I
<i>läse</i> 'lesen'	si list	si läsi
<i>gää</i> 'geben'	er git	er gäb(i)
<i>chöne</i> 'können'	es chaa	es chön(i)
<i>müese</i> 'müssen'	si mues	si mües(i)
<i>ligge</i> 'liegen'	er liit	er liggi
<i>säge</i> 'sagen'	es sait	es sägi

However, a very few common verbs have irregular subjunctive I forms:

Basic form	Indicative	Subjunctive I
<i>choo</i> 'come'	si chunt	si chöm(i)
<i>gaa</i> 'go'	er gaat	er gäch(i)
<i>gschee</i> 'happen'	es gschiiit	es gschääch(i)
<i>gsee</i> 'see'	si gseet	si gsääch(i)
<i>haa</i> 'have'	er hät	er heg(i)
<i>laa</i> 'let'	es laat	es lös(i)
<i>schlaa</i> 'hit'	si schlaat	si schlög(i)
<i>schtaa</i> 'stand'	si schtaat	si schtönd(i)
<i>sii</i> 'be'	er isch	er seg(i)
<i>tue</i> 'do'	es tuet	es tüeg(i)

Ich ha tänkt,  
du gächsch  
hai!



## Subjunctive II

The subjunctive II is used with statements that are not necessarily true, but that are possible: what if...? There is the subjunctive II in the present (circumstances could still occur) and in the past (circumstances can no longer occur). Sounds complicated? It will be clearer with an example:

	Swiss German	Translation	Explanation
<b>Standard (Indicative)</b>	Wän s nacher rägnet, bliibemer dihai.	If it rains later, we'll stay at home.	It is quite possible that it will rain later.
<b>Subjunctive II (Present)</b>	Wän s wenigschstens wür rägne, wüürs au chüeler.	If it at least rained, it would also be cooler.	It's not raining at the moment. Theoretically, however, that could change.
<b>Subjunctive II (Past)</b>	Wän s geschter grägnethetti, hetti hüt nödmüese go güüsse.	If it had rained yesterday, I wouldn't have had to water the plants today.	It didn't rain yesterday. Nobody can change that now.

As in standard German, there are different methods for forming the subjunctive II.

1. For a few but very common verbs, the form of the verb changes in the present subjunctive II and endings are added that look almost exactly like in the indicative. Three important examples are *sii* 'be', *haa* 'have' and *wärde* 'become':

### *sii* 'to be': Subjunctive II

<b>1st pers. sg.</b>	ich wäär	I would be	ich wäre
<b>2nd pers. sg.</b>	du wäärsch	you would be	du wärst
<b>3rd pers. sg.</b>	är/si/es wäär	he/she/it would be	er/sie/es wäre
<b>1st pers. pl.</b>	mir wääred	we would be	wir wären
<b>2nd pers. pl.</b>	ir wääred	you would be	ihr wärt
<b>3rd pers. pl.</b>	si wääred	they would be	sie wären

### *haa* 'to have': Subjunctive II

<b>1st pers. sg.</b>	ich hett	I would have	ich hätte
<b>2nd pers. sg.</b>	du hettsch	you would have	du hättest
<b>3rd pers. sg.</b>	är/si/es hett	he/she/it would have	er/sie/es hätte
<b>1st pers. pl.</b>	mir hetted	we would have	wir hätten
<b>2nd pers. pl.</b>	ir hetted	you would have	ihr hättet
<b>3rd pers. pl.</b>	si hetted	they would have	sie hätten



wärde 'to become': Subjunctive II			
1st pers. sg.	ich wüür	I would become	ich würde
2nd pers. sg.	du wüürsch	you would become	du würdest
3rd pers. sg.	är/si/es wüür	he/she/it would become	er/sie/es würde
1st pers. pl.	mir würed	we would become	wir würden
2nd pers. pl.	ir würed	you would become	ihr würdet
3rd pers. pl.	si würed	they would become	sie würden

2. If you learn the verb forms above, you will be able to form the subjunctive II much more easily for all other verbs, by using the forms of **wärde** as an auxiliary verb: **ich wür ässe** 'I would eat', **du wüürsch läse** 'you would read', **mir würed schlaaffe** 'we would sleep' etc. Some verbs also allow an irregular form (e.g. **ich wür choo** 'I would come' → **ich chiemti**, **du wüürsch gaa** 'you would go' → **du giengtisch**). But it's not a problem if you don't know these forms, because the paraphrase with **wärde** always works – except for **sii**, **haa** and **wärde** itself.

The subjunctive II of the past is always formed with auxiliary verbs, namely with **haa** or **sii** according to the same rules as the past tense (chap. 2). The only difference is that **haa** and **sii** take on their irregular subjunctive II forms. Here are some examples:

Auxiliary verb	Indicative	Subjunctive II
<b>haa</b>	ich ha glueget 'I looked'	ich hett glueget 'I would have looked'
	du häsch gschriben 'you wrote'	du hettsch gschriben 'you would have written'
	mir händ güsst 'we knew'	mir hetted güsst 'we would have known'
<b>sii</b>	ich bi gfloge 'I flew'	ich wär gfloge 'I would have flown'
	du bisch gloffe 'you ran'	du wärsch gloffe 'you would have run'
	mir sind gschtannde 'we stood'	mir wäred gschtannde 'we would have stood'

# Exercises

## B1



Put the verbs in brackets in the subjunctive I.

Was isch aigetlich mit de Felicia loos?

Si hät gmaint, ire \_\_\_\_\_ (gaa) hüt gar nöd guet und si \_\_\_\_\_ (sii) müed.

Wie gseeni hüt so uus?

De Pedro hät s Gfüül, du \_\_\_\_\_ (gsee) megamüed uus, aber iich finde, s gaat.

Du Abdul, wän chömeder ois itz cho bsueche?

Mini Fründin findt, Frittig \_\_\_\_\_ (sii) de bescht Taag.

Ich gibe der s Gäld nööchtscht Wuche, isch guet?

Hm, de Federico hät gmaint, ir \_\_\_\_\_ (gää) mer s Gäld ali scho die Wuche zrug.

Waisch duu, wär hüt zaabig nach em Fäscht de Ruum bschlüsst?

Ja, de Jem und d Nura händ gsait, si \_\_\_\_\_ (mache) das.

## B2

## Wän ...

### B2.1



What do you wish for? Connect the beginning of the sentence with the appropriate ending.

- |    |  |   |   |
|----|--|---|---|
| 1  | Wän s nöd wür rägne,                   | a | chönti oi gad no mini Fründin voorschele.         |
| 2  | Wän d im dini Liebi wüsch geschtaa,    | b | chönntesi dän wiiterschaffe.                      |
| 3  | Wän er zu miir chiemted,               | c | wäri vil produktiver.                             |
| 4  | Wän i nöd müest schlaaffe,             | d | chöntemer jetz go Velo faare.                     |
| 5  | Wän si äntlich färtig mit Ässe wäred,  | e | wärer de glücklichscht Mänsch uf de Wält.         |
| 6  | Wän er mee wür flirte,                 | f | würer ire vilich äntlich uuffale.                 |
| 7  | Wän si mir nöd ab und zue wür scribe,  | g | würemer ois besser verschtaa.                     |
| 8  | Wän si weniger unriiff wäred,          | h | hettemer es Probleem - de Chüelschrank isch läär! |
| 9  | Wän d dich wükli für mich wüsch froie, | i | wüsch nöd so unzfride driiluege.                  |
| 10 | Wän er no Hunger hetted,               | j | würi mer no mee Sorge mache.                      |

### B2.2



Find your own conclusion for the following sentences and invent further examples.

- Wän d mer besser wüsch zuelose, .....
- Wän si hüt i d Feerie chönt, .....
- Wän ich nöd inere feschte Bezieig wär, .....
- Wämmer Chind hetted, , .....
- Wän ....., .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....



Put the following sentences in the past subjunctive.

Example:

Wän er mit mir Schluss wür mache, würi hüüle.

→ Wän er mit mir Schluss gmacht hett, hetti ghüület.

Mir würed s wüsse, wän si iri Partnerin wür betrüge.

-----  
S wür vil mee Schpaass mache, wän du au debii wärsch.

-----  
Wän d der weniger Sorge würsch mache, würsch vil mee erraiche.

-----  
Wän si baidi nöd eso ifersüchtig wäred, wür doch die Bezieig supper lauffe.

-----  
Wän ich riich wär, würi minere Mueter es Huus chauffe.

-----  
Wän er weniger schtriite würed, wär ich megagücklich.

-----  
Wän ich mis Portmonnaie wür verlüüre, müestisch halt duu für ois zale.

### B3



Find a suitable word from the box on the right side and use it in the correct form.

froie / laid tue / Schluss mache / ruig / unriiff / verliebt / zäme sii / knischtere / Goof / Voorliebi

S hät mer mega \_\_\_\_\_, das si sich tränt händ.

Si isch so \_\_\_\_\_, das si nume a in dänkt.

Über s Natel Schluss z mache, isch doch totaal \_\_\_\_\_!

Är isch en zimli \_\_\_\_\_ Tüpp, sait imer nur daas, wo-n er mues.

Ich wür mich imfal \_\_\_\_\_, wän i so-n e liebi Fründin hetti wi du!

Jetzt sind s drüü Jaar, das mer \_\_\_\_\_.

Chind hetti aigetlich scho gärn, nur bitte kä müesami \_\_\_\_\_!

Tüppe mit roote Haar findi totaal sexy. Ich waiss, isch echli e spezielli  
-----

Si hät \_\_\_\_\_ mit mir. Ich ha de ganz Samschtig prüelt.

Also wo mer ois geschter im Lift troffe händ, häts irgendwie  
-----



## B4



The rumor mill is churning: you heard something (subjunctive I), but you're not sure if it's true. But you can imagine that it would be like this (Subjunctive II)!

Adjust the given sentences.

Here is a sample:

Statement

Schpööter gaat no en Zuug.

Conclusion

Dänn chani ja no lenger bliibe!

Si hät gsait, **schpööter gächi no en Zuug.** (Subjunctive I)

Wän das schtimt, **chönti ja no lenger bliibe!** (Subjunctive II)

D Zarmine und d Emma händ sich tränt.

S tuet mer megalaid für sii!

Ich ha ghöört, \_\_\_\_\_.

Wän das schtimt, \_\_\_\_\_.

De Ardzan hät scho wider e noii Fründin.

Mich häts härt gnoo.

De Ardzan hät verzelt, \_\_\_\_\_.

Wän iich sini Ex wär, \_\_\_\_\_.

Em Michi sini Eltere sind wider zämechoo.

Ich bi gärn wider emal chrank.

Geschter häts ghaisse, \_\_\_\_\_.

Wän das schtimt, \_\_\_\_\_.

Verliebtsii isch wine Chranket.

Das froit mi totaal für in!

Öpper hät gsait, \_\_\_\_\_.

Wän das esoo wär, \_\_\_\_\_.

De Tim hät d May Myat betroge.

Ich ha scho lang mit däm Arschloch Schluss gmacht.

D May Myat hät verzelt, \_\_\_\_\_.

Wän ich sii wär, \_\_\_\_\_.

## Statement

De Paolo hät sich i mich verliebt.

## Conclusion

Ich bi uf Wulche 7!

De Paolo hät mer gschriben, \_\_\_\_\_.

Wän das schimmt, \_\_\_\_\_.

Di baide hüüraated dää Sumer.

Ich wird daa dezue au gärn  
iiiglade.

Ich ha ghöört, \_\_\_\_\_.

Wän s dän e Hochzig git, \_\_\_\_\_.

De Tuân hät öppis mit em Chef  
am Lauffe.

Das füült sich glaub  
falsch aa.

Im Büro häts ghaisse, \_\_\_\_\_.

Wän iich de Chef wür date, \_\_\_\_\_.

Ich ha mich  
verliebt!



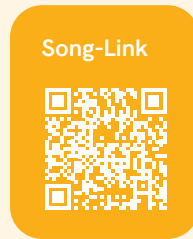
# Deepen Your Knowledge

C1

Ich dank a dich



Listen to the song "Schriibe" by the Zurich singer Phenomden (e.g. on YouTube) and try to understand as much as possible. Then complete the exercises. In the solution section you will also find a transcript that you can use for help.



Song-Link

CH

EN

DE

**s Gfüül (d Gfüül)**

D Liebi isches schtarchs Gfüül.

**feeling**

Love is a strong feeling.

**Gefühl**

Liebe ist ein starkes Gefühl.

**d Liebi (-)**

Mee Liebi, weniger Hass!

**to love**

More love, less hate!

**Liebe**

Mehr Liebe, weniger Hass!

**liideschaftlich  
(liideschaftlicher)**

Esoo e liideschaftlichi Beziehung hani no nie gha!

**passionate**

I've never had such a passionate relationship!

**leidenschaftlich**

So eine leidenschaftliche Beziehung hatte ich noch nie!

**vertroue (hät vertrout)**

Si isch emal betroge worde, jetzt vertrout sie niemertem mee.

**to trust**

She was once cheated on, and now she trusts no one anymore.

**vertrauen**

Sie wurde mal betrogen, jetzt vertraut sie niemandem mehr.

**fääle (hät gfäält)**

Du häsch ächt gfäält bi de Party!

**to miss, to lack**

You were really missed at the party!

**fehlen**

Du hast echt gefehlt bei der Party!

**d\*e Partner\*in (d Partner\*ine)**

D Rona hät scho lang en noie Partner.

**partner**

Rona has had a new partner for a long time.

**Partner\*in**

Rona hat schon lange einen neuen Partner.

**di/de Bekanti (di Bekante)**

Ischsi e Bekanti vo dir?

**acquaintance**

Is she an acquaintance of yours?

**Bekannte**

Ist sie eine Bekannte von dir?

**hasse (hät ghasst)**

Hass mich bitte nöd, ich chas widerguetmache.

**to hate**

Please don't hate me, I can make it up to you.

**hassen**

Hass mich bitte nicht, ich kann es wiedergutmachen.

**betrüge (hät betroge)**

Ich wünsch niemertem, betroge z wärde!

**to cheat**

I don't wish anyone to be cheated on!

**betrügen**

Ich wünsche niemandem, betrogen zu werden!

**ifersüchtig (ifersüchtiger)**

Sit mer e feschts Bezieg händ, isch de Yann so ifersüchtig worde.

**jealous**

Since we have a committed relationship, Yann has become so jealous.

**eifersüchtig**

Seit wir eine feste Beziehung haben, ist Yann so eifersüchtig geworden.

**sich uufrege (hät sich uufgret)**

Min Maa regt sich ab em Chliinschte scho uuf!

**to feel upset**

My husband is already upset about the smallest thing!

**sich aufregen**

Mein Mann regt sich wegen dem Kleinsten schon auf!

**roie (hät groit)**

Es roit mi, das ich ire nüm aaglüte han.

**to regret**

I regret not calling her again.

**bereuen**

Ich bereue, sie nicht mehr angerufen zu haben.

**sich entschuldige (hät sich entschuldigt)**

Er hät sich hüt Morge für sis Verhalte entschuldigt.

**to apologize**

He apologized for his behavior today.

**sich entschuldigen**

Er hat sich heute für sein Verhalten entschuldigt.

**d Langwiili (-)**

Mir sind imer so aktiv, Langwiili isch es Främdwort für ois.

**boredom**

We are always so active, boredom is a foreign concept for us.

**Langeweile**

Wir sind immer so aktiv, Langeweile ist ein Fremdwort für uns.

**d Sorg (d Sorge)**

Machs der Sorge um dini Familie?

**worry**

Are you worried about your family?

**Sorge**

Machst du dir Sorgen um deine Familie?

**d Kataschtroofe (d Kataschtroofene)**

S wär e Kataschtroofe, wän si sich würed träne.

**disaster**

It would be a disaster if they are separated.

**Katastrophe**

Es wäre eine Katastrophe, wenn sie sich trennen würden.

**der Unfal (d Unfäl)**

Ojee, s hät wider emal en Unfal ggää.

**accident**

Oh dear, there's been an accident again.

**Unfall**

Ohje, es hat wiederum einen Unfall gegeben.

**schmaisse (hät gschmisse)**

S Chind schmaisst gad d Fläsche-n us sogar (-) em Wage.

**to throw**

The child is throwing the bottle out of the cart at the moment.

**schmeissen**

Das Kind schmeisst gerade die Flasche aus dem Wagen.

**schreie (hät gschrait)**

Schrei mich bitte nöd aa!

**to shout**

Please don't shout at me!

**schreien**

Schrei mich bitte nicht an!

**nachane**

Zersch mueni schaffe, nachane gaani no e chli a di fräsch Luft.

**next**

First I have to work, next I'll go out for some fresh air.

**danach**

Zuerst muss ich arbeiten, danach gehe ich noch ein bisschen an die frische Luft.

**schtändig (-)**

Die zwai schtriited schtändig, s isch megaschaad!

**constantly**

The two are constantly arguing, it's such a shame!

**ständig**

Die zwei streiten ständig, es ist megaschade!

**völig (-)**

Du häsch völig rächt!

**absolutely**

You are absolutely right!

**völlig**

Du hast völlig recht!

**egaal sii (isch egaal gsii)**

S isch mer ales egaal.

**indifferent**

I don't care about anything.

**egal**

Mir ist alles egal.

**totaal (-)**

Das isch doch en totaale Misch!

**total**

That's total nonsense!

**total**

Das ist doch totaler Blödsinn!

**wenigschtens**

Wenigschtens chömmmer no Fründ bliibe.

**at least**

At least we can still be friends.

**wenigstens**

Wenigstens können wir noch Freunde bleiben.

**sogaar (-)**

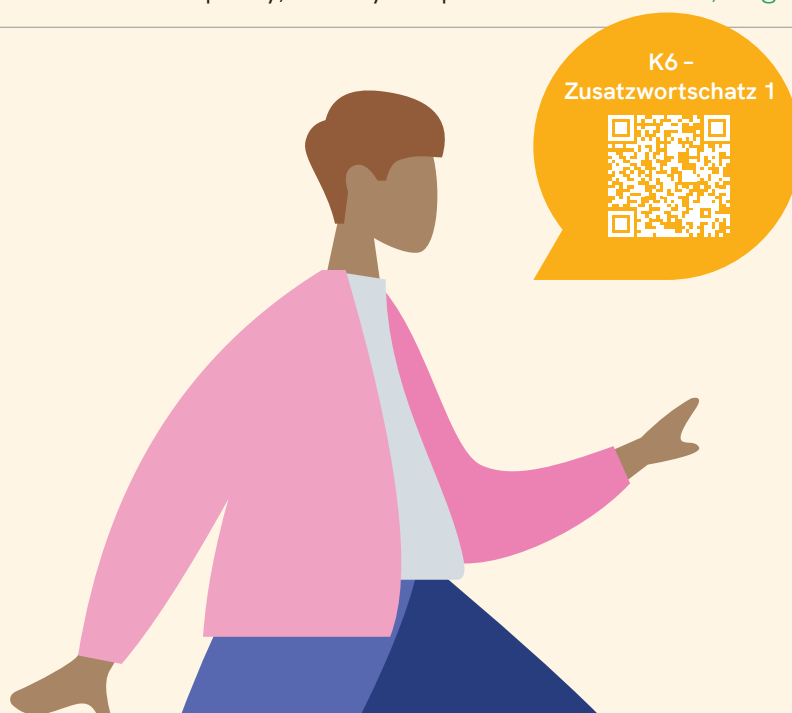
Es chönd ali a s Fäscht choo, sogaar dini Eltere.

**even**

Everyone can come to the party, even your parents.

**sogar**

Es können alle ans Fest kommen, sogar deine Eltern.



## C1.1



Answer the following questions on the song "*Schriibe*" by the Zurich-based singer Phenomden.

1. What is the relationship between the singer and the person to whom he is addressing the song?

---



---

2. What does the singer mean by the expression '*Liebi nöd Teilziit*'?

---



---

3. Write down those parts of the song in Swiss German that directly describe the relationship between the two.

---



---

4. Why do you think the singer writes SMS '*mit zittrige Händ*' in the last chorus?

---



---

## C1.2



Think about a person you haven't contacted for a long time but who you might think about again and again. Write a message in Swiss German.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

## C1.3



The singer is not sure about everything he sings. Insert the appropriate form of the subjunctive I into the following sentences.

Er fröög sich, öb s de andere Person ächt guet \_\_\_\_\_.

Er glaubt, er \_\_\_\_\_ de andere Person schriibe.

Er überlait sich, öb si sich villich z vil gsee \_\_\_\_\_.

Er hät s Gfüül, die Verbindig \_\_\_\_\_ es Läbe lang.

Er glaubt, si \_\_\_\_\_ seer verliebt inenand gsii.

## C2



Read the text.

## S Gfüülskarusel

In relationships you can experience almost all feelings. Below you can see statements from different people about their experiences.

Mir **vertroued** enand. Äär laat mich zum Biischpil mit siim Auto faare und iich in mit miim. Mir chönted au baidi alai i d Feerie faare, das wär überhaupt käs Problem.

Mini Fründin macht sich schtändig **Sorge**. Wän i nur über s Wuchenänd mit Koleege wäg bin und am Aabig nöd aalüüte, hätsi scho s Gfüül, ich chönti en Unfal ghaa ha. Wenigschtens isch si nöd **ifersüchtig** – öb s Koleege oder Koleegine sind, isch nämlich egaal!

Won i no jünger gsii bi, hani au emal e seer e **liideschaftlichi** Bezieig ghaa. Mir händ baidi schtändig wele zäme sii und wän s nöd ggange-n isch, ischs jedes Maal e Kataschtroofe gsii. Min Fründ hät mer sogar no Brieff gschribe!

Geschter simmer sit aim Jaar ghüüraate. lich hett s villich vergässe, aber mini Frau hät draa tänkt und en Bluemeschtruus gholt. Das hät mi mega **gfroit!**

Wo mis Mami gschorbe-n isch, isch es glaub für de Papi am schlimschte gsii. Si sind ja driisg Jaar lang es Paar gsii, das isch dän, wi wän aim uf s Mal en Arm oder es Bai wär fääle. Er hät nacher zwai Jaar lang fascht nüüt me gredd und isch imer nur **truurig** gsii.

Letscht Wuche hät sich mini Fründin mega **uufgreet**. Si hät sogar gschrue und es Buech uf de Bode gschmisse wägere völlig chliine Sach. Nachane hät si s aber **groit** und si hät sich entschuldiget. S wär au ales wider guet, wän das nur nöd so oft wär passiere!

Mir chas passiere, das i öpper zerscht **liebe** und schpööter **hasse**. Ich ha zum Biischpil emal en Partner ghaa, won i tänkt haa, das seg jetzt di grooss Liebi für s Läbe. Aber dän häter mi miteme andere Tüpp betroge, no dezue miteme Bekante vo ois. Ich bi so **wüetig** gsii, das di ganz Liebi aifach vo hüt uf morn ewäg gsii isch!

Wo min Maa mir gsait hät, er weli sich träne, bin i total **überrascht** gsii. Ich han imer s Gfüül ghaa, es lauffi guet! Wän i das gwüsst hetti, hetti sicher es paar Sache anderscht gmacht.

**de Gschmack (d Gschmäcker)**

Das isch nöd min Gschmack, sorry.

**taste**

That's not my taste, sorry.

**Geschmack**

Das ist nicht mein Geschmack, sorry.

**de Blitz (d Blitze)**

Plötzlich schlaat d Liebi wie de Blitz ii.

**lightning**

Suddenly love strikes like lightning.

**Blitz**

Plötzlich schlägt die Liebe wie ein Blitz ein.

**funke (hät gfunkt)**

Zwüsched ine häts gfunkt!

**to spark**

There was a spark between them!

**funken**

Zwischen ihnen hat es gefunkt!

**gwundrig (gwundriger)**

Si hät imer so gwundrig glueget.

**curious**

She always looked so curious.

**neugierig**

Sie hat immer so neugierig geschaut.

**d Kurve (d Kurvene)**

Achtung, da vore chunt e scharfi Kurve.

**curve**

Be careful, there is a sharp curve ahead.

**Kurve**

Achtung, da vorne kommt eine scharfe Kurve.

**s Lächle (d Lächle)**

Sis Lächle isch aifach wunderschöön!

**smile**

His smile is just beautiful!

**Lächeln**

Sein Lächeln ist einfach wunderschön!

**s Läder (d Leder)**

Sind die Schue us ächtem Läder?

**leather**

Are these shoes made of real leather?

**Leder**

Sind diese Schuhe aus echtem Leder?

**mälde (hät gmolde)**

Wän d beläschtigt wirsch, muesch das unbedingt mälde.

**to report**

If you are being harassed, you must definitely report it.

**melden**

Wenn du belästigt wirst, musst du das unbedingt melden.

**d Useforderig (d Useforderige)**

D Ehe isch en Useforderig für s Läbe.

**challenge**

Marriage is a challenge for life.

**Herausforderung**

Die Ehe ist eine Herausforderung fürs Leben.

**s Zädeli (d Zädeli)**

Ich ha das ales uf es Zädeli gschribe ghaa, wo isch des ane?

**slip of paper**

I wrote it all down on a slip of paper, where did it go?

**Zettel**

Ich hatte das alles auf einen Zettel geschrieben, wo ist der hin?

**s Portemonnaie**

Häsch dis Portemonnaie debii?

**wallet**

Do you have your wallet with you?

**Portemonnaie**

Hast du dein Portemonnaie dabei?



*Nämlich* is used to justify why one says something like: *Schalt de Färnsee uus, s isch nämlich scho schpaat* 'Turn off the TV, because it's already late.' Sometimes it is also used before a short insert that describes something in more detail: *Geschter hät öpper, nämlich de Orhan, i de Nacht zimli luut i de Chuchi umegwärlket* 'Yesterday someone, namely Orhan, was fiddling around and making noise in the kitchen at night.'

## C2.1



Try to deduce from the context what the emotional words highlighted in the texts mean.



## C2.2



Positive and negative feelings belong together! On the right side are some of the feelings from the texts listed again as nouns alongside their opposites. Unlock the meanings and connect what belongs together.

- 1 Vertraue
- 2 Sorge
- 3 Liideschaft
- 4 Truur
- 5 Wuet
- 6 Roi
- 7 Liebi

- a Schtolz
- b Langwiili
- c Ifersucht
- d Hass
- e Zfridehait
- f Glassehait
- g Froid

## C2.3



Pick out the statements from the texts that are about feelings. Then imagine that none of this had happened at all: put the statement in the appropriate subjunctive II and add a suitable condition. Example: *Mir vertraued enand.* → *Mir würed enand vertraue, wämmer ois scholenger käne würed.* 'We would trust each other if we had known each other for a long time.' Say the finished sentences out loud before writing them down.

Notes:

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



Feelings can of course not only be experienced in romantic relationships, but also in the family, in friendships and sometimes with strangers. Who or what do the following emotional verbs and adjectives apply to you? Formulate answers to the questions and try to add a short explanation. For example like this: *Ich vertrau mim Brüeder, wil me mit im au echli verruckti Sache cha mache.* 'I trust my brother because you can do some crazy things with him.'

Um wäär machsch der Sorge?

-----

Mit wäm oder waas bisch zfride?

-----

Über wäär regsch dich uuf?

-----

Wäm vertrousch?

-----

Uf wäär oder waas bisch schtolz?

-----

Was hät dich zletscht groit?

-----

Wäär liebsch und wär häsch gärn?

-----

Wäär hassisch?

-----

Über waas oder für wäär froisch dich amigs?

-----

Uf wäär bisch niidisch?

-----



Ich ha dich  
gärn.

Ich dich  
au.





There used to be a section in some newspapers where you could contact people you saw or met somewhere, especially on public transport. Here is a selection of advertisements. Please take note that voCHabular spelling is not used here – people write spontaneously, like in real life!

### Schatzchäschtli

Gester am Bahnhof Bilte, S2 am 7:25 – du im rote Mini häsch mit dim ungläubliche Lächle min Tag versüesst! Meld dich doch, [biltenforever@bluevvin.ch](mailto:biltenforever@bluevvin.ch)

Xee dich fascht jede tag im 340i: gross, beigi läderjagge, immer am compi am Schaf-fe! Häsch mi mega gwundrig gmacht ... 073 040 22 46.

Hey schöne Mänsch, chan immer nonig gläubä, dass es dich git, aber Wunder git's immer wieder! Wämmer mal zämä Zug fahre? Mo bis Mi i de S14 8:42 ab Wetzike

Du: blondi Haar, mega schöni Kurve, Auge winen grüne Blitz. Mir gsend eus jedä Abig zwüschet Rauti-strass und Milchbuck und du luegsch immer so herzig. Würd mich freue, wennd mal schriibsch! [myfairlady@poscht.ch](mailto:myfairlady@poscht.ch)

Am Dunnschtig isch dir am Züüghus-Brunne dis Portemonnaie abegheit. Woni dir ghulfe han, händ sich oisi Blick troffe ... und s hät gfunkt! Ich han das Zädeli mit dinere Nummere verlore, bitte bitte chum mi cho sueche!

Geschter vorem Coop am Sterne hämmer nur es paar Wörter gwächslet. Jetzt bringi di nümme us mim Chopf use! Lust uf en Kafi, morn am 5i am glyche Ort?

Jede Morge im 5er-Tram bisch Musik am Lose. Häsch en megaguete Gschmack! Dörfi mal i dini Wält inelose? Chasch mer schribe uf 073 088 34 91.

**de Chindsgi (d Chindsgis)**

Isch dini Tochter itz au scho im Chindsgi?

**kindergarten**

Is your daughter already in kindergarten?

**Kindergarten**

Ist deine Tochter jetzt auch schon im Kindergarten?

**d Wösch (-)**

Häsch du au no Wösch zum Mache?

**laundry**

Do you still have laundry to do?

**Wäsche**

Hast du auch noch Wäsche zu Machen?

**s Tiischi (d Tiischi)**

Ich träg nur wiissi Tiischi.

**t-shirt**

I only wear white T-shirts.

**T-Shirt**

Ich trage nur weisse T-Shirts.

**de Schtaub (-)**

S hät wider emal uuvil Schtaub under em Bett.

**dust**

There is once again a lot of dust under the bed.

**Staub**

Es hat wieder einmal super-viel Staub unter dem Bett.

**de Schtaubsuuger (d Schtaubsuuger)**

Ich han ändlich en noie Schtaubsuuger kaufft.

**vacuum cleaner**

I finally bought a new vacuum cleaner.

**Staubsauger**

Ich habe endlich einen neuen Staubsauger gekauft.

**pfläge (hät pflägt)**

Er pflägt sini Grosmueter dihaime.

**to take care of**

He takes care of his grandmother at home.

**pflügen**

Er pflegt seine Grossmutter zuhause.

**organisiere (hät organisiert)**

Mir sind gad oisi Hochzig am Organisiere.

**to organize**

We are currently in the process of organizing our wedding.

**organisieren**

Wir sind gerade dabei, unsere Hochzeit zu organisieren.

**a de Rei sii (isch a de Reigsii)**

Ich passe, du bisch a de Reie.

**to be someone's turn**

I pass, it's your turn.

**an der Reihe sein**

Ich passe, du bist an der Reihe.

**uuffale (isch uufgfale)**

Du bisch mir scho vo de erschte Begägnig aa uufgfale.

**to notice**

You caught my eye the first time I met you.

**auffallen**

Du bist mir schon seit der ersten Begegnung aufgefallen.

**tuusche (hät tuuschet)**

Früener hani imer mit mine Fründine Chlaider tuuschet.

**to swap**

I used to always swap clothes with my friends.

**tauschen**

Früher habe ich immer mit meinen Freundinnen Kleider getauscht.

**uusetze (hät uusgsetzt)**  
Immer häsch öppis uussetze, das närvt!

**to complain**  
You always have something to complain about, which is annoying!

**aussetzen**  
Immer hast du etwas aussetzen, das nervt!

**de Uusgang (-)**  
Gaasch oft in Uusgang?

**to go out, to celebrate**  
Do you go out often?

**Weggehen, Feiern**  
Gehst du oft aus?

**d Naachricht (d Naachrichte)**  
Ich chönt mal wider e gueti Naachricht bruuche.

**news**  
I could do with some good news again.

**Nachricht**  
Ich könnte wieder mal eine gute Nachricht brauchen.

**höchstens**  
Die Bezieig hebt höchstens es paar Wuche!

**at most**  
This relationship will last a few weeks at most!

**höchstens**  
Diese Beziehung hält höchstens ein paar Wochen!

K6 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 3



### C3.1



What do the following phrases from the texts (written in voCHa-bular spelling) mean?

öpperem de Taag versüesse \_\_\_\_\_

Wunder gits imer wider \_\_\_\_\_

s hät gfunkt \_\_\_\_\_

es paar Wörter wächsle \_\_\_\_\_

öpper nüm us em Chopf usebringe \_\_\_\_\_

### C3.2



What would your own treasure chest look like? Write a message with a maximum of three lines.

### C3.3



Which messages of the treasure chest appeal to you the most, which least - and why? How likely do you think it is that the person addressed will get in touch? Discuss with a partner.

# Flirting

In recent years, flirting and meeting new people in Switzerland have noticeably shifted to dating apps and websites such as Tinder or Bumble. There are also separate apps for different ages, sexual orientations or beliefs.

But of course flirting also takes place outside of the internet, when you go out or in everyday life in general. While in some countries it is common

practice to whistle or shout at people on the street if you find them attractive, in Switzerland this is considered very unpleasant and indecent. You should only touch or hug people if the other person agrees to it.

## C4

## Chasch das nöd duu mache?

K6 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 4



### CH

### EN

### DE

#### s Lied (d Lieder)

Das Lied hani scho mal im Radio ghöört!

#### song

I've heard this song on the radio before!

#### Lied

Das Lied habe ich schon mal im Radio gehört!

#### de Waansin (-)

Aifech de Waansin, was passiert isch!

#### craziness

It's just crazy what happened!

#### Wahnsinn

Einfach Wahnsinn, was passiert ist!

#### d Wunde (d Wundene)

Hoffentlich hailet d Wunde schnäl.

#### wound

Hopefully the wound heals quickly.

#### Wunde

Hoffentlich heilt die Wunde schnell.

#### schpaichere (hät gschpaicheret)

Irgendwie chani dini Numere nöd schpaichere.

#### to save

Somehow I can't save your number.

#### speichern

Irgendwie kann ich deine Nummer nicht speichern.

#### schief (schiefer)

S Bild hangt irgendwie schief.

#### crooked

The picture is somehow crooked.

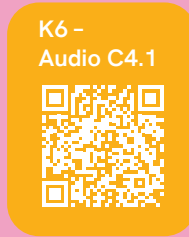
#### schief

Das Bild hängt irgendwie schief.

## C4.1



When you live together, you also share the housework... right? Listen to the mini-dialogues on this topic. After each dialogue, you will hear one or two comprehension questions that you can answer directly orally.



## C4.2



In each of the dialogues there is a minor or major disagreement. In each case, think about what the person whose turn it would be at the end could say to strike a reconciliatory tone. You can look up the transcripts in the solution section.

Dialog 1: Faizal: \_\_\_\_\_

Dialog 2: Tina: \_\_\_\_\_

Dialog 3: Nico \_\_\_\_\_

Dialog 4: Lars: \_\_\_\_\_

## C4.3



How do the people in the dialogues feel? Formulate how you would feel if you were in their position, using the emotional words you learned in this chapter: *Wän iich de Faizal wär, wäri truurig / würi mi froie / ..* Say your sentences out loud first, before you write them down.

Notes:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## Ufenand gaats, aber näbenand nöd



Listen to the song "Angelina" by Dabu Fantastic (e.g. on Spotify) and try to understand as much as possible. Then complete the exercises below. In the solution section you will also find a transcript that you can use for help.

Song-Link

K6 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 5

## CH

## EN

## DE

**ainsam (ainsamer)**

Sit ich dich käne, füül ich mich nieme ainsam.

**lonely**

Since I met you, I never feel lonely anymore.

**einsam**

Seit ich dich kenne, fühle ich mich nie mehr einsam.

**d Huut (d Hüüt)**

Vo de Chelti überchumi imer so trochni Huut.

**skin**

I always get dry skin from the cold.

**Haut**

Von der Kälte bekomme ich immer so trockene Haut.

**verschtecke (hät versteckt)**

Vil Lüüt verschtecked iri Gfüül.

**to hide**

Many people hide their feelings.

**verstecken**

Viele Leute verstecken ihre Gefühle.

## C5.1



Try to translate the text into your language using the transcript. What do the following phrases mean (here in voCHabular spelling)?

1) bisch uf e Rais .....

2) us em Nüüt .....

3) klimpere laa .....

4) s Läbe lang hebe .....



## C5.2



What does the singer mean with these two sentences (here in voCHabular spelling)? Write down one or two explanatory sentences for each.

Me trifft sich zwaimal und bim zwaite Maal richtig.

-----

-----

Ufenand gaats, aber näbenand nöd.

-----

-----

## C5.3



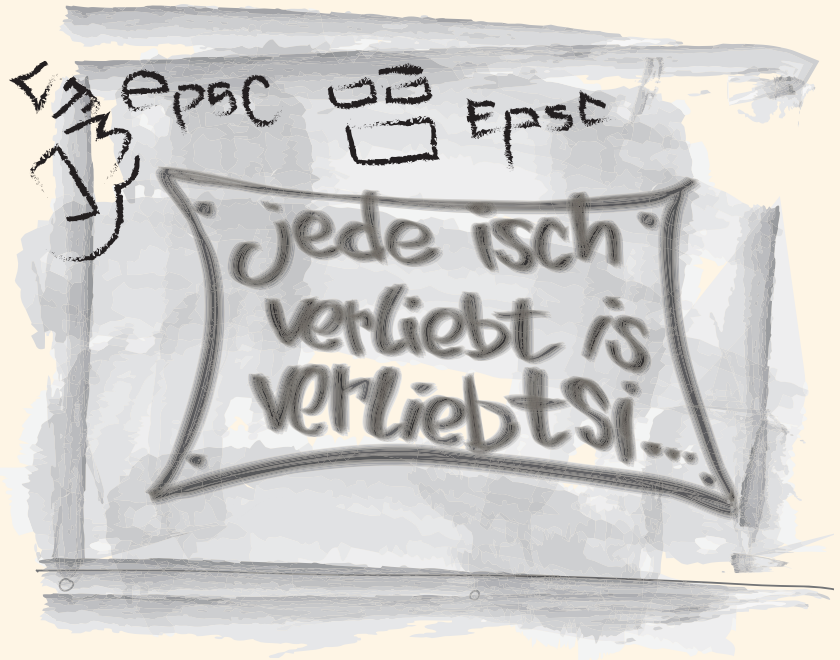
Have you ever had an experience like the one described in the song? Find a second person and discuss the topic in Swiss German. Here are a few questions for inspiration:

1. Was isch besser, nur Sex oder e lengeri Bezieig?
2. Cha sone Situation wi im Lied Mänsche zfride mache?
3. Isch maischtens nur aine zfride oder villicht au baidi?

## C5.4



Here is another piece of graffiti from Zurich. Do you see any connection to the song? What exactly is *verliebt sii*, this state that everyone loves so much? How are falling in love and long-term relationships related? Discuss with a second person.



# Last but Not Least

Now you can test your knowledge to see if you meet the learning goals of this unit. Solve the exercises below and then check in the solution section and discover how many points you have scored. Here is our advice:

## Points

0-50	Better check out the unit again.
51-80	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
81-100	Great - proceed with the next unit right away!

## D1

### D1.1



The sentences on the right side always refer to two people. How do they relate to each other? Fill in a suitable word from the box on the right side. Use each word exactly once. (1 point per word)

## Describe Your Relationships With Different People

Fründ / Koleegin / Gschpäänli / Frau / Ehepaar / Koleeg / Fründine / Maa

D Sabine laat sich vom Jamal la schaide. Är isch im Momänt no ire

.....

D Ayşe und d Lena händ scho als Chind mitenand gschpilt. Si sind beschi \_\_\_\_\_

.....

De Mario und d Wasja sind es \_\_\_\_\_ und  
tailed sich de Huushalt.

De Ferhat hät de Leo betroge. Er isch sin \_\_\_\_\_,  
aber warschiinli nüme lang.

D Alma gaat mit em Kan ais go zie. Si isch e \_\_\_\_\_  
vo im.

De Fatou und d Maggie händ ghüraate. Jetz isch si sini

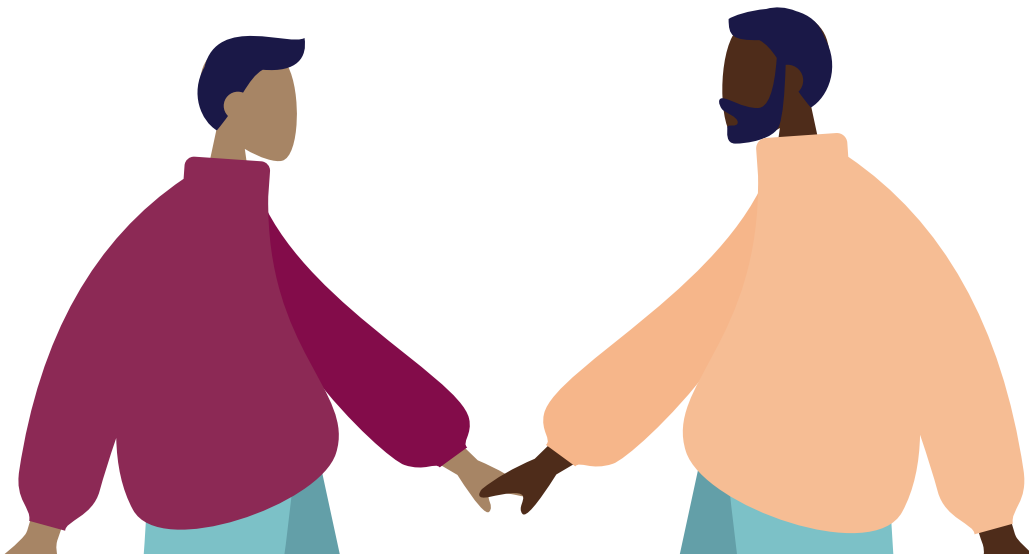
.....

De Dani und de Malik mached ales nur no zäme. Ich wott au sones

..... !

D Nia hät sit Langem de Mihal wider emal troffe. Er isch en alte

..... vo ire.



## D1.2

mache / choo / sii / haa / tue / gaa / gsee / chöne



Sarah spreads rumors! What does she claim, who does what to whom? Select from the box the appropriate verb (1 point each) and put it in the subjunctive I in the correct form (1 additional point each).

### D Sarah hät gsait, ...

... de Musa \_\_\_\_\_ jetzt mit de Suzann zäme.

... d Aida und de Josep \_\_\_\_\_ nöd a d Hochzeit.

... s Chind vom Ike \_\_\_\_\_ sim Papi gar nöd äänlich.

... d Linda \_\_\_\_\_ öppis mit de Tiziana am Lauffe.

... de Nathalie \_\_\_\_\_ s megalaid wäg däre Gschicht mit em Matti.

... de Thilo und de Akin \_\_\_\_\_ morn mitenand i s Kino.

... de Nico \_\_\_\_\_ kä Chind me mache.

... d Olga \_\_\_\_\_ jedes Maal es Theater, wän de Doye schpaat haichunt.

## D2

### Follow Conversations About Feelings and Get Involved

### D2.1



Answer the following questions about the dialogue (3 points per correct answer):

*Voreme Jaar isch d Mueter vo de Devi gschtorbe. Hüt redtsi mitere Fründin drüber, wie si sich sitdäm gfüült hät.*

<b>D:</b>	Itz ischs ais Jaar häär, das mis Mami gschtorbe-n isch. Mich dunkts imer no, wi wän s gschter gsii wär.	It's now been a year since my mother died. It still seems like it was yesterday.
-----------	---	--

<b>F:</b>	Und wie gaats der jetzt?	And how are you now?
-----------	--------------------------	----------------------

<b>D:</b>	Ich bi scho imer no truurig, aber uf e-n anderi Art. Am Aafang hani s Gfüül ghaa, ich seg jetzt ganz alaige-1 uf de Wält. Si isch ja imer für mich daa gsii!	I'm still sad, but in a different way. At first I felt like I was all alone in the world. She was always there for me!
-----------	--	--

<b>F:</b>	Ja gäl, s Mami bliibt aifach s Mami, egaal, wi erwachse das me isch.	Yes, right, mom will always be mom, no matter how grown up you are.
-----------	--	---

<b>D:</b>	Vol. Und irgendwie... s tuet mer zwar laid, das z säge, aber wo min Papi ggange isch, ischs weniger schlim gsii.	Totally. And somehow... I'm sorry to say it, but when my father left it wasn't as bad.
<b>F:</b>	Wisoo?	Why?
<b>D:</b>	Waiss nöd ... ich glaub, ire bini aifach no nööcher gschtande. Usserdäm isch äär scho lenger chrank gsii, me hät ja gwüsst, das es irgendswän chunt.	I don't know... I think I've just become closer to her. He had also been sick for a long time, and we knew it would come at some point.
<b>F:</b>	Schtimt, wän s eso schnäl gaat, isch me völlig under Schock, gäl?	True, when it happens so quickly, you're in complete shock, right?
<b>D:</b>	Genau. Ich bi wükli in es Loch gheit. Du häsch s ja mitüberchoo. S isch e schlimi Ziit gsii.	Exactly. I really fell into a hole. You noticed it. That was a bad time.
<b>F:</b>	Mängisch bruuchts sonen Loch, zum wider en feschte Bode under d Füess z überchoo. Du bisch ganz une, aber wenigstens waisch, wo d bisch. Und jetzt chunsch ja langsam wider use, nöd?	Sometimes it takes a hole like this to get solid ground under your feet again. You're at the bottom, but at least you know where you are. And now you're slowly coming out again, aren't you?
<b>D:</b>	Jaa, schoo. Ich dänk imer no megaoft a sii, aber ich han au wider mee Chraft, wiiterzmache. Si fäält mer totaal, aber nöd wi öppis, wo me ab morn wider chönti haa. Si isch jetzt eender wine schööni, truurigi Erinerig i mim Chopf.	Yes, of course. I still think about her a lot, but I also have more strength to carry on. I miss her a lot, but not like something I could have again tomorrow. She's more like a beautiful, sad memory in my head now.
<b>F:</b>	Hm. Jaa, so äänlich ischs mer au ggange, wo min Vatter gschtorbe-n isch. Irgendainisch akzeptiert me s dän.	Hmm. Yes, I felt the same way when my father died. At some point you accept it.

- 
- 1 Wie gaats de Devi, wän si a de Tood vo irere Mueter dänkt?  Si hät en scho fascht vergässe.  Si dänkt imer no vil drüber naa.
- 
- 2 Was maint iri Fründin mit «S Mami bleibt s Mami»?  D Bezieig zwüsched Chind und Eltere ändered sich s Läbe lang nöd.  Als Mueter hät me e groossi Verantwörtig de Chind gägenüber.
- 
- 3 Was chame us däm schlüüsse, was d Devi über ire Vatter sait?  Iri Mueter isch zunere Ziit gschorbe, wo s niemer tänkt hetti.  Si hät es schlächts Verhältnis zu irem Vatter ghaa.
- 
- 4 D Devi sait «Ich bi in es Loch gheit» - wie chöntme das no säge?  Ich ha plötzlich nüme gwusst, was passiert.  Mir isch es uf s Maal seer schlächt ggange.
- 
- 5 Was hät i de letschte Ziit ggänderet?  D Devi cha jetzt aanää, das iri Mueter nüme daa isch.  D Devi isch froo, das ales verbii isch.
- 

## D2.2



How do these people feel? Look at their face, read what happened to them, and then fill in an appropriate word. (2 points per person)



Min Papi hät i s Schpitaal müese. Jetzt machi mer zimlich \_\_\_\_\_.



Geschter händs mer gsait, das i de Job überchume. Ich ha mega \_\_\_\_\_ ghaa!



Wän s im Winter schtändig chalt und dunkel isch, füüli mi mängisch ooni Grund \_\_\_\_\_.



Hei, ich ha d Prueffig gschafft! Und mit em Ergebnis bin i  
au \_\_\_\_\_ .



Hüt hät mer wider irgendöpper aaglütete zum öppis ver-  
chauffe. Ich bi so \_\_\_\_\_ worde!



Oisi Tochter hät es megaschööns Bild gmaalet. Mir sind  
\_\_\_\_\_ uf si!



Ich hett nach de Schuel gärn shtudiert. Mich  
\_\_\_\_\_ s imer no, das i s nöd  
gmacht ha.



Ich dänk di ganz Ziit nur no a min Schatz. Ich glaub, ich  
bi total \_\_\_\_\_ !

## D2.3



What are you most worried about at this moment, what is your greatest hope? Choose one of the two topics and look for someone who speaks Swiss German well. Tell them what it's about, how you feel, and whether that feeling has changed. Then let yourself be evaluated: 20 points are given if the other person understood everything well, 0 points if they didn't understand anything at all. Everything in between is also possible

Notes:

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



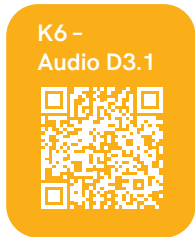
## D3

# Have Simple Discussions With Your Partner

### D3.1



Tosinê and Lilly have a disagreement. Listen to their conversation and then answer the questions about it. (3 points per correct answer)



Tosinê      Lilly

Wäär isch im Kino gsii?

 — 

Wäär macht sich zimli schnäl Sorge?

 — 

Wäär regt sich mee uuf?

 — 

Wäm isch Vertroue wichtig?

 — 

Wäär hangt mee am andre?

 — 

### D3.2



Disputes are often not just about how things are, but also about how they could be. Use the following building blocks to make sentences with *wän* 'if' in the subjunctive II (1 point per building block).

Example:

*Condition*

D Sune schiint

*Result*

D Blueme wachsed

*Wän d Sune wür schiine, würed d Blueme wachse.*

D Sune hät gschune

D Blueme sind gwachse

*Wän d Sune gschune hetti, wäred d Blueme gwachse.*

1

Du losisch uf mich.

So Sache passiered gar nöd ersch.

2

Ich ha min Job nöd verloore.

Mir sind hüt no zäme.

3

Du chochsch au emal s Znacht.

Ich bin nöd imer so müed.

4

Ich bi scho 2019 i d Schwiiz choo.

Mir händ ois nie känegleert.

5

Du bisch nöd eso ifersüchtig.

Ales isch supper.





# 7. Participation and Politics

## Learning Goals

You're able to...

- ... exchange points of view on simple political topics.
- ... understand some characteristics of the Swiss political system.
- ... use terms that are important when submitting applications.

# Ich wür mini Schtimimer abgää!

## A1

Safikan and Naomi meet for a coffee. It is the day after a voting Sunday. You can also listen to the dialogue.



Read and listen (to) the dialogue.

K7 -  
Audio A1



**N:** Hoi Safikan, schön, dich z gsee. Gaats der guet?

**S:** Hoi Naomi! Mir gaats guet, bi nur es bizzli müed, wil i no am Fiire gsii bi.

**N:** Sälber tschuld! Nai, ales klaar. Bisch anere Geburi-Party gsii?

**S:** Nai, mir händ s Ergebnis vo de Abschtimig gfiiret.

**N:** Aa, so guet! Ich hett au so gärn abschtume ...

**S:** Häsch duu s Schtimrächt nöd?

**N:** Nai, ich ha ja kän Schwiizer Pass. S isch cool, das me daa über so vil Sache cha-n abschtume, aber wän d nöd dörfsch, ischs amigs en Fruscht.

**S:** Das glaubi. Für miich ischs megawichtig gsii, geschter mini Schtim dörfe-n abzgää, vor alem wäg de Ehe für ali. Obwool, eerlich gsait gaani au nöd jedes Maal.

**N:** Geschter händ au nur 55 Prozänt vo de Schtimberächtigte abschtume. So krass! Ich cha mer das gar nöd voorschele. Ich wür mini Schtim nie furtrüere!

**S:** Mir händ halt so vil Abschtimige und mängisch Ischs Thema so schwirig, das i gar kä Mainig dezue haa.

**N:** Hm, das verschaani scho irgendwie. Aber ich find, wämme dörf, söttme au abschtume - so chasch lifluss uf d Politik nää!

**S:** Rächt häsch, ich mues mi zämeriisse. Was wottsch äch trinke? Ich nim en Cappuccino.

# Introductory Exercises

## A2



What do the following expressions mean? Infer from the context and mark the correct paraphrase.

	a	b
1 sälber tschuld!	<input type="checkbox"/> You and no one else are responsible for what has happened.	<input type="checkbox"/> You know best who is responsible.
2 s Schtimrächt haa	<input type="checkbox"/> to be allowed to run for political office	<input type="checkbox"/> to be allowed to vote in a political referendum or election
3 sini Schtim abgää	<input type="checkbox"/> to cast his vote	<input type="checkbox"/> to let his voice lapse
4 sini Schtim furtrüere	<input type="checkbox"/> to cast his vote	<input type="checkbox"/> to let his voice lapse
5 sich zämeriisse	<input type="checkbox"/> to be very worried	<input type="checkbox"/> to make an effort

## A3



Answer the following questions as briefly as possible:

1. Was hät d Safikan nach de Abschtimig gmacht?
2. Um was ischs bi de Abschtimig ggange?
3. Wär vo de baidne hät de Schwiizer Pass?
4. Wi vil Prozänt händ daasmal iri Schtim abgää?

# Vocabulary

## CH

## EN

## DE

### d Schtim (d Schtime)

Bi dere-n Abschtimig hät-me zwai Schtime.

### vote

One has two votes in this vote.

### Stimme

Bei dieser Abstimmung hat man zwei Stimmen.

### abschtime (hät abschtume)

Morn wird über es paar wichtigi Themene abschtume.

### to vote

A few important issues will be voted on tomorrow.

### abstimmen

Morgen wird über ein paar wichtige Themen abgestimmt.

### d Abschtimig (d Abschtimige)

Di nöchsch Abschtimig wird schpanend.

### vote

The next vote will be exciting.

### Abstimmung

Die nächste Abstimmung wird spannend.

### wääle (hät gwäält)

D Schtattpräsidentin isch widergwäält worde.

### to elect

The mayor has been re-elected.

### wählen

Die Stadtpräsidentin ist wiedergewählt worden.

### d Waal (d Waale)

D Waal jetzt am Suntig wird schpanend.

### election

The election next Sunday will be exciting.

### Wahl

Die Wahl nächsten Sonntag wird spannend.

### s Schtimrächt (-)

Chame s Schtimrächt au wider verlüüre?

### voting rights

Is it possible to lose the right to vote again?

### Stimmrecht

Kann man das Stimmrecht auch wieder verlieren?

### schtimberächtigt (-)

Chind sind normaalerwiis nöd schtimberächtigt.

### eligible to vote

Children are normally not eligible to vote.

### stimmberächtigt

Kinder sind normalerweise nicht stimmberächtigt.

### d Urne (d Urne)

Häsch din Schtimzädel i d Urne grüert?

### ballot box

Have you placed your voting paper in the ballot box?

### Urne

Hast du deinen Stimmzettel in die Urne geworfen?

### s Ergebnis (d Ergebnis)

Mir warted uf s Ergebnis vo de Abschtimig.

### result

We are waiting for the result of the vote.

### Ergebnis

Wir warten auf das Ergebnis der Abstimmung.

### rüere (hät grüert)

I das Chischtli muesch din Schtimzädel inerüere.

### to throw

You must throw your voting slip in this box.

### werfen

In diese Kiste musst du deinen Stimmzettel werfen.

**sich voorschele (hät sich voorgschelt)**

Schtel der emal e Wält oni Gränze voor.

**to imagine**

Imagine a world without borders.

**sich vorstellen**

Stell dir mal eine Welt ohne Grenzen vor.

**sich zämeriisse (hät sich zämegrisse)**

S gaat nüme lang, also riiss dich echli zäme!

**to pull oneself together**

It does not take much longer, so pull yourself together!

**sich zusammenreißen**

Es dauert nicht mehr lang, also reiiss dich mal eben zusammen!

**krass (krässer)**

Foif Franke tüürer, das isch aber scho no krass!

**extreme**

Five francs more expensive, but that is really extreme!

**krass**

Fünf Franken teurer, das ist aber schon krass!

**d Politik (-)**

Politik intressiert mi nöd eso fescht.

**politics**

Politics does not interest me that much.

**Politik**

Politik interessiert mich nicht so doll.

**der lifluss (d liflüss)**

Undernäme chönd au en lifluss uf d Politik haa.

**influence**

Companies can also have an influence on politics.

**Einfluss**

Auch Unternehmen können Einfluss auf die Politik haben.

**d Mainig (d Mainige)**

Was isch dini Mainig zu däm Thema?

**opinion**

What is your opinion on this topic?

**Meinung**

Was ist deine Meinung zu diesem Thema?

**s Rächt (d Rächt)**

Nöd überall händ ali Mänsche di gliiche Rächt.

**right**

Not all people have the same rights everywhere.

**Recht**

Nicht überall haben alle Menschen die gleichen Rechte.

**s Thema (d Theeme)**

Das Thema söttemer emal ali zäme diskutiere.

**topic**

We should discuss this topic altogether.

**Thema**

Das Thema sollten wir mal alle zusammen diskutieren.

**eerlich (eerlicher)**

Si isch megaeerlich, si sait immer, was si dänkt.

**honest**

She is very honest, she always says what she thinks.

**ehrlich**

Sie ist super ehrlich, sie sagt immer, was sie denkt.

**Schwiizer**

Ich luege no gärn Schwiizer Film im Kino.

**Swiss**

I like watching Swiss movies in the cinema.

**Schweizer**

Ich schaue mir gerne Schweizer Filme im Kino an.

**de Pass (d Päss)**

Oni Pass z läbe-n isch schwirig.

**passport**

Living without a passport is difficult.

**Pass**

Ohne Pass zu leben, ist schwierig.

**wän**

Wän s rägnet, ninsch am beschte-n en Schirm mit.

**if**

If it rains, it is best to take an umbrella with you.

**wenn**

Wenn es regnet, nimmst du am besten einen Schirm mit.

**sälber**

Bring doch de Güsel sälber use!

**self**

Take the garbage out yourself!

**selber**

Bring doch den Müll selber raus!

**furt**

Mis Handy isch furt, wo isch es anechoo?

**away, gone**

My cell phone is gone, where did it go?

**fort, weg**

Mein Handy ist weg, wo ist es hingekommen?

**tschuld sii**

S isch nanig klaar, wäär a däm Unfall tschuld gsii isch.

**guilty**

It is not yet clear who was guilty of this accident.

**schuld**

Es ist noch nicht klar, wer an diesem Unfall schuld war.

**gar****even****gar**

*Gar* intensifies words like *nöd*, *kai* or *niemer*, which have to do with negation: *Das hani gar nöd gusst!* 'I did not even know that!', *S hät gar kai Härdöpfel mee* 'There are no more potatoes here at all', *Zu däre Fiir isch gar niemer choo* 'No one came to this party at all'.

**-er****-ese****-er**

*-er* can be combined with *Schwiiz*, but also with all town and village names to say 'from/of this place'. The new word (Schwiizer, Bärner, Gänfer...) can be used like an adjective, but always in the same form: *Bärner Chääs* 'Bernese cheese', *s Bärner Oberland* 'the Bernese Oberland', *Bärner Fraue und Mane* 'Bernese women and men'. If the *er*-form itself refers to a person, it is automatically assigned a gender: *e Bärnerin* 'a Bernese woman', *en Bärner* 'a Bernese man'. The form with *-er* is often somewhat irregular - in Züri, for example, it is *Zürcher* (not *Zürier*) or in Glarus *Glarner* (instead of *Glaruser*).

**aa****ah****ah**

Suddenly you have realized the truth, understood everything or remembered it again - then *aa* is exactly the right word: *Aa, esoo isch das!* 'Ah, that's how it is!', *Aa, jetzt falt s mer wider ii* 'Ah, now I remember again'.

K7 -  
Hauptwortschatz



# Grammar

## Word Order in Subordinate Clauses

Do you remember the basic rules of sentence structure from Unit 4? Here is a quick recap:

1. The subject or background information comes first in the sentence, the verb comes second.
2. The order of the other sentence elements is relatively free. Information that is already known comes first, followed by new information.
3. Certain parts of verb forms always come at the end of a sentence.

In this unit, we look at the rules for subordinate clauses - these are sentences that are part of a longer sentence and have a different word order. Here are a few examples (subordinate clauses are underlined):

- Lueg, das isch die Websiite über politischi Rächt, **wo ois d Jasemin empfole hät.**  
'Look, this is the book that Jasemin recommended to us.'
- **Das me i de Schwiiz so lang uf d libürgerig mues warte,** gfalt mer nöd.  
'The fact that winter is always so foggy here, does not please me.'
- Jetzt häter verschtande, **wie des mit em Abschtime funktioniert.**  
'Now you have understood how voting works.'
- **Wämmer am Samschtig haichömed,** söttemer no de Briefwaal-Zädel uusfüle.  
'When we go home on Saturday, we should fill in the postal ballot paper'.

So what is different in subordinate clauses? First of all, there is no subject. The verb does not come in second place either, but at the very end. The order of the words before is determined by the rule "known first, new after". Here is an example of how you can rearrange the subordinate clause *wän bi de Waale jetzt die Partei günt* 'if this party now wins the elections':

Conjunction	Subordinate clause	Verb	Possible continuation
Wän	bi de Waale jetzt die Partei	günt,	wäär daas en härte Schlaag für di Etablierte.
Wän	jetzt die Partei bi de Waale	günt,	hät iri Abschtimigsinitiative au gueti Chance.
Wän	die Partei bi de Waale jetzt	günt,	ischsi ändgültig im politischi Sischteem aachoo.

If a **verb form** forms a group with **other words**, their order in subordinate clauses is exactly the opposite of that in normal sentences. Here are some examples:

#### Normal sentence

Du **schtimsch** au **ab**.  
'You vote too.'

Ich **verschtaa** d Politik **nöd**.  
'I do not understand politics.'

Si **händ** scho wider **verloore**.  
'They have lost again'

#### Subordinate clause

Wän du au **abschtimsch**, chumi mit.  
'If you vote too, I will come with you.'

Ich gaa nöd go wääle, wil ich d Poltik **nöd verschtaa**.  
'I will not vote because I do not understand politics.'

Ich ha ghöört, das si scho wider **verloore** **händ**.  
'I heard that they have lost again.'

Verb groups with infinitives are an exception - here the infinitive also comes after the main verb in the subordinate clause. This is a difference to Standard German:

#### Normal sentence

I **cha** gärn au **choo**.

Ich **kann** gerne auch **kommen**.

'I can come too.'

#### Subordinate clause

Ich wür gärn wüsse, öb i au **cha** **choo**.

Ich wüsste gern, ob ich auch **kommen** **kann**.

'I would like to know if I can come too.'



Wänn duu gaasch  
go abstimme,  
chumi au.



Supper, göm-  
mer am 10i uf  
d Gmaind?



# Exercises

## B1

### Abschtime

Schtim / abschtime / Abschtimig / degäge schtime / schtimberächtigt

### B1.1



All about voting: Insert the correct word from the box into the sentences and adjust it if necessary.

I de Schwiiz findet \_\_\_\_\_ imer am Suntig schtatt.

En Viertel vo de Erwachsene, wo i de Schwiiz läbed, isch nöd

\_\_\_\_\_.

Inere Demokratii sind ali \_\_\_\_\_ glich vil wärt.

Si hät nur us Protescht \_\_\_\_\_.

Ich wür am liebschte online \_\_\_\_\_.

### B1.2



How else can you say that? Connect what belongs together.

1

abschtime

2

schtimberächtigt sii

3

s Ergäbnis

4

lifluss nää

5

de Schwiizer Pass haa

a

s Resultaat

b

s Bürgerrächt haa

c

s Schtimrächt haa

d

a d Urne gaa

e

beiflusse

## B2

### Wil, damit, wän, wo, wäärend, obwol

If you want to connect sentences in a meaningful way, you often need words like *wil* 'because', *damit* 'so that', *wän* 'when', *wo* 'where', *wäärend* 'while', *obwol* 'even though'. Most of these words are followed by a subordinate clause. 'obwohl'. Nach den meisten dieser Wörter folgt ein Nebensatz.

### B2.1



Connect the two sentences in a line with a matching word. Don't forget to change the word order.

1. De Solal hetti gärn en Schwiizer Pass. Er cha ändlich bi Abschtimige mitmache.

-----

2. Mir händ zerschmal gfiiret. D Abschtimig isch aagnoo worde.

-----

3. D Martha isch imer guet informiert. Si list kä Ziiitig.

-----

4. Ich gaa go abschtime. Das isch mini Pflicht.

-----

5. D Arjetha hät scho Schtunde i Ämter verbraacht. Ire Soon hät dusse gwartet.

-----

6. Mir gönd am Samschtig a d Klimademo. Ois isch des Thema wichtig.

-----

7. Bliibsch mängisch dihai? S Abschtimigs-Thema interessiert dich nöd.

-----

8. So vil Lüüt rüered iri Schtim furt. Si händ s Schtimrächt.

-----

9. Si isch ganz verruckt worde. Ich ha gsait, das Politik nüüt für miich isch.

-----

10. S wär cool. Me chönt i de Politik mee mitbeschtime.

-----

## B2.2



Think of at least one sentence for each of the words *wil*, *damit*, *wän*, *wo*, *wäärend*, *obwol* and write it down.

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



## B3

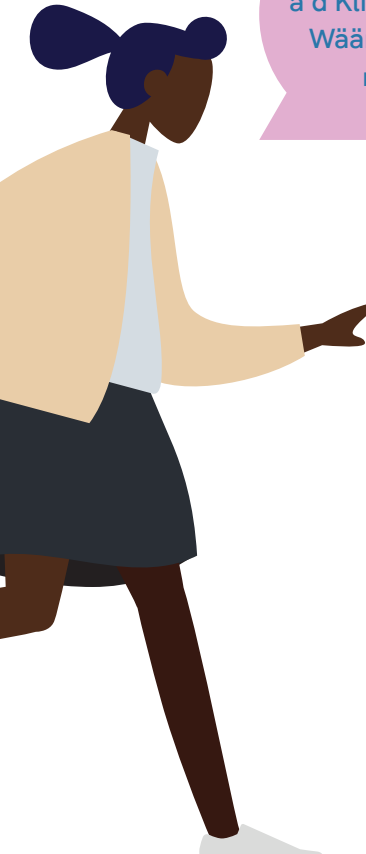
Subordinate clauses are also needed when you want to express what people perceive, think or say. The words *das* 'that' und *öb* 'if', are often used for this, for example:

- Ich ha gsee, das d au daa gsii bisch. 'I saw that you were there too.'
- Waisch, öb das erlaubt isch? 'Do you know if this is allowed?'
- Si hät gsait, das glii Waale seged. 'She said that elections were coming soon.'

### B3.1



Form suitable sentences from the following passages. Use the subjunctive I where appropriate (Unit 6).



Ich gaa morn  
a d Kliimademo.  
Wäär chunnt  
mit?

1. (de Juri, säge) Er isch tottal fruschtriert.

.....

2. (du, ghööre) Hät d Safikan de Schwiizer Pass beaatrait?

.....

3. (mir, frööge) Isch d Tatjana defür oder degäge?

.....

4. (ir, dänke) Hät die Initiative-n e Chance?

.....

5. (ich, glaube) Die Abschtimig wird megaknapp.

.....

6. (d Lüüt, nöd wüsse) Söledsi go abschtime?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

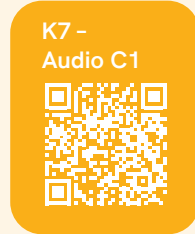
# Deepen Your Knowledge

## C1



The text for this in-depth section is a radio programme, listen to it first.

## Me dörf imer nach em Grund frööge



### CH

### EN

### DE

#### naadänke (hät naatänkt)

Über daas hani gar nanig naatänkt.

#### to ponder

I have not even pondered that yet.

#### nachdenken

Über das habe ich noch gar nicht nachgedacht.

#### zämechoo (sind zämechoo)

Geschter simmer zumene faine Znacht zämechoo.

#### to get together

Yesterday we got together for a delicious dinner.

#### zusammenkommen

Gestern sind wir für ein leckeres Abendessen zusammengekommen.

#### diskutiere (hät diskutiert)

Schön, hämmer wider emal so aagregt diskutiert.

#### to discuss

Nice to have such a lively discussion again.

#### diskutieren

Schön, haben wir wieder einmal so angeregt diskutiert.

#### zuelose (hät zuegloset)

Mir müested enand amigs echli besser zuelose.

#### to listen

Sometimes we need to listen to each other more carefully.

#### zuhören

Wir müssten einander manchmal etwas besser zuhören.

#### reagiere (hät reagiert)

Merci händ sii so gschwind uf mis Mail reagiert.

#### to respond

Thank you for responding so quickly to my email.

#### reagieren

Danke, dass sie so schnell auf meine Mail reagiert haben.

#### de Grund (d Gründ)

Wämme chrank isch, isch das en guete Grund, dihai z bliibe.

#### reason

If one is ill, that is a good reason to stay at home.

#### Grund

Wenn man krank ist, ist das ein guter Grund, zu Hause zu bleiben.

#### d Polizei (-)

Am Baanhof isch d Polizei gsii, was isch äch passiert?

#### police

The police were at the station, what happened?

#### Polizei

Am Bahnhof war die Polizei, was ist wohl passiert?

<p><b>s Uusse'e (-)</b> Mir isch mis Uusse'e amigs scho no wichtig.</p>	<p><b>appearance</b> My appearance is sometimes important to me.</p>	<p><b>Aussehen</b> Mir ist mein Aussehen manchmal schon wichtig.</p>
<p><b>d Sändig (d Sändige)</b> Geschter Aabig hämmer en intressanti Sändig glueget.</p>	<p><b>program</b> Last night we watched an interesting program.</p>	<p><b>Sendung</b> Gestern Abend haben wir eine interessante Sendung geschaut.</p>
<p><b>bitte (hät pätte)</b> Min Naachber hät mi pätte, für in öppis z poschte.</p>	<p><b>please (has requested)</b> My neighbor has requested me to buy something for him.</p>	<p><b>bitte (hat gebeten)</b> Mein Nachbar hat mich gebeten, für ihn etwas einzukaufen.</p>
<p><b>mitgää (hät mitgää)</b> Wart, ich gib der no en Rägeschirm mit.</p>	<p><b>to give</b> Wait, I will give you an umbrella.</p>	<p><b>mitgeben</b> Warte, ich gebe dir noch einen Regenschirm mit.</p>
<p><b>tue (hät taa)</b> D Rüebli chasch in Chüelschrank tue.</p>	<p><b>to put</b> You can put the carrots in the fridge.</p>	<p><b>tun</b> Die Karotten kannst du in den Kühlschrank tun.</p>
<p><b>sogaar</b> Si isch uuhöflich, sogaar a d Türe hätsi klopfet.</p>	<p><b>even</b> She is very polite, she even knocked on the door.</p>	<p><b>sogar</b> Sie ist super höflich, sogar an der Tür hat sie geklopft.</p>
<p><b>supper</b> Si isch e supper Fuesbal-Schpilerin.</p>	<p><b>great</b> She is a great soccer player.</p>	<p><b>super</b> Sie ist eine super Fussballspielerin.</p>
<p><b>blööd (blööder)</b> Das isch e blöödi Idee.</p>	<p><b>silly</b> That is a silly idea.</p>	<p><b>blöd</b> Das ist eine blöde Idee.</p>
<p><b>de Morge (d Mörge)</b> De Morge-n isch mini liebschti Tagesziit.</p>	<p><b>morning</b> Morning is my favorite time of day.</p>	<p><b>Morgen</b> Der Morgen ist meine liebste Tageszeit.</p>
<p><b>schpaat (schpööter)</b> Gäled, ir chömed echli schpööter hüt?</p>	<p><b>late</b> You are coming a little late today, aren't you?</p>	<p><b>spät</b> Ihr kommt ein bisschen später heute, nicht?</p>
<p><b>sälte</b> Mittlerwiile gömmer nume no sälte-n i s Kino.</p>	<p><b>rarely</b> We now only rarely go to the cinema.</p>	<p><b>selten</b> Mittlerweile gehen wir nur noch selten ins Kino.</p>
<p><b>normaal (normaaler)</b> S isch doch normaal, das me au emal sini Rue bruucht!</p>	<p><b>normal</b> It is normal that one needs some quiet time.</p>	<p><b>normal</b> Es ist doch normal, dass man auch mal seine Ruhe braucht.</p>

## The Impersonal Pronoun

Would you like to describe an event without saying exactly who was involved – for example, because it is almost all people or because it could be any person? There is a practical way to do this in Swiss German: the impersonal pronoun **me** (Standard German **man**). Simply use it in place of the person or people you do not know or do not want to say anything specific about:

Ich ghööre s no. 'I still hear it.'	→	<b>Me</b> ghöört s no. 'One can still hear it.'
Verschaasch du daas? 'Do you understand that?'	→	Verschaat <b>me</b> daas? 'Does one understand that?'
D Marjan fүүlt sich guet. 'Marjan feels good.'	→	<b>Me</b> fүүlt sich guet. 'One feels good.'

In the dative and accusative case you use **aim** (Attention: In Standard German, a distinction is made between dative **einem** and accusative **einen**):

S gaat mer guet. 'I am doing well.'	→	S gaat <b>aim</b> guet. 'One is doing well.'
S macht mi verruckt. 'It drives me crazy.'	→	S macht <b>aim</b> verruckt. 'It drives one crazy.'

### C1.1



Listen to the dialogue again and count how often the impersonal pronoun is used. What number do you come up with?



K7 –  
Audio C1





## C1.5



Make the following sentences impersonal by replacing the underlined word with *me/aim*.

1. Über daas Thema chöntemer ändloos diskutiere.

2. D Polizei sött nöd so vil kontrolliere.

3. Si holed mich oft bim Velofaare-n use.

4. Erklääredsi diir amigs de Grund?

5. D Politik sött de-r linsatz vo Profiling iischränke.

6. Fäälter passiered de Polizei scho mal.

## C1.6



What is your opinion on the subject of identity checks? Are they necessary? Is it justified to control people according to their appearance and why (not)? Where do you see the connection between identity checks and the topic of this unit, i.e. political participation? Express your thoughts in Swiss German.

Large writing area with horizontal dashed lines for text entry.



## C2



Listen to the dialogue. The participants are Mahmud Abadi (M) and an employee of the migration office (A). Fill in the gaps as you listen. You will find a complete transcription in the solution section.

K7 -  
Audio C2



## Händ Si ali Underlage debii?

**M:** Grüezi.

**A:** Grüezi. Bitte, um was geht es?

**M:** Ich han im Momänt en \_\_\_\_\_ und wür gärn uf B wächsle.

**A:** Ah, Sie reden ja Schweizerdeutsch. Händ Si ali Underlage debii?

*De Mahmud schiebt e Biig Papiir under em Glaas dure.*

**A:** Also... \_\_\_\_\_, jawol... de \_\_\_\_\_ vo Irere Wonig... de \_\_\_\_\_ Momänt, die Schtel händ Si ja no gar nöd aagfange?

**M:** Aa, warted Si. Daa isch min aktuele Arbeitsvertraag. De gaat aber nume bis Ändi Monet. Dän hani e noii Schtel, das isch des \_\_\_\_\_, woni lne scho ggää haa. Gmolde-n isches au scho.

**A:** Aa, jetztig. Also, das isch daa ... daas ... daas ... Wo isch dän de \_\_\_\_\_?

**M:** Des isch des Papiir, wo deet dezwüschet grutscht isch.

**A:** Seer guet. Also, Här Abadi, die \_\_\_\_\_ sind volschtändig. Mir wärded daas bearbaite und lne Bscheid gää.

**M:** Chönd Si scho säge, wie lang das des gaat?

**A:** Mit es paar Wuche müend Si scho rächne. Wisoo, \_\_\_\_\_ lne?

**M:** Min F-Uuswiis laufft glii uus, das sind jetzt no \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** Kä Sorg, das \_\_\_\_\_ scho ane, Si müend en nöd namal \_\_\_\_\_.

**M:** Okay, supper. Dän würi gärn no en \_\_\_\_\_ duregää ...

**A:** Ja, da sind aber nöd miir \_\_\_\_\_, da müend Si \_\_\_\_\_.

**M:** Aa, schaad. Das isch mängisch scho no müesam mit däne vilne \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** Tuet mer laid, iich ha s nöd erfunde.

**d Schtel (d Schtele)**

Geschter hani e gueti Schtel gsee, jetzt wotti mi bewärbe.

**position**

Yesterday I saw a good job position, now I want to apply.

**Stelle**

Gestern habe ich eine gute Stelle gesehen, jetzt will ich mich bewerben.

**de Vertraag (d Verträäg)**

Mir isch gar nöd uufgfale, das min Arbeitsvertraag tottal ungrächt isch.

**contract**

I did not realize that my employment contract was totally unfair.

**Vertrag**

Mir ist gar nicht aufgefallen, dass mein Arbeitsvertrag total ungerecht ist.

**uuslauffe (isch uusgloffte)**

Min Arbeitsvertraag laufft uus, ich bruuch en noie Job!

**to expire**

My employment contract is about to expire, I need a new job!

**auslaufen**

Mein Arbeitsvertrag läuft aus, ich brauche einen neuen Job!

**de Wächsel (d Wächsel)**

En Regierigswächsel täät däre Gmaind no guet.

**change**

A change of government would do this community some good.

**Wechsel**

Ein Regierungswechsel täte dieser Gemeinde mal gut.

**s Änd (d Ände)**

Wo isch äch s Änd vo däre Schtraass?

**end**

Where is the end of this street?

**Ende**

Wo ist denn das Ende dieser Strasse?

**s Papiir (d Papiir)**

Hettsch mer gad es Papiir zum Schriibe?

**paper**

Would you have a paper for me to write on?

**Papier**

Hättest du mir gerade ein Papier zum Schreiben?

**d Biig (d Biige)**

Di aint Biig isch bearbaitet, di ander mueni no aaluege.

**pile**

One of the piles has been handled, I still have to look at the other ones.

**Stapel**

Der eine Stapel ist bearbeitet, den anderen muss ich noch anschauen.

**Bschaid gää (hät Bscheid ggää)**

Gisch mer Bscheid, wän d aachoo bisch?

**to inform**

Will you inform me when you have arrived?

**Bescheid geben**

Gibst du mir Bescheid, wenn du angekommen bist?

**mälde (hät gmolde)**

Händ Si Iri noii Adrässe scho gmolde?

**to report**

Have you already reported your new address?

**melden**

Haben Sie Ihre neue Adresse schon gemeldet?

**aktuell (aktueller)**

Und jetzt chömemer no zunere aktuelle Mäldig.

**current**

And now we come to the current report.

**aktuell**

Und jetzt kommen wir noch zu einer aktuellen Meldung.

K7 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 2



**pressiere (hät pressiert)**

Sorry, mir pressierts gad echli, ich mues uf s Tram.

**to be in a hurry**

Sorry, I am in a bit of a hurry right now, I have to catch the tram.

**eilig sein**

Sorry, ich habe es gerade etwas eilig, ich muss zum Tram.

**debihaa (hät debiighaa)**

Es bitzeli Münz hani imer debii.

**to carry**

I always carry a little change with me.

**dabeihaben**

Ein bisschen Kleingeld habe ich immer dabei.

**rutsche (isch grutscht)**

Obacht, din Taler isch am Aberutsche.

**to slide**

Watch out, your plate is about to slide off.

**rutschen**

Pass auf, dein Teller rutscht gleich runter.

**anebringe (hät anepraacht)**

Ich bring aifech kä besseri Noote-n ane.

**to manage**

I just cannot manage to get better grades.

**hinkriegen, schaffen**

Ich schaffe einfach keine besseren Noten hin.

**rächne (hät grächnet)**

Für zää Lüüt würi mal 200 Franke rächne.

**to expect**

I would expect 200 francs for ten people.

**rechnen**

Für zehn Personen würde ich mal 200 Franken rechnen.

**gschiid (gschiider)**

Wäär s nöd gschiider, wämme zerscht d Bilett chauffed?

**smart, clever**

Wouldn't it be smarter if we bought the tickets first?

**gescheit, schlau**

Wäre es nicht schlauer, wenn wir zuerst die Billette kaufen?

**jawol**

Und Ire Name-n isch Mihalski? - Jawol.

**yes, exactly**

And your name is Mihalski? - Exactly.

**jawohl, genau**

Und Ihr Name ist Mihalski? - Ganz genau.

## C2.1



Paperwork requires many special verbs. Connect what belongs together and use each expression only once.

1

es Formular

2

en noie-n Uuswiis

3

s Arbetsverhältnis

4

d Underlage

5

der Aatraag

6

em Aatraag en Naawiis

a

iiraiche

b

naawiise

c

biilegge

d

beaaträge

e

uusfüle

f

schtele

## C2.2



Answer the questions about the text orally.

1. Was wott de Mahmud bim Migrationsamt?
2. Was Ischs Probleem mit sim Arbetsvertraag?
3. Hät de Mahmud en Düütschnaawiis biiglait?
4. Wisoo pressierts em Mahmud?

## C2.3



Do you know the most important residence statuses in Switzerland? Write the letters from the box to match the statements.

B / C / F / L / N / S

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Öpper dörf lenger i de Schwiiz bliibe. Sii oder äär cha des Rächt aber au wider verlüüre.                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Öpper dörf für e churzi Ziiit für en beschtimte Zwäck i de Schwiiz bliibe.   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Öpper dörf langfrischtig i de Schwiiz bliibe. Des Rächt chame nöd so aifach wider verlüüre.                        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Öpper bruucht bsundere Schutz und dörf durum für e gwüssi Ziiit au oni Asiilverfaare i de Schwiiz bliibe.          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Öpper hät i de Schwiiz Asiil beaatrait. S Asiilverfaare laufft.  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Öpper dörf aigetlich nöd i de Schwiiz sii, cha aber au nöd uusgschafft wärde. Äär oder sii dörf vorloiffig bliibe. |



Jetzt hani de B-Status, aber vorhäär hani lang de F-Status ghaa.

## C2.4



Where do you see the connection between residence status and the topic of this unit, political participation? Find a partner with whom you can discuss these and other questions in Swiss German. In the box you will also find expressions that you can use in a discussion.

1. Ischs Uufenthalts-System vo de Schwiiz sinvol - und isches grächt?
2. Git s Status, wo z schwirig oder z aifach zum überchoo sind?
3. Wäär sött aigetlich i de Schwiiz dörfe bliibe?
4. Mached d Migrationsämter iri Arbet guet?

### CH

### EN

Ich find/dänk/glaub

I find/think/believe

Minere Mainig naa

In my opinion

Wän s nach mir gaat/giengt

If it is/were up to me

Des schtimt (nöd)

That is (not) true

Du häsch rächt

You are right

Ich schtim (der) zue

I agree with you

Ich bi de gliiche Mainig

I share the same opinion

Des findi/dänki/glaubi au/nöd

I/I do not find/think/believe that too

Ich han en anderi Mainig

I have a different opinion

Des chasch esoo nöd säge

You cannot say it like that

Mainsch wükli?

Do you really think so?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## Chunsch mit a d Demo?

### C3.1



Here you can see some banners and signs that were held up at various demonstrations. Which sign goes with which topic?

- a. Climate b. Women's rights c. Agriculture d. Racism/refugees  
e. Corona f. Bicycle



### C3.2



Imagine you are going to a demonstration yourself. What kind of demonstration would that be? Design a poster with a suitable demonstration slogan in Swiss German. Either make a sketch on a piece of paper or design a real poster.

# CH

# EN

# DE

## schtoppe (hät gschtoppt)

En Zuug, wo faart, chame nöd gschnäl emal schtoppe.

## to stop

You cannot stop a moving train quickly.

## stoppen

Einen Zug, der fährt, kann man nicht schnell mal stoppen.

## schwarz (schwärzer)

Din ainte Zaa isch ja ganz schwarz, du muesch zum Zaani!

## black

Your one tooth is completely black, you need to go to the dentist!

## schwarz

Einer von deinen Zähnen ist ja ganz schwarz, du musst zum Zahnarzt!

## wiiss (wiisser)

So vil wiissi Wänd gseend echli ungmütlich uus.

## white

So many white walls look a bit uncomfortable.

## weiss

So viele weisse Wände sehen ein bisschen ungemütlich aus.

## -loos

*-loos* means 'without'. This suffix is very practical because you can add it to almost all nouns: *gränzeloos* 'boundless', *pauseloos* 'pauseless', *wonigsloos* 'homeless' ... Just experiment a little! Words with *-loos* are adjectives: *gränzeloosi Freiheit* 'limitless freedom', *pauselose Schtress* 'endless stress'. Some words with *-loos* also have a fixed meaning that you have to learn. *Witzloos*, for example, does not mean 'without humor' or 'without fun' but 'an important detail is missing, uninteresting': *Es Räne oni Ziil isch witzloos* 'A race without a goal is pointless'.

## -less

## -los



# Participation Options

## The Political System in Switzerland

There are various ways to participate in political and social life in Switzerland. Structures such as parties, elections and referendums are one way to achieve this. You can find an overview of the Swiss political system in several languages here:

[swissinfo.ch/ger/das-politische-system-der-schweiz/45810256](https://www.swissinfo.ch/ger/das-politische-system-der-schweiz/45810256).

Also the 'Deepen Your Knowledge' section C4 of this unit deals with this topic.

You can find an information website in plain language at the Swiss Parliament:

[parlament.ch/de/über-das-parlament/leichte-sprache](https://parlament.ch/de/über-das-parlament/leichte-sprache)

Since Switzerland is a mixture of representative and direct democracy, there is always something to

vote on. More than half of all national referendums worldwide take place in Switzerland! If you would like to find out more about what an election or vote is about, these two pages are useful:

- On [easyvote.ch/](https://www.easyvote.ch/) you will find simple explanatory videos and descriptions of all votes taking place in Switzerland.
- On [smartvote.ch/](https://www.smartvote.ch/) you will find an overview of the candidates of the various parties during elections. You can fill in a questionnaire that the candidates have also completed and see which of them have a similar opinion to yours.

A Swiss passport is required for most votes. However, there are repeated efforts to ensure that people who have been living in Switzerland for a long time but do not have a Swiss passport can also vote. This already happens to some extent at communal and cantonal level.

## Participation Possibilities Without Voting Rights

Within the political system, there are also possibilities for participation that do not require a Swiss passport, e.g.

- Collecting signatures for initiatives
- Writing letters to the editor on political topics
- Participation in demonstrations
- Engagement in political parties
- Engagement in commissions and advisory boards (e.g. in the Foreigners' Advisory Council of the City of Zurich)
- Participation in projects at city level (e.g. Wir alle sind Bern: [wirallesindbern.ch/](https://www.wirallesindbern.ch/))

Projects that promote the participation of all people living in Switzerland can also be interesting. You can find an overview of such projects - for migrants and other people - at [campusdemokratie.ch/projekte](https://www.campusdemokratie.ch/projekte).

We at voCHabular would particularly like to recommend the following projects to you:

- Action Four Quarters: [aktionvierviertel.ch/](https://www.aktionvierviertel.ch/)
- Autonomous School Zurich: [bildung-fuer-alle.ch/](https://www.bildung-fuer-alle.ch/)
- Campus Democracy: [campusdemokratie.ch/](https://www.campusdemokratie.ch/)
- Refugee parliament: [fluechtlingsparlament-schweiz.ch/](https://www.fluechtlingsparlament-schweiz.ch/)
- Foraus: [foraus.ch/](https://www.foraus.ch/)
- INES (Institute New Switzerland): [institutneueschweiz.ch/](https://www.institutneueschweiz.ch/)
- NCBI (National Coalition Building Institute): [ncbi.ch/](https://www.ncbi.ch/)
- Solinetz: [solinetz-zh.ch/](https://www.solinetz-zh.ch/)





Read through the dialogue.

## Mir sind schtändig am Abschtme

*D Schwiizer Demokratii cha zimli kompliziert sii. De Markus wott sich la iibürgere und isch froo, chaner sini Koleegin Gülhan es paar Sache frööge.*

- 
- M:** Also los, ich hoffe s isch kä blöödi Fraag, aber wisoo genau isch d Schwiizer Demokratii «diräkt»?
- 
- G:** Nai, das isch überhaupt nöd blööd! D Schwiiz isch deete dure rächt speziell. I de maischte Demokratii chame ja nume Partie oder Persoone wääle und die entschaided dän ales. Aber i de Schwiiz dörf s Volch oft au über konkreti Fraage-n abschtme.
- 
- M:** Wie jetzt? Chöntme zum Biischpil abschtme, das me weniger Schtüüre wott zale?
- 
- G:** Ja, theoretisch scho. Du bruuchsch aifech zerscht emal es paar Lüüt, wo dini Idee underschtützed. Wän d 100'000 Underschrifte zämebringsch, isch das e «Volchsinitiative», und über die schtint s Volch dän ab.
- 
- M:** Okay, und hät s scho mal e Volchsinitiative zu Schtüüre ggää?
- 
- G:** Jaa, klaar. S git aber no ganz vil anderi Themene, zum Biischpil im 2021i liwanderig, Landwirtschaft, Altepfläg ... Mir sind schtändig am Abschtme.
- 
- M:** Im 21i isch doch au d «Ehe für ali» gsii, oder?
- 
- G:** Jaa, aber das isch es Referändum gsii.
- 
- M:** Ui, was isch daas jetzt wider?
- 
- G:** Das isch, wän d Politik öppis plaanet und anderi degäge sind. Für es Referändum bruuchts nume 50'000 Underschrifte. Wän die zämechömed, mues d Politik zerscht s Ergebnis vo de Abschtimig abwar-te, bevor irgendöppis gmacht wird.
- 
- M:** Und wäär isch für waas gsii?
- 
- G:** Das isch en uulangi Gschicht. Aber am Schluss händ d Regierig und s Parlamänt wele, das Schwuuli und Lesbe die gliiche Rächt wi ali händ, wän si hüüraated. Es paarne Lüüt hät das aber nöd gfale, also händsi s Referändum ergriffe. Di maischte, wo go abschtme sind, sind dän aber gäg des Referändum gsii ...
- 
- M:** ... aso für de Plaan vo de Politik?
- 
- G:** Genau. S isch mängisch echli verwierend. S Referändum händsi abgleent und d Ehe für ali aagnoo.
- 
- M:** Okay, jetzt verschaani das ales scho chli besser. Merci vilmal, Gülhan!
-

**aanää (hät aagnoo)**

Volchsinitiativene wärded nöd so oft aagnoo.

**to accept**

People's initiatives are not accepted as often.

**annehmen**

Volksinitiativen werden nicht so oft angenommen.

**ableene (hät abgleent)**

S Parlamänt hät de Voor-schlaag vo de Regierig abgleent.

**to reject**

The parliament rejected the government's proposal.

**ablehnen**

Das Parlament hat den Vorschlag der Regierung abgelehnt.

**underschütze (hät underschützt)**

Mini Familie hät mi imer underschützt.

**to support**

My family has always supported me.

**unterstützen**

Meine Familie hat mich immer unterstützt.

**zämebringe (hät zämepraacht)**

So vil Gäld bringi nöd zäme.

**to bring together, gather**

I can't gather that much money.

**zusammenbringen**

Musik bringt Menschen zusammen.

**s bruucht (s hät pruucht)**

Da ine brüüchtis emal e Haizig.

**it needs**

It needs heating in here.

**es braucht**

Hier drinnen bräuchte es mal eine Heizung.

**de Schluss (-)**

Am Schluss vom Film hani müese brüele.

**end**

At the end of the movie I had to cry.

**Schluss**

Am Schluss des Films musste ich heulen.

**d Unterschrift (d Unterschrifte)**

Da une brüüchti no Iri Unterschrift, bitte.

**signature**

I need your signature below, please.

**Unterschrift**

Da unten bräuchte ich noch Ihre Unterschrift, bitte.

**bevoor**

Gömmer lieber hai, bevoor s aafaat rägne.

**before**

We'd better go home before it starts raining.

**bevor**

Gehen wir lieber heim, bevor es anfängt zu regnen.

**schtändig (-)**

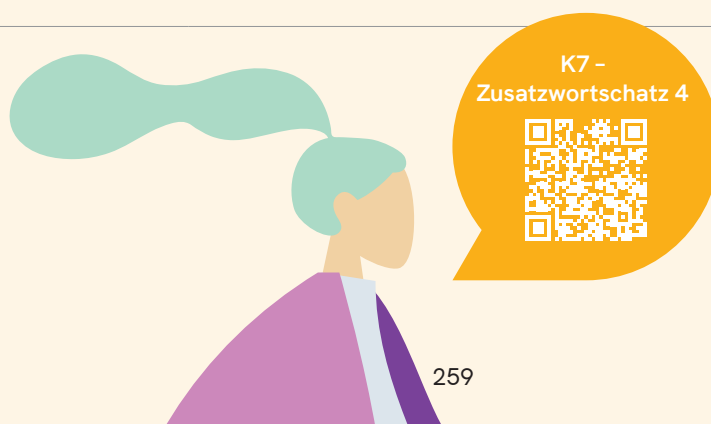
Er isch schtändig am Chlööne, wi vil das er mues schaffe.

**constant**

He constantly complains about how bad his family is.

**ständig**

Er beklagt sich ständig, wie viel er arbeiten muss.



---

emal

once

(ein)mal

(E)mal has several uses, all related to its original meaning 'once, at some point'. You can use it with past events, for example, when you are not thinking of a specific point in time but want to emphasize that you have experienced something: *Ich han emal de letscht Zuug verpasst* 'I missed the last train once', *Bisch du scho mal z Italie gsii?* 'Have you ever been to Italy?'. Even with events in the future, the focus is not on a specific time, but on a possibility or the desire to do something at least once: *Wän schön Wätter isch, gönd mir zwai emal i d Bärg* 'When the weather is nice, we'll go to the mountains twice', *Mir würed das gärn emal uusprobiere* 'We'd like to try it out once'. Finally, *emal* is also used in commands and requests. As it is also emphasized here that the action does not have to be carried out at any particular time - and especially not immediately - such sentences with *emal* have a friendlier effect: *Tuen emal s Faischter uuf, bitte* 'Please open the window', *Chömed doch aifet emal verbii!* 'Just come by sometime!'

---

uu-

very

sehr

Uu- is very similar to *mega-*. However, it is only used with adjectives and strengthens them: *uuwichtig* 'very important', *uuschim* 'totally bad'.

---

# Important Political Terms

**CH**

**Explanation in EN**

**DE**

**Schtimrächt**

Voting rights. The right to participate in votes.

**Stimmrecht**

**Passivs Waalrächt**

Passive voting rights. The right to be elected to political office.

**Passives Wahlrecht**

**Aktivs Waalrächt**

Active right to vote. The right to participate in an election.

**Aktives Wahlrecht**

**Diräkti Demokratii**

Direct democracy. In direct democracy, people are not only allowed to vote for individuals, but also regularly vote on factual issues - from budget matters to equality.

**Direkte Demokratie**

**Repräsentativi Demokratii**

Representative democracy. In a representative democracy, decisions are not made by the voters themselves, but by elected representatives. Switzerland recognizes both the direct and the representative principle.

**Repräsentative Demokratie**

<b>Bundesraat</b>	Federal Council. The government of Switzerland. It consists of seven members with equal rights, who almost always belong to different parties.	<b>Bundesrat</b>
<b>Parlamänt</b>	Parliament. The Swiss parliament has two chambers (see below). All laws must be passed by both chambers. Members of parliament are elected every four years.	<b>Parlament in der Schweiz</b>
<b>Nationalraat</b>	National Council. One of the two chambers of parliament. It represents the voters directly.	<b>Nationalrat</b>
<b>Schtänderaat</b>	Council of States. The other chamber of parliament. Its members are also elected by the people, but each canton may only send two representatives and half-cantons only one. All cantons therefore have equal rights in this chamber.	<b>Ständerat</b>
<b>Volchsinitiative</b>	People's initiative. A decision initiated by the people on an amendment to the Federal Constitution. The initiative will be put to the vote if the initiators can collect 100,000 valid signatures within 18 months.	<b>Volksinitiative</b>
<b>Referändüm</b>	Referendum. A decision made by the people on a parliamentary resolution. The referendum is mandatory for certain decisions (e.g. constitutional amendments). However, there are also optional referendums that can be held by voters who do not agree with a decision made by parliament. In order for an optional referendum to be put to the vote, signatures are first required (50,000 within 100 days).	<b>Referendum</b>
<b>Föderalismus</b>	Federalism. Federal states are organized into several levels - in Switzerland, the federal government, cantons and municipalities - each of which has a high degree of autonomy and political responsibility. This is why, for example, there are elections, votes, initiatives and referendums at all three levels in Switzerland.	<b>Föderalismus</b>

## Sentence Structure for Advanced Learners

In Unit 4, you learned the basics of sentence structure. Remember: In simple sentences, the subject always comes first, followed by a verb.

So far, we have mainly looked at examples in which the subject was an already known piece of background information. At this point, you will get to know another special case: Things that are in contrast to something else often become the subject and end up at the beginning of a sentence. Here, for example, is a sentence with a "normal" order:



K7 – Audio  
Satzstellung



Subject	Verb	Rest	Translation
Ich	gsee	dich hüt zaabig a de Demo.	'I will see you at the demonstration tonight.'

Let's say I want to say that I see you - not anyone else or not any other person you might be thinking of! Then I can say:

Subject	Verb	Rest	Translation
Diich	gseeni	hüt zaabig a de Demo.	'See you at the demonstration tonight.'

A word that becomes the subject because it contrasts with something else is additionally emphasized: *diich* instead of simply. Listen to the examples in this section to get a feeling for it.

Here's another example with more context. First the standard version:

Subject	Verb	Rest	Translation
Ich	schick	der dini Waalunderlage.	'I will send you your voting documents.'

And here are variants where another word becomes the subject by contrast:

Subject	Verb	Rest	Translation
Diir	schicki	d Waalunderlage, aber für d Carmen chani das nöd au no mache.	You will receive the voting documents from me but I cannot do the same for Carmen.'
D Waalunderlage	schicki	der, nöd dini Wösch!	'The voting documents will be sent to you, not your laundry!'
Mit de Poscht	schicki	der d Waalunderlage und de Rescht dän per Mail.	'By post I will send you the voting documents and the rest by e-mail.'



### C4.3



Fill in suitable words in the correct form.

Vo däne Politiker\*ine isch mer niemer richtig sympathisch. Ich weiss gar nöd, wär das i söl \_\_\_\_\_ .  
D Initiative isch zschand choo, aber mir \_\_\_\_\_  
erschit i zwai Mönet drüber \_\_\_\_\_ .  
I de Schwiiz git s en Huuffe \_\_\_\_\_, linggi, rächti,  
chlini, groossi ...  
Für de Vertraag brüüchtemer daa no Iri \_\_\_\_\_ .  
Ali Lüüt, wo wääle und abschtme dörfed, sind zäme s  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Si hät zwar wenig Gäld, aber si \_\_\_\_\_ iri Partei  
mit Arbet und Idee.  
Schtüüre sind es wichtigs \_\_\_\_\_, aber ich find s  
gliche megalangwillig.  
Bisch au scho so gschpanet uf s \_\_\_\_\_ vo däre-  
n Abschtmig?  
Die Partei isch nie zfride. Si ergriiffed schtändig s  
\_\_\_\_\_ und tüend esoo, wi wän s Volch das wetti.  
I de Schwiiz füert d \_\_\_\_\_ nöd en ainzigi Per-  
soon aa, sondern imer sibe glichziitig.

### C4.4



Explain in your own words (in Swiss German) what the following terms mean:

*diräkti Demokratii, Volksinitiative, Referändum.*

diräkti Demokratii

-----  
-----

Volchsinitiative

-----  
-----

Referändum

-----  
-----

### C4.5



How do you like Switzerland's direct democracy? What advantages and disadvantages of this system can you think of? Discuss with a partner in Swiss German.



Read through the dialogue.

## Jede Verain isch politisch

*S isch voCHabular-Wuchenänd z Bärn. Ali, wo bim noie Buech mithälfed, träffed sich und tuusched sich uus. Bim Zmittag chunt de Raimi mit em Peer i s Gschprööch.*

**P:** Hoj! Wie haissisch du namal?

**R:** Ich bi de Raimi - und du de Peer, oder?

**P:** Ja, genau. En guete!

**R:** En guete. Du bisch nanig so lang debii, oder?

**P:** Nai, es paar Wuche sinds jetzt.

**R:** Und wie bisch uf voCHabular choo?

**P:** Ich ha Luscht ghaa, mich politisch iizsetze. Aber nöd inere Partei oder so ...

**R:** Wisoo nöd?

**P:** Hm, gueti Fraag. Ich glaub, am Änd ischs mer aifech z schträng. Als Politiker oder Politikerin mueme doch schtändig a die danke, wo aim d Schtim ggää händ. Me mues pauseloos d Lüüt überzüüge, kämpfe, Kompromiss uushandle ...

**R:** Töönt nach Abwächslig!

**P:** Jaa, aber für miich äbe z vil. Ich find scho wichtig, das me öppis für die Gsellschaft tuet, wo me dine läbt. Aber das chame ja zum Biischpil au imene Verain mache, wo s echli entschpanter isch.

**R:** Jaa, voCHabular isch natürli seer entschpant ... und au politisch: Ali söled chöne Düütsch oder Schwiizerdüütsch leere, egaal, vo woo das si sind und wi vil Gäld das si händ. Aber ich finde, das isch eender en Uusnaam. S git au ganz vil Verain, wo total unpolitisch sind. Garteverain zum Biischpil.

**P:** Säg das nöd, die setzed sich au für öppis ii! Di ainte gsend viliich nur ire Garte, aber ali zäme chönd au öppis bewege, zum Biischpil de Tier i de Schtatt es Dihai büüte. Für miich isch jede, wo sich für andri iisetzt, politisch!

**R:** Hm, ich gsee din Punkt, aber ... was isch zum Biischpil mit Tschutte?

**P:** Fuessbal chan au es Integrations-Projäkt sii. E gueti Fründin vo mir hät über s Tschutte d Schwiiz käneglärnt. Aber klaar, das isch nöd imer esoo. Vil intressiered sich au nur für d Schpilergäbnis und suscht nüüt.



# CH

# EN

# DE

**sich intressiere (hät sich intressiert)**

Är intressiert sich wenig für andri Mänsche.

**to be interested in**

He is not very interested in other people.

**sich interessieren**

Er interessiert sich wenig für andere Menschen.

**egaal sii (isch egaal gsii)**

Mir isch egaal, wie alt mini Fründe sind.

**not matter**

It does not matter which country my friends come from.

**egal sein**

Mir ist egal, wie alt meine Freunde sind.

**choo uf (isch uf ... choo)**

Wie bisch dän aigetlich uf voCHabular choo?

**to come across**

How did you actually come across voCHabular?

**kommen auf**

Wie bist du denn eigentlich auf voCHabular gekommen?

**debii sii (isch debii gsii)**

Bisch duu bi däm Konzärt au debii gsii?

**to be part of, to be present**

Were you also present at the concert?

**dabei sein**

Warst du bei dem Konzert auch dabei?

**de Verain (d Verain)**

Wottsch nöd au bi ois im Verain voCHabular mitmachen?

**association**

Wouldn't you like to join our VoCHabular association?

**Verein**

Hättest du nicht Lust, auch bei uns im Verein VoCHabular mitzumachen?

**de Punkt (d Pünkt)**

Dää Punkt wetti gärn normal diskutiere.

**point**

I would like to discuss this point again.

**Punkt**

Diesen Punkt würde ich gerne noch mal diskutieren.

**tschutte (hät tschuttet)**

D Chind sind go tschutte.

**to play soccer**

The children went to play soccer.

**Fussball spielen**

Die Kinder sind Fussball spielen gegangen.

**tuusche (hät tuuschet)**

Wämmer emal oisi Chap-pene tuusche?

**to exchange**

Shall we exchange our caps?

**tauschen**

Wollen wir mal unsere Mützen tauschen?

**überzüüge (hät überzoge)**

Er hät megalang umediskutiert, aber überzoge häter mi nöd.

**to convince**

He spent ages discussing it, but he did not convince me.

**überzeugen**

Er hat ewig lang herumdiskutiert, aber überzeugt hat er mich nicht.

**d Uusnaam (d Uusnaame)**

Di maischte Länder vo Europa sind demokratisch, aber Belarus isch en Uusnaam.

**exception**

Most European countries are democratic, but Belarus is an exception.

**Ausnahme**

Die meisten Länder Europas sind demokratisch, aber Belarus ist eine Ausnahme.

**wivil**

Wi vil Miete zaleder im Monet?

**how much/many**

How much rent do you pay per month?

**wie viel**

Wie viel Miete zahlt ihr pro Monat?

**als**

Si schafft als Chälnerin.

**as**

She works as a waitress.

**als**

Sie arbeitet als Kellnerin.

**der aint, di aint, s ainte (di ainte)**

Di aint hät Glacé gärn, der ander hät lieber Chueche.

**the one, the one, the one (the ones)**

One likes ice cream, the other prefers cake.

**der eine, die eine, das eine (die einen)**

Die eine mag Glace, der andere mag lieber Kuchen.

**C5.1**

Whose opinion is this? Match each of the statements to the person you think they best fit ("P" for "Peer" or "R" for "Raimi").

1

Ich wäär gärn emal für es paar Tääg Politiker.

2

D Natuur isch au es politisches Thema, wil mir ali öppis vo de Natuur händ.

3

Fuesbal isch unpolitisch.

4

Wämmer imene Verain schafft, engagiertme sich für d Gsellschaft.

5

Ich ha s lieber, wän d Lüüt um mich ume di gleich Mainig händ wi-n iich.

6

voCHabular isch es ganz es speziells Projäkt.

## C5.2



A few words have been mixed up on the right sight. Underline the wrong word and write the correct word in the column on the right.

- 1 Im Quartierverain ischsi megaungeniert.
- 2 Ich ha ghöört, du segsch in e Party iiträtete?
- 3 Daas Argumänt überziet ali!
- 4 Als Politikerin muesme schtändig cämpe.
- 5 Bim Schaffe hani gärn echli Verwächslig.
- 6 Wämme politisch aktiv isch, machtme öppis für sini Sailschaft.
- 7 Oise Verlei hät 120 Mitglieder.
- 8 Wän d Kompression nöd gärn häsch, wirsch imer en Einzelkämpfer bliibe!


## C5.3



What do you think - is every club political or not? Is the truth perhaps in the middle? What does it even mean to be "political" - in general and for you personally? Discuss your thoughts with a partner.

Notes:

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



# Last but Not Least

Now you can test your knowledge to see if you meet the learning goals of this unit. Solve the exercises below and then check in the solution section and discover how many points you have scored. Here is our advice:

## Points

0-50	Better check out the unit again.
51-80	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
81-100	Great - proceed with the next unit right away!

## D1

### D1.1



Insert the new words that match the descriptions. (1 point per word)

## Exchange Views on Political Topics

- 1 Binere Waal sini Schtim abgää haisst au ...
- 2 Wämme öpper uf ungrächti Art anderscht behandelt als andri, haisst das ...
- 3 Wän en Huuffe Lüüt us politische Gründ uf d Schtraass gönd, isch das e ...
- 4 Die Politiker\*ine, wo im Momänt de Schtaat länked, bilded zäme d ...
- 5 Wämmmer freiwillig Ziit für e gueti Sach git, tuetme sich ...
- 6 E Gruppe vo Lüüt, wo sich regelmässig für en beschtimte Zwäck träffed - das isch en ...
- 7 Das Dokumänt, wo bewiist, das me en Aaghöörige vomene beschtimte Schtaat isch, isch de ...

### D1.2



Patime and João talk about housing policy. Listen to their conversation once and then mark T(rue) or F(false). (3 points for each correct answer)

- D Wonig vom João söl renoviert wärde.
- D Patime isch grundsätzlich gäg Renovatione.
- D Patime isch unzfride mit de Wonigspolitik.
- De João findt, das Immobilie-Undernäme z vil Profit mached.
- D Patime findt, Immobilie-Undernäme müested mee a d Zuekunft danke.
- D Meerhait vo de Schwiizer\*ine hät käs aigets Huus.

	T	F
D Wonig vom João söl renoviert wärde.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
D Patime isch grundsätzlich gäg Renovatione.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
D Patime isch unzfride mit de Wonigspolitik.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
De João findt, das Immobilie-Undernäme z vil Profit mached.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
D Patime findt, Immobilie-Undernäme müested mee a d Zuekunft danke.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
D Meerhait vo de Schwiizer*ine hät käs aigets Huus.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

K7 -  
Audio D1.2



## D1.3



Find a partner who speaks Swiss German well. Together, decide on a topic and a specific political question – not too complicated! On the right side you will find a list of suggestions based on topics from previous units. Then discuss your opinion on the question: What does the current policy look like? What should it be like? At the end, your partner will rate you: 20 points if they have understood everything well, 0 points if they have understood nothing at all. Anything in between is also possible.

Suggestions for topics and questions (choose just one or get creative yourself!):

Topic	Question
Freizeit	Sött de Schtaat nöd nume Kulturbetrieb, sondern zum Biischpil au ainzelni Musiker*ine mit Gäld unterschütze?
Schuel	Sötted mee Lüüt uf d Uni chöne gaa und was cha d Politik defür oder degäge mache?
Arbet	Bruuchts i de Schwiiz en Mindeschtlon?
Ässe	Ischs guet, wän d Landwirtschaft vom Schtaat so vil Gäld überchunt, das si iri Produkt vil biliger cha verchaffe, als si aigetlich wäred?
Wone	Ischs okay, d Landpriis i de Schtett em freie Märt z überlaa?

## D2

### D2.1



Make sentences from the word groups by:

- correcting the order (1 point each),
- filling the impersonal pronoun (me or appropriate form, 1 point each) and
- adjusting the verbs (1 point each).

The first block (bold) is already in the right place. The finished sentences are statements about Swiss politics.

## The Swiss Political System

1. **I de Schwiiz:** es paarmal abschtime chöne jedes Jahr

---

2. **Wän:** wele bruuche s Schtimrächt de Schwiizer Pass zerscht

---

3. **Wän:** kontrolliert wärde säge müese d Polizei de Grund

---

4. **Ab und zue:** ane Demo söle gaa sini Mainig z zaige de Politik zum

---

5. **S Referändum:** uufnää chöne wän nöd gfale es politischs Voorhabe

---

## D2.2



On the right side you will listen to a few slogans that are often heard at demonstrations in Switzerland. Match them with the appropriate political topics. (2 points each)

K7 -  
Audio D2.2



Slogan 1

Slogan 2

Slogan 3

Slogan 4

Slogan 5

Human rights in immigration policy

More measures to tackle climate change

Marriage for lesbians and gays

Wage inequality for men and women

Various topics, for example climate

## D2.3



Read through the following transcription of a radio report and try to understand the most important points, even if you don't know all the words yet. Then answer the questions. (3 points for each answer)

Am hütige Suntig isch under anderem di sogenant Begränzigsinitiative zur Abschtimig choo. D Initiative wott d Zuewanderig i d Schwiiz schträng beschränke, vor alem im Hiiblick uf der Arbetsmärt, und forderet daa defür, das d Abkome über d Persoonefreizügigkeit mit de EU kündt wärded. D Initiative hett groossi Uuswürkige uf d Wirtschaft, aber au uf s Image vo de Schwiiz ghaa und isch drum im Voorfäld kontrovers diskutiert worde. Hüt ischsi aber trotz enere uufwändige Kampanie vo de SVP mit rund 62 % düütlich abgleent worde. D Schtimbeteiligung isch bi knapp 60 % gläge.

1. Um weli Initiative gaats?

.....

2. Gaats bi de Initiative um Iiwanderig oder Uuswanderig?

.....

3. Wäär wär usser de Schwiiz vo de Initiative no betroffe?

.....

4. Wi vil Prozänt händ gäg d Initiative gschtume?

.....

## D3

## Submitting Applications

### D3.1



Insert the correct words from the box into the sentences. Attention: Not all words can be used! (1 point per word)

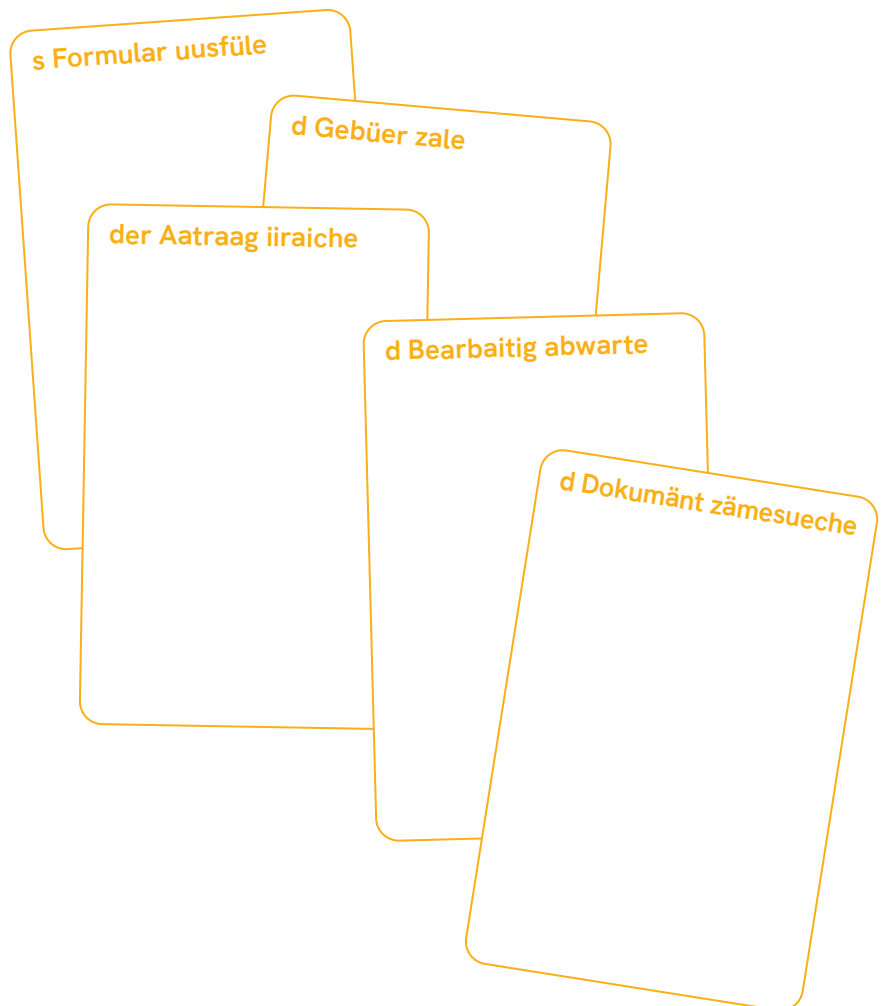
Naawiis / schtele / Arbeitsvertrag / Papiir / mäldde / verlengere / setze / abgloffde / Formular / Biilage / abgschtelt / beaaträge / gültig / uufschalte / Uuswiis

1. Min Uusländeruuswiis isch vor zwai Wuche  
..... . Ich müest en dringend  
..... .
2. Ich ha jetzt lang gnuég gwartet. Ich wür gärn de B-Uuswiis  
..... .
3. Das ..... händ Si scho richtig usgfült, aber s  
fääled no es paar ..... .
4. Tuet mer laid, d Frischt isch abgloffde. Si müend der Aatraag namal noi  
..... !
5. Ich glaub lne scho, das Si en Job händ, aber für der Aatraag bru-  
uchs en ..... . Am beschte wär de  
..... .

### D3.2



In this application, the individual steps have been mixed up. Put them in the correct order by labeling them with numbers. (2 points per step in the correct place)







# 8. Culture

## Learning Goals

### You're able to...

- ...talk about what you and others experience as Swiss characteristics and peculiarities.
- ...explain what you like or dislike about your own culture and about Swiss culture.
- ...reflect about cultures and traditions and talk about the limitations of these terms.

# Für miich isch d Schwiiz ...

A1



Listen and read (to) the texts.

K8 -  
Audio A1



It's time for a reunion! The four people of which you have learnt about their hobbies in Unit 1 now tell us about their impressions of Swiss culture.

**Fatemeh:**

D Kultur vo de Schwiiz? Hm, also iich finde, d Schwiiz isch vor alem es seer es schportlichs Land. Ali mached doch irgendöppis, wandre, Schii faare, schwüme... Mir gfalt das natürli und bsunders, das Fuesbal so beliebt isch. Ich finde, so wi oisi Natsi i de letschte par Jaar gschpilt hät, chame au shtolz uf si sii. Ich bi zwar erscht foif Jaar daa, aber für miich isch es gliich «oisi» Natsi. Mir gfalt supper, wi vil Lüüt mit Migrationshindergrund daa mitschpiled. Das isch doch au d Schwiiz, so-n e groossi Pfane, wo ales driigheit wird und es chunt öppis Fains use!

**Nadir:**

Also d Schwiiz isch für mich zerscht emal es Land in Europa, wo gar nöd so anderscht isch wi di andre. Was speziell isch, isch iri politisch Kultur. Di di-räkt Demokratii findi zum Biischpil e supper Sach. Es git nöd vil andri Länder uf dä Wält, wo d Bürger und Bürgerine so vil chönd mitbeschtime. Uf de andre Siite isch es zimli schwirig, s Bürgerrächt z überchoo, sogar, wämme daa uf d Wält choo isch. Das löscht mer den eender wider ab, wi lang das me daa mues warte und sich abmüe. Irgendwie sind baidi Sache tüppisch schwiizerisch, d Möglichkaite und d lischränkige.

**Pablo:**

Was typisch schwiizerisch isch? Das isch no schwirig, ich cha nur säge, was iich dänke. Wän i «Schwiiz» ghööre, dänki vor alem a d Schwiizer Shtett. Ali reded imer vo de Bärge und vo de Chüe und em Chääs, aber i de Shtett schpilt doch s Läbel! Und ich find, i vilne Schwiizer Shtett wird vil für s Kultuurläbe und für d Kunscht gmacht, s git Konzärt, Uusschtelige, Festivals, Kino... S isch imer öppis loos und d Lüüt gnüessed s. Das isch für mich Schwiizer Kultur!

**Andrea:**

Für miich isch d Schwiiz es Land, wo me Traditione läbt, zum Biischpil s Hackbrätt i de Musig oder Schwinge im Schport. Okay, s git villich nöd so vil Lüüt, wo i irere Freiziit Hackbrätt schpiled oder schwinged, aber defür gits die Sache ebe nur daa und mir gfalt, das si so pflägt wärded. Ich sälber gaa ja gärn i d Bärge, das isch für mich au en Art Tradition. Mini Eltere sind scho imer mit ois go lauffe und ich wott das mit mine Chind au wider esoo mache. D Schwiizer Bärge sind aifech di schöönschte uf de Wält, drum chömed ja au so vil Turischtine und Turischte zu ois!

# Introductory Exercises

## A2



Who says what? Mark an X under the name of the person to whom the statement applies (F = Fatemeh, N = Nadir, P = Pablo, A = Andrea).

	F	N	P	A
1 People like to do sports in Switzerland.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 It's not easy to say what is typically Swiss.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 It takes quite a long time to get a Swiss passport.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 Traditions are cultivated in Switzerland.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 Switzerland has both good and bad aspects.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 In Switzerland, people enjoy the cultural offerings.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7 Schwingen is a typical Swiss sport.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8 It is a characteristic of Switzerland that people from many different countries live and work here.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

## A3



Decide for the statements on the right side, if they really correspond to the opinion of the person named.

	T	F
To Pablo, the cities represent Switzerland's culture best.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Andrea wishes to pass on Swiss traditions to her children.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Nadir thinks Switzerland is a special case that is unique in the world.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Fatemeh believes that if you live in Switzerland, you should also be a fan of the Swiss national football team.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

# Vocabulary

## CH

## EN

## DE

### Europa (-)

Si hät letscht Jahr en Euro-parais gmacht.

### Europe

She travelled through Europe last year.

### Europa

Sie hat letztes Jahr eine Europareise gemacht.

### schwiizerisch (schwiizerischer)

Was isch typisch schwiizerisch?

### Swiss

What is typically Swiss?

### schweizerisch

Was ist typisch schweizerisch?

### typisch (typischer)

Das isch en tüppische Züri-Brune.

### typical, a characteristic of

This is a typical example of a Zurich fountain.

### typisch

Das ist ein typischer Zürcher Brunnen.

### d Kultur (d Kultuure)

Ich find s schpanend, in e främdi Kultur iiztauche.

### culture

I find it exciting to immerse myself in a foreign culture.

### Kultur

Ich finde es spannend, in eine fremde Kultur einzutauchen.

### d Kunscht (d Künscht)

Ich liebe Kunscht und gan gärn i Musee'e.

### art

I love art and I enjoy going to museums.

### Kunst

Ich liebe Kunst und gehe gerne in Museen.

### d Tradition (d Traditione)

Am Geburi ässemer ali zäme Zmorge - das isch Tradition bi ois.

### tradition

On birthdays, we all have a meal together - it's one of our traditions.

### Tradition

Am Geburtstag essen wir alle zusammen - das ist eine Tradition bei uns.

### de Migrationshindergrund (-)

En Groosstail vo oisem Team hät en Migrationshindergrund.

### migratory background

A large part of our team has a migratory background.

### Migrationshintergrund

Ein Grossteil von unserem Team hat einen Migrationshintergrund.

### d Pfane (d Pfanene)

Die Pfane bruuchemer amigs zum Suppe choche.

### pot

This pot is the one we always use to make soup.

### Topf

Diesen Topf benutzen wir immer zum Suppe kochen.

### schportlich (schportlicher)

Du bisch scho imer bitz schportlicher gsii wi-n iich.

### sporty, athletic

You've always been a bit sportier than me.

### sportlich

Du warst schon immer ein bisschen sportlicher als ich.

<p><b>d Natsi (-)</b></p> <p>Ich verfolge jedes Spiil vo de Schwiizer Natsi.</p>	<p><b>national team</b></p> <p>I follow every game of the Swiss national team.</p>	<p><b>Nationalmannschaft</b></p> <p>Ich verfolge jedes Spiel der Schweizer Nationalmannschaft.</p>
<p><b>s Schwinge (-)</b></p> <p>Min Lieblingsschport isch Schwinge.</p>	<p><b>“Schwingen”, Swiss wrestling</b></p> <p>My favourite sport is “Schwingen”, Swiss wrestling.</p>	<p><b>Schwingen</b></p> <p>Mein Lieblingssport ist Schwingen.</p>
<p><b>d*e Bürger*in (d Bürger*ine)</b></p> <p>Als engaschierti Bürgerin setztsi sich aktiv für der Umwäلتschutz ii.</p>	<p><b>citizen</b></p> <p>As a committed citizen, she is actively involved in environmental protection.</p>	<p><b>Bürger*in</b></p> <p>Als engagierte Bürgerin setzt sie sich aktiv für den Umweltschutz ein.</p>
<p><b>s Bürgerrächt (d Bürgerächt)</b></p> <p>Ais vo de Bürgerrächt i de Schwiiz isch s Waalächt.</p>	<p><b>civil right</b></p> <p>The right to vote is a civil right in Switzerland.</p>	<p><b>Bürgerrecht</b></p> <p>Ein Bürgerrecht in der Schweiz ist das Wahlrecht.</p>
<p><b>mitbeschtime (hät mitbeschtime)</b></p> <p>I däm Projäkt chani vil mitbeschtime.</p>	<p><b>to have a say</b></p> <p>I have a lot to contribute in this project.</p>	<p><b>mitbestimmen</b></p> <p>In diesem Projekt kann ich viel mitbestimmen.</p>
<p><b>d lischränkig (d lischränkige)</b></p> <p>D lirs isch wider ooni lischränkige möglich.</p>	<p><b>restriction</b></p> <p>Entering (a country) is again possible without restrictions.</p>	<p><b>Einschränkung</b></p> <p>Die Einreise ist wieder ohne Einschränkungen möglich.</p>
<p><b>sich abmüe (hät sich abgmüet)</b></p> <p>Ich müe mich scho sit zwai Schtund mit däre-n Uufgaab ab.</p>	<p><b>to struggle, to work hard, to try hard</b></p> <p>I've been struggling with this task for two hours.</p>	<p><b>sich abmühen</b></p> <p>Ich mühe mich schon seit zwei Stunden mit dieser Aufgabe ab.</p>
<p><b>ablösche (hät abglöscht)</b></p> <p>Woni gsee han, wi vil Lüüt aaschtönd, ischs mer gad verleidet.</p>	<p><b>to spoil sth for sb</b></p> <p>When I saw how many people were queuing, I didn't feel like going there any more.</p>	<p><b>verleiden</b></p> <p>Als ich gesehen habe, wie viele Leute anstehen, ist es mir verleidet.</p>
<p><b>bschiisse (hät bschisse)</b></p> <p>20 Franke sind vil z tüür, die händ dich bschisse.</p>	<p><b>to rip sb off, to betray sb</b></p> <p>20 francs is far too expensive, they've ripped you off.</p>	<p><b>bescheissen</b></p> <p>20 Franken sind viel zu teuer, die haben dich beschissen.</p>

**vor alem**

I de Freiziit verbringemer vil Ziit am See, vor alem im Sumer.

**particularly, especially, above all**

In our free time, we spend a lot of time at the lake, particularly in summer.

**vor allem**

In der Freizeit verbringen wir viel Zeit am See, vor allem im Sommer

**bsunder- (bsundriger)**

Si isch wükli e bsunderi Frau.

**special**

She really is a special woman.

**besonder-**

Sie ist wirklich eine besondere Frau.

**beliebt (beliebter)**

Fuesbal isch seer e beliebti Schportart i de Schwiiz.

**popular**

Football is a very popular sport in Switzerland.

**beliebt**

Fussball ist eine sehr beliebte Sportart in der Schweiz.

**d Art (d Arte)**

Das isch iri Art zum «Danke» säge.

**way**

This is her way of saying thank you.

**Art**

Das ist ihre Art, um Danke zu sagen.



# Grammar

## Passive Voice (to be done)

The passive voice is used when you don't know exactly who did something or when you want to make it seem unimportant. Look at these examples:

- *Im Momänt wärded vil noii Hüsere pout.* 'Many new houses are being built at the moment.' (Who exactly builds them is not clear or not important).
- *De Film isch im 2002 dreit worde.* 'The film was shot in 2002.' (It is not important who made the film. More interesting is the film itself and the time it was made).
- *Bisch verletzt worde?* 'Have you been hurt?' (Who did it doesn't matter at the moment – I'm interested in what happened to you).

The examples show how to form the passive voice. It's done the same way as in Standard German: auxiliary verb *wärde* + past participle. *Wärde* is irregular:

wärde 'to be': simple present			
1st pers sg	ich wird	I am	ich werde
2nd pers sg	du wirsch	you are	du wirst
3rd pers sg	är/si/es wird	he/she/it is	er/sie/es wird
1st pers pl	mir wärded	we are	wir werden
1st pers pl	ir wärded	you are	ihr werdet
3rd pers pl	si wärded	they are	sie werden

The past tense is formed with *sii*: *ich bi das imer wider gfrööged worde* 'I was asked this again and again', *si isch zueglaa worde* 'She was admitted'.

The meaning of the passive voice is similar, but not exactly the same as the meaning of some other forms. Here is an overview of examples, each one first with an alternative, then with passive voice:

- *Me (man)* ist used when almost everyone does something in a certain way, including the person speaking. Please compare:
  - *Schriibtme Karussell mit zwei S?* 'Is *Karussell* written with two S?' (What is the general rule? How does everyone do it?)
  - *Karussell wird oft falsch gschriibe.* '*Karussell* is often misspelled.' (Some people make a mistake, who exactly is not relevant).

- *Si (sie)* can be used when you don't know exactly who is doing something. However, you have a certain group of people in mind. Please compare:
  - *Jetzt händs ändlich emal en Velotunel pout.* 'Now they've finally built a bicycle tunnel'. (the people from the city, the government, ...)
  - *Dää Tunel isch im Mittelalter pout worde.* 'This tunnel was built in the Middle Ages. (Nobody knows who built it).
- *Öpper (jemand)* or *irgendöpper (irgendjemand)* is used when you believe that a certain person has done something. You don't know yet who it is, but you may want to find out. Please compare:
  - *Irgendöpper pflanzt da imer so schööni Blüemli.* 'Someone always plants such beautiful flowers here. (Probably some mysterious person, but I don't (yet) know who).
  - *Die Blüemli da wärded zwaimal i de Wuche gschprützt.* 'These flowers are watered twice a week'. (It doesn't matter by whom, maybe the city gardeners).

## The Causative (to let someone do sth)

Many events do not happen on their own, but depend on a person who allows them, orders them or pushes their realisation. The causative is used to describe such events more precisely. Here are a few examples:

- *Laasch dini Chind uf de Schtraass la schpile?* 'Do you let your children play on the street?' (permission)
- *Er laat mi nie (la) uusrede.* 'He never lets me finish my sentence. (admission)
- *Jetzt wottsi ois sogar am Suntig la schaffe.* 'Now she even wants us to work on Sundays. (inducement)

The causative is formed with the auxiliary verb *laa* 'let' and the infinitive. *Laa* is irregular:

<b>laa 'let': Present Simple</b>			
<b>1st pers sg</b>	ich laa	I let	ich lasse
<b>2nd pers sg</b>	du laasch	you let	du lässt
<b>3rd pers sg</b>	är/si/es laat	he/she/it lets	er/sie/es lässt
<b>1st pers pl</b>	mir lönd	we let	wir lassen
<b>2nd pers pl</b>	ir lönd	you let	ihr lasst
<b>3rd pers pl</b>	si lönd	they let	sie lassen



If *laa* depends on an auxiliary verb, it becomes a short *la*: *Ich ha di geschter scho la uusschlaaffe* 'I let you sleep in yesterday already', *Würsch das de Pöschter la ufebringe?* 'Would you let the postman bring it up?' Some speakers use this *la* even when no auxiliary verb is present, i.e. in addition to *laa* or one of its forms: *Hüt laani di sicher nöd (la) uusschlaaffe* 'I certainly won't let you sleep in today', *Laa s de Pöschter (la) ufebringe, bitte* 'Please let the postman bring it up'.

Sometimes a person gives permission or an order to do something to themselves. It is often not that important who does it. To express this, you can combine the causative with *sich*:

- *Morn laani mi (la) fötele.* 'Tomorrow I'll have my photo taken.'
- *Morn lömmer ois d Haar (la) schniide.* 'Tomorrow we'll have our hair cut.'
- *Häsch der es Päckli (la) schicke?* 'Have you had a parcel sent to you?'
- *Häsch di wider (la) bschiisse?* 'Have you let someone rip you off again?'



# Exercises

## B1



Please insert suitable words from the new vocabulary into the text on the right side.

D Schwiiz isch es Land i de Mitti vo (1)\_\_\_\_\_.  
 Wil si uf alne Siite Naachbere hät, sind daa imer scho Lüüt ii- und uus  
 (2)\_\_\_\_\_ und niemer isch scho imer daa gsii. Drum  
 händ au seer vil Lüüt i de Schwiiz en (3)\_\_\_\_\_, und daas  
 scho siit vilne Jarhundert. Me chönt sogaar säge, das daas en Art Schwiizer  
 (4)\_\_\_\_\_ isch, genauso wie s Läbe i de Bärge oder  
 di diräkt (5)\_\_\_\_\_. Obwool so vil Lüüt d Schwiiz zu  
 irere Haimet mached, isch s Schwiizer (6)\_\_\_\_\_ aber  
 schwirig z überchoo.

## B2



Put the sentences into the passive voice. Please note: Some words may be omitted, e.g. *me* 'people in general'.

1. I de Schwiiz triibtme vil Schport.

.....

2. D Schwiiz isch wine groossi Pfane, wo me ales driirüert.

.....

3. D Schwiizer\*ine schetzed di diräkti Demokratii.

.....

4. D Bürger\*ine beschtimed d Politik mit.

.....

5. Wän s um d Schwiiz gaat, redtme imer vo de Bärge und de Chüe.

.....

6. I de Schwiizer Schtett machtme vil für s Kultuurläbe.

.....

7. Vil Turischt\*ine bsueched d Schwiiz.

.....

## B3

### B3.1



Turn the sentences on the right side into causatives by adding a person who allows or causes the event or lets it happen. The person and further words to be added are indicated in brackets.

## Laa mi (la) mache

Example:

Ich bruuche sis Tüechli. (+ er, nie) → *Er laaf mi nie sis Tüechli la bruuche.*

1. Dänked Si no echli naa. (+ ich, gärn)

2. Ich schaffe-n in Rue. (+ du, bitte)

3. Das sött gschiider mal en Arzt aaluege. (+ dini Schwöschter)

4. Mängisch chunt e Pizza. (+ mir)

5. De Karim schpilt mit sine Autos. (+ ir, doch)

6. Si gaat uf s Gimi. (+ iri Eltere, händ)

### B3.2



Use the following words to create sentences in which the named person both initiates and receives the action.

Example:

ich, föttele → *Ich laa mi (la) föttele.*

1. ich, megagärn, massiere

2. du, chöne, die Websiite, voorläse

3. mini Koleegin, amigs, d Schtüüre, mache

4. mir, erscht emal, en Offerte, choo

5. ir, ja gar nüm, gsee

6. di baide, letschts Jaar, iibürgere

## C1



The text for this in-depth section is a radio programme, listen to it first.

K8 -  
Audio C1



## Schwiizer Musig

Was isch aigentlich «Schwiizer Musig» - Musig, wo i de Schwiiz gschpilt wird oder wo daa glosset wird? Ischs Musig, wo imer scho daa gsii isch - und gits das überhaupt? Ischs daas, wo die maischte Lüüt gärn händ, oder daas, wo me nume i de Schwiiz findt?

Oft wird zum Biischpil gsait, das s Hackbrätt und s Schwiizerörgeli typisch schwiizerischi Inschtrumänt seged. Äänlichi Inschtrumänt git s aber au i vilne anderne europäische Länder - s Hackbrätt und s Schwiizerörgeli sind aifech schpezielli Forme daa devoo. Sogaar s Alphorn und s Jodle findtme nöd nume i de Schwiiz, sondern au z Düütschland und z Ööschtrich.

Öppis, wo s wükli suscht nienets git, sind Lieder, wo uf Schwiizerdüütsch gsunge oder gräppt wärded. I de 60er-Jaar isch zum Biischpil de Bärner Sänger Mani Matter mit sine naachdänkliche Lieder berüemt worde. Hüüt gits aber au vil Bands, wo Rock oder au Hip-Hop im Dialäkt mached. Aber wän daas typisch schwiizerisch isch, was isch dän mit Lieder uf Französisch, Italiänisch oder Rumantsch?

Me cha-n au fröoge, wie i de Schwiiz Musig konsumiert wird. Zum Biischpil falt uuf, wi vil i de Schwiiz Festivals bsuecht wärded. Vo Pop und Rock bis zu Volksmusig oder Jazz, vo graatis bis tüür, für jede Gschmack isch öppis debii und für vil Lüüt - vor alem für jungi - isch de Sumer vor alem d Saison, wo me uf ais Festival nach em andre gaat.



# CH

# EN

# DE

## d Volksmusig (-)

Volksmusig isch nöd so mis Ding.

## folk music

Folk music is not my thing.

## Volksmusik

Volksmusik ist nicht so mein Ding.

## s Inschtrumänt (d Inschtrumänt)

Es Inschtrumänt z leere bruucht Ziit.

## instrument

Learning how to play an instrument takes time.

## Instrument

Ein Instrument zu lernen braucht Zeit.

## s Alphorn (d Alphörner)

Alphörner gänd en tüüffe, runde Toon.

## alphorn

Alphorns have a deep, round sound.

## Alphorn

Alphörner haben einen tiefen, runden Klang.

## s Schwiizerörgeli (d Schwiizerörgeli)

S Schwiizerörgeli isch en Art Akkordeon.

## Swiss accordion

The Schwyzerörgeli is a kind of accordion.

## Schwyzerörgeli

Das Schwyzerörgeli ist eine Art Akkordeon.

## d\*e Sängler\*in (d Sängler\*ine)

Als Chind hani wele Sänglerin wärde.

## singer

As a child, I wanted to be a singer.

## Sänger\*in

Als Kind wollte ich Sängerin werden.

## jodle (hät gjodlet)

Muesch mal i de Duschi jodle, das entschant.

## to yodel

You should yodel in the shower, it's relaxing.

## jodeln

Du musst mal in der Dusche jodeln, das entspannt.

## äänlich (äänlicher)

De Pedro und de Pjotr gsend sich megaäänlich, mängisch mueni zwaimal luege.

## similar

Pedro and Pyotr look very similar, sometimes I have to take a second look.

## ähnlich

Pedro und Pjotr sehen sich sehr ähnlich, manchmal muss ich zweimal gucken.

## europäisch (-)

Di wichtigscht europäisch Wäärig isch der Euro.

## European

The most important European currency is the Euro.

## europäisch

Die wichtigste europäische Währung ist der Euro.

## wi vil

Wi vil Kilo Händöpfel bruuchemer?

## how much / how many

How many kilos of potatoes do we need?

## wie viel

Wie viele Kilo Kartoffeln brauchen wir?

## nienets

E so-n e günschtigi Mieta findsch suscht nienets.

## nowhere, not ... anywhere

You won't find such a low rent anywhere else.

## nirgends, niemals

So eine günstige Mieta findest du sonst nirgends.

## sondern

Das isch kän Baum, sondern en Busch!

## instead, but

It's not a tree, but a bush!

## sondern

Das ist kein Baum, sondern ein Busch!







## Time for an After-Work Drink

Antje invites her colleagues Karim and Rodrigo to her home for an after-work drink. Now the doorbell rings – the guests have arrived.

- 
- A:** Hoi zäme, schön, sinder daa, chömed nume inel! D Jaggene chönder suscht daa bi de Garderobe-n uufhänke.
- 
- R:** Danke für d liladig! Ich han daa no öppis Chliises für dich mitpraacht.
- 
- A:** Danke dir und schön, häts klappet. Was wüeder gärn trinke? Ich chan oi zum Biischpil en Aperol mache oder s hät au Prosecco, Bier oder Wiisswii us em Wallis und natürlich au Getränk ooni Alkohol.
- 
- K:** Für miich gärn en Aperol.
- 
- R:** Ich wür es Glaas Wiisse nää.
- 
- A:** Ja, bringi gärn. Sitzed ruig scho mal ane und fanged aa ässe.
- 
- R:** Mm, die Oliive sind megafain. Vo wo häsch die?
- 
- A:** Ich bi geschter uf em Märt gsii und deet häts so-n en Schtand mit ganz vil verschidnige Antipasti und Trochefrücht. D Tomäätli hani au vom Märt. Ich lieb s, wän ales Gmües so früscht isch.
- 
- K:** Ja, ich probier au amigs, uf de Märt z gaa vor em Schaffe. Scho cool, wämme s Ässe chan soozsäge diräkt ab Hoof chauffe. Und wie lauffts im Gschäft?
- 
- A:** Guet. Im Momänt sind schtändig Apéros. Am Määntigaabig hämmer en Begrüessigsapéro mit alne noie Mitarbaitende ghaa und geschter dän vom Verband so-n es Vernetzigsträffe mit Apéro riche. Imer schön, zum so in Fiiraabig z scharte und chli gmüetlich schwätze und noii Lüüt känelärne.
- 
- R:** Was isch dän en Apéro riche?
- 
- A:** Aifach en megariichhaltige-n Apéro mit uuvil verschidnige Sache. Dän häsch nacher gad scho Znacht ggässe.
- 
- K:** Aso din Apéro isch aber au seer grooss, häsch sicher es Wiili ghaa zum das ales Vorberaite. Ich main, al das Gmües schniide, die Dips mache, die Schpinaat-Feta-Täsche mit Blettertaig und dän sogar no sälbergmachte Hummus - supperfain. Was häsch da ales inetaa?
- 
- A:** Kicherärbse und Tahini natürlich, dän Salz und Chrüzchümi, Zitroonesaft, Chnobl und guets Oliivenööl.
- 
- K:** Aa, das töönt aifach. Muesi unbedingt au emal uusprobiere.
-



# CH

# EN

# DE

## der Apéro (d Apéros)

Vor de Wienachte mached vil Firmene en Apéro für iri Mitarbaitende.

## aperitif, get-together with drinks and snacks

Before Christmas, many companies organise a get-together for their employees.

## Apéro, Empfang

Vor Weihnachten machen viele Firmen einen Apéro für ihre Mitarbeitenden.

## s Getränk (d Getränk)

Was händ Si für Getränk ooni Alkohol?

## beverage

What drinks do you have without alcohol?

## Getränk

Was haben Sie für Getränke ohne Alkohol?

## de Saft (d Säft)

Ich ha no gärn Truubesaft.

## juice

I like grape juice.

## Saft

Ich mag gern Traubensaft.

## der Alkohol (-)

I de Schwiiz dörf a Jugendlich under 16 Jaar kä Alkohol verschauft wärde.

## alcohol

In Switzerland, alcohol may not be sold to teenagers under the age of 16.

## Alkohol

In der Schweiz darf an Jugendliche unter 16 Jahren kein Alkohol verkauft werden.

## d Olive (d Oliive)

Oliive sind scho öppis Fains, schaad, wachseds i de Schwiiz nöd.

## olive

Olives are a real treat, it's a shame they don't grow in Switzerland.

## Olive

Oliven sind schon etwas Feines, schade, wachsen sie in der Schweiz nicht.

## d Zitroone (d Zitroone)

Ui, die Zitroone-n isch megasaaur!

## lemon

Oh, the lemon is really sour!

## Zitrone

Oh, die Zitrone ist supersauer!

## riichhaltig (riichhaltiger)

Traditioneli Schwiizer Chuchi isch zimli riichhaltig.

## substantial, rich

Traditional Swiss cuisine is quite rich.

## reichhaltig

Traditionelle Schweizer Küche ist ziemlich reichhaltig.

## s Gschäft (d Gschäfte)

Am Fritigaabig hani namal i s Gschäft müese.

## business

I had to go back to work on Friday evening.

## Geschäft

Am Freitagabend musste ich nochmals auf die Arbeit.

## de Märt (d Märt)

Am Märt poschte-n isch schön, aber tüür.

## market

Grocery shopping at the market is nice but expensive.

## Markt

Auf dem Markt einkaufen ist schön, aber teuer.

## de Schtand (d Schtänd)

Mini Koleegin schafft amene Schtand am Wienachtsmärt.

## stall, stand

My friend works at a stall at the Christmas market.

## Stand

Meine Kollegin arbeitet an einem Stand auf dem Weihnachtsmarkt.

## de Hoof (d Hööf)

Mini Eltere händ no en aigete Hoof ghaa.

## farm

My parents had their own farm.

## Hof

Meine Eltern hatten noch einen eigenen Hof.

**chauffe (hät kaufft)**

Wo häsch äch die Jagge kaufft?

**to buy**

Where did you buy this jacket?

**kaufen**

Wo hast du denn diese Jacke gekauft?

**verschidnig (-, sind verschide)**

Es git megavil verschidnigi Olivensorte.

**different, various**

There are many different kinds of olives.

**verschieden**

Es gibt viele verschiedene Olivensorten.

**gmüetlich (gmüetlicher)**

Mit de Chüssi gseet s Wonzimer gad echli gmüetlicher uus.

**cozy**

The living room immediately looks cosier with the cushions.

**gemütlich**

Mit den Kissen sieht das Wohnzimmer gleich etwas gemütlicher aus.

**cool**

Isch cool, das er jetzt am Aabig lenger offe händ!

**cool**

Cool that you are open longer in the evening now!

**cool**

Ist cool, dass ihr jetzt am Abend länger offen habt!

**schtarte (isch gschtartet)**

S Flugzüüg isch gad am Schtarte.

**to start, to take off**

The aircraft is about to take off.

**starten**

Das Flugzeug ist gerade am Starten.

**uufhänke (hät uufghänkt)**

Wo sölemer das Bild uufhänke?

**to hang (up) sth**

Where should we hang (up) the painting?

**aufhängen**

Wo sollen wir das Bild aufhängen?

**uusprobiere (hät uusprobiert)**

Jetzt laferemer nüme lang, sondern probiered s aifecht uus.

**to try, to give sth a go**

Let's not ramble on any longer, just give it a go.

**ausprobieren**

Jetzt labern wir nicht mehr lang, sondern probieren es einfach

**soozsäge**

Dini noi Fründin hät es Chind? Dän bisch ja soozsäge namal Vatter worde.

**so to speak, in a way**

Your new girlfriend has a child? Then you became a father again, in a way.

**sozusagen**

Deine neue Freundin hat ein Kind? Dann bist du ja sozusagen nochmal Vater geworden.



K8 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 2



## C2.1



“Apéros” are something typically Swiss. Write down in Swiss German what you have learnt about “Apéros” in the text.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## C2.2



Is there anything similar to “Apéros” in your culture? How do you get to know new people at work in a more casual setting?

## C2.3



Choose at least three pieces of information from the text and turn each into a sentence in the passive voice.

Example: D Schpinat-Feta-Täsche wärded mit Bletterteig gmacht.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

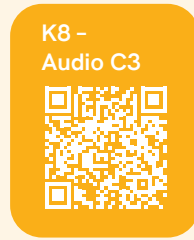
---

## Sumer und Badi ghööred zäme



Listen to the short radio report on this topic. Do exercise 1 while listening, the other exercises afterwards.

When temperatures rise, the bathing season comes around – a highly cherished aspect of Swiss culture that many people are not even aware of.



### CH

### EN

### DE

#### im Freie

Im Summer spiled d Chind öfter im Freie.

#### outside, outdoors

In summer, the children often play outside.

#### im Freien

Im Sommer spielen die Kinder öfter im Freien.

#### fuul (fuuler)

Hüt ischs so haiss, ich bi sogar z fuul zum Poschte.

#### lazy

t's so hot today, I'm even too lazy to go shopping.

#### faul

Heute ist es so heiss, ich bin sogar zu faul zum Einkaufen.

#### d Rutschi (d Rutschene)

Die Rutschi isch z äng für diich, da bliibsch schtecke!

#### slide

The slide is too narrow for you, you'll get stuck!

#### Rutsche

Die Rutsche ist zu eng für dich, da bleibst du stecken!

#### s Fudi (d Fudi)

Vom vile Sitze tuet mer scho s Fudi wee.

#### bottom, bum

My bottom already hurts from sitting so much.

#### Hintern

Vom vielen Sitzen tut mir schon der Hintern weh.

#### d Decki (d Deckene)

I oisere Woning isch d Decki rächt hööch, drum müemer vil haize.

#### ceiling

The ceiling in our flat is quite high, so we need to heat it a lot.

#### Decke

In unserer Wohnung ist die Decke recht hoch, darum müssen wir viel heizen.

#### s Aagebott (d Aagebott)

Dä Suppermärt isch günschtig, aber s Aagebott isch rächt chlii.

#### assortment, range (of goods)

This supermarket is inexpensive, but their assortment is fairly small.

#### Angebot

Dieser Supermarkt ist günstig, aber das Angebot ist recht klein.

#### uufgaa (isch uufggange)

Bi ois i de Nööchi isch es nois Kino uufggange.

#### to open

A new cinema has opened nearby.

#### aufmachen

Bei uns in der Nähe hat ein neues Kino aufgemacht.

#### entdecke (hät entdeckt)

Geschter hani bi ois im Quartier es urchigs Kafi entdeckt.

#### to discover, to find

Yesterday I discovered a quaint café in our neighbourhood.

#### entdecken

Gestern habe ich bei uns im Quartier ein uriges Café entdeckt.

**schlücke (hät gschlückt)**

Häsch scho mal amene lizapfe gschlückt?

**to lick**

Have you ever licked an icicle?

**schlecken**

Hast du schon mal an einem Eiszapfen geschleckt?

**fäge (hät gfägt)**

Daa sött emal wider gfägt wärde, s hät überall Bletter.

**to sweep**

This place should be swept again, there are leaves everywhere.

**fegen**

Hier sollte mal wieder gefegt werden, überall sind Blätter.

**s fägt (s hät gfägt)**

Mer händ scho wider es nois Mitgליid - s fägt!

**great, fantastic, to have a lot of fun**

We have another new member - it's going great!

**es fetzt**

Wir haben schon wieder ein neues Mitglied - es fetzt!

**bsunders**

Tee trinki bsunders im Winter gärn.

**especially, particularly**

I particularly like tea in winter.

**besonders**

Tee trinke ich besonders im Winter gern.

**gליichziitig**

Jetzt händ gליichziitig s Telifoon und d Tüürglogge glüütet.

**at the same time, at once**

Now the phone and the doorbell both rang at once.

**gleichzeitig**

Jetzt haben gleichzeitig das Telefon und die Türglocke geklingelt.

**vor Churzem**

Vor Churzem simmer emaal mit em Zuug i s Wallis ggange.

**a short time ago, recently**

Recently we travelled to Valais by train.

**vor Kurzem**

Vor Kurzem sind wir mal mit dem Zug ins Wallis gefahren.

**draa**

Gseesch die Wand? Deet chasch s Plakaat draa-chläbe.

**at, on, to, onto**

Do you see that wall there? That's where you can hang the poster.

**dran**

Siehst du die Wand da? Dort kannst du das Plakat drankleben.

**daa demit**

Daa demit faat oises noie Läbe-n aal!

**hereby, therefore, hence**

This is where our new life begins!

**hiermit, somit**

Hiermit beginnt unser neues Leben!

**jawol**

Jawol, esoo machemer s!

**yes, exactly, absolutely**

Yes, that's how we do it!

**jawohl**

Jawohl, so machen wir es!

K8 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 3



## C3.1

s Schläckmuul / d Schportler / di Fuule / de Schtamgascht



The reporter talks to different people. Fill in suitable terms from the box above. Also circle the reason why each person goes to the public swimming pool.

K8 -  
Audio C3.1

	term	reason	
1	<input type="text"/>	zum Fäge	zum Schpaass haa
2	<input type="text"/>	er wird vo dihai vertribe	er isch s sich esoo gwöönt
3	<input type="text"/>	zum Entschpane	zum Schpile
4	<input type="text"/>	wäg em Glacé	me weiss nöd, wisoo

## C3.2



Write down all the causatives that occur in the audio text and replace them with the basic form. Example: *si lönd ois (la) mache* → *mir mached*. To find the relevant passages more quickly, you can use the transcription in the solution section.

Example: *si lönd ois (la) mache* → **mir mached**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## C3.3



Can you guess from the context what these expressions mean?

1. s fägt
2. öpperem gheit d Decki uf de Chopf
3. sich s guet la gaa
4. abhange



Read through the dialogue.

## D Schweizer Wonkultur

*D Fatemeh und de Pablo träffed sich im Düütschkurs. Hüüt gaats um s Tee-  
ma Wonkultuur. Aber wie wontme aigentlich i de Schwiiz?*

- |    |    |  |
|----|----|--|
| 1  | P: | Also, mir söled daa über s Wone rede, Wone i de Schwiiz ...<br>Falt der öppis ii?  |
| 2  | F: | Tüür! Es isch uuhueretüür. Das chunt mer gad als erschts in<br>Sin.  |
| 3  | P: | Aber findsch, das isch typisch Schwiiz? Oder Schwiizer<br>Kultuur?   |
| 4  | F: | Klaar. So tüür wi daa isch es ja fascht nienets, also isch es<br>typisch! Und fascht ali mietet, das isch kulturell.   |
| 5  | P: | Wie mainsch daas?  |
| 6  | F: | S git wenig Lüüt, wo sälber es Huus oder e Wonig händ. Di<br>maischte mietet, und d Mietene sind ebe tüür.   |
| 7  | P: | Aa, jetzt verschtaa-n i. Aber ich finde, du bisch echli negativ.<br>lich wone-n aigentlich gärn i de Schwiiz.  |
| 8  | F: | Wisoo?   |
| 9  | P: | Mir gfalt zum Biischpil, das me fascht gar nöd im Gaggo cha<br>wone. S git fascht imer en Bus oder en S-Baan und zäck!<br>isch me i de Schtatt. Das isch ÖV-Kultuur! |
| 10 | F: | Jaa, das schtimt. Aber das isch für miich nöd Wone, das isch<br>Vercheer.  |
| 11 | P: | Aso guet, Wone, Wone... Mir gfalt am Wone i de Schwiiz, das<br>es daa so vil Gnesseshafte git.   |
| 12 | F: | Was isch daas?   |
| 13 | P: | Das isch, wän meereri Lüüt zäme es paar Hüüser bsitzed<br>und sich deet sälber verwaltet. Das gits i de Schwiiz no oft.<br>Deet sind au d Mietene günschtiger.       |
| 14 | F: | Ahaa, das töönt no guet. Aber isch sicher nöd aifach, deet<br>inezchoo!  |

Hüt la-n ich  
s mir richtig  
guet gaa.



**d Mieti (d Mietene)**

Alaige chani d Mieti da ine nöd zale, ich mues mer e noii Wonig sueche.

**rent**

On my own, I can't afford the rent in this place, I have to look for a new flat.

**Miete**

Allein kann ich die Miete hier drin nicht zahlen, ich muss mir eine neue Wohnung suchen.

**d Gnosseschaft (d Gnosseschaft)**

Inere Gnosseschaft ischme nöd nume Mieter\*in.

**cooperative**

In a cooperative, you are not just a tenant.

**Genossenschaft**

In einer Genossenschaft ist man nicht nur Mieter\*in.

**bsitze (hät bsässe)**

I de Schwiiz tüend mee Lüüt e Wonig miete als bsitze.

**to own**

In Switzerland, more people rent than own a flat.

**besitzen**

In der Schweiz mieten mehr Leute eine Wohnung, als eine besitzen.

**verwalte (hät verwaltet)**

Dää Fridhoof wird vo de Schtatt verwaltet.

**to manage, to administer**

This cemetery is managed by the city.

**verwalten**

Dieser Friedhof wird von der Stadt verwaltet.

**d Kultur (d Kultuure)**

Was mainsch, ghööred Chlaidler zur Kultur oder nöd?

**culture**

What do you think, is clothing part of the culture or not?

**Kultur**

Was denkst du, gehört Kleidung zur Kultur oder nicht?

**kulturell (-)**

S kulturelle Programm i däre Stadt isch mega divers.

**cultural**

The cultural programme in this city is really diverse.

**kulturell**

Das kulturelle Programm in dieser Stadt ist mega divers.

**d S-Baan (d S-Baane)**

Mit de S-Baan ischme mängisch schnäler als mit em Auto.

**suburban line**

Taking the suburban line is sometimes quicker than travelling by car.

**S-Bahn**

Mit der S-Bahn ist man manchmal schneller als mit dem Auto.

**iifale (isch iigfale)**

Gad wo-n i us em Huus use bi, isch mer no öppis iigfale.

**to remember, to think of sth, to come up with sth, to come to mind**

Just as I was leaving the house, I came up with something (else).

**einfallen**

Gerade als ich aus dem Haus raus war, ist mir noch etwas eingefallen.

**negativ (negativer)**

De Rupert gseet imer ales echli negativ.

**negative**

Rupert always has a somewhat negative view of everything.

**negativ**

Rupert sieht immer alles etwas negativ.

K8 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 4





**es paar**

Häts no es paar vo dene faine Guezli wod geschter pache häsch?

**a few, some**

Do you still have a few of the delicious biscuits you baked yesterday?

**ein paar**

Hat es noch ein paar von den leckeren Keksen, die du gestern gebacken hast?

**gaar**

Di noi Farb gfalt mer gaar nöd.

**at all**

I don't like the new colour at all.

**gar**

Die neue Farbe gefällt mir gar nicht.

**C4.1**



Who stands for which opinion?  
Tick the box (F = Fatemeh, P = Pablo)

1. En guete ÖV ghöört zur Schwiiz dezue.

F P

2. Bim Wone i de Schwiiz gits vili Probleem.

3. En Tail vo de Schwiizer Wonkultuur isch, das mee Lüüt iri Wonig mieted als si bsitzed.

4. D Wonkultuur vo de Schwiiz isch ales i alem aagnääm.

5. Hööchi Priise sind typisch schwiizerisch.

6. S isch e gueti Sach, wämmer sin Wonruum sälber cha verwalte.

**C4.2**



Which characteristics of Swiss living habits are mentioned in the text? Make a list of key points in Swiss German. Can you think of any other points that you think are typically Swiss?

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

## C4.3



In many passages of the dialogue between Fatemeh and Pablo, other answers could have been possible. To whom and where do the following sentences fit? Use the numbers of the text passages to indicate the position.

Aa, krass. Aber wie chömedsi a die Hүүser?

Das schtimt, aber für daas verdientme ja au guet.

Mir chunt überhaupt nüüt in Sin. Wone i de Schwiiz isch doch wi überal!

Das isch scho richtig, aber s isch ungrächt, das sich de ÖV nöd ali chönd laischte.

Mol, das isch Wone! Wil dank em ÖV chame wone, wo me wott. Oder fascht.

## C4.4

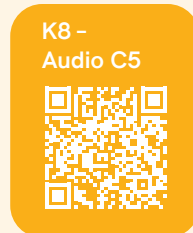


Do you like living in Switzerland? What's good, what's not so good? Discuss with a partner.

## C5



There is an audio text for this 'Deepen Your Knowledge' section in which the four people from the introduction are talking again. Do exercise 1 directly while listening, and the other exercises afterwards.



## Haimet isch es Gfüül

## CH

**d Haimet (-)**

Mini Haimet isch de Iraan.

**s Schtadion (d Schtadions)**

Fuesbal luegi lieber im Schtadion als im Färnsee.

**naadänke (hät naatänkt)**

Nöd aifech loosseckle, dänk zersch mal naal!

## EN

**homeland, home country**

My home country is Iran.

**stadium**

I prefer to watch football at the stadium rather than on television.

**to think about sth**

Don't just run off, first think about it!

## DE

**Heimat**

Meine Heimat ist der Iran.

**Stadion**

Fussbal schaue ich lieber im Stadion als im Fernsehen.

**nachdenken**

Nicht einfach loslaufen, denk erst mal nach!

**sich füüle (hät sich gfüült)**

Hüüt füüli mi nöd guet,  
viliich wäg em Wätter.

**to (not) feel well**

I'm not feeling well today,  
maybe because of the weat-  
her.

**sich fühlen**

Heute fühle ich mich nicht  
gut, vielleicht wegen dem  
Wetter.

**sich seene (hät sich gseent)**

Ich seen mich nach minere  
Familie.

**to long for sth/sb**

I am longing for my family.

**sich sehnen**

Ich sehne mich nach meiner  
Familie.

**ligge a (liit a, isch a ... gläge)**

Wän d Chopfwee häsch,  
chas au am Wätter ligge.

**to be due to**

If you have a headache, it  
may also be due to the we-  
ather.

**liegen an**

Wenn du Kopfweh hast, kann  
es auch am Wetter liegen.

**s Ding (d Dinger)**

Lueg emal, im Chäler hani  
das Ding da gfunde, was  
isch das äch?

**thing**

Look, I found this thing in the  
cellar. What is it?

**Ding**

Schau mal, im Keller habe  
ich dieses Ding gefunden,  
was ist das?

**de Witz (d Witz)**

Si macht imer Witz über ire  
Maa, aber äär hät schiints  
Froid draa.

**joke**

She is always making jokes  
about her husband, but he  
seems to like it.

**Witz**

Sie macht ständig Witze über  
ihren Mann, aber ihm scheint  
es zu gefallen.

**schpööter**

Jetz isch e Chundin ine-  
choo, lüüt mer schpööter  
namal aa, isch guet?

**later**

A customer entered. Call me  
again later, okay?

**später**

Jetzt ist eine Kundin rein-  
gekommen, ruf mich später  
noch mal an, okay?

**nur**

Min Brüetsch hät es  
Gschänk überchoo und  
iich nur e Chartel!

**only**

My brother got a present, but  
I only got a card!

**nur**

Mein Bruder hat ein Ge-  
schenk gekriegt und ich nur  
eine Karte!

**jedefals**

Jedefals isch daa en gue-  
te-n Ort zum Läbe.

**by all means, in any case, anyway, anyhow**

By all means, this is a good  
place to live.

**jedenfalls**

Jedenfalls ist das hier ein  
guter Ort zum Leben.

**uf jede Fal**

Gliich, wie s Wätter wird,  
mir gönd uf jede Fal a das  
Konzärt!

**in any case, regardless, whatever**

Whatever the weather, we're  
definitely going to this con-  
cert!

**auf jeden Fall**

Egal, wie das Wetter wird,  
wir gehen auf jeden Fall an  
dieses Konzert!

K8 -  
Zusatzwortschatz 5



## C5.1



Write down the first and last sentence of each person word by word. You can pause the recording after each person, but try to complete the exercise without rewinding! In the solution section you will find the transcription for the entire text.

K8 -  
Audio C5



Fatemeh: \_\_\_\_\_ !  
\_\_\_\_\_ !

Nadir: \_\_\_\_\_ .  
\_\_\_\_\_ .

Pablo: \_\_\_\_\_ !  
\_\_\_\_\_ .

Andrea: \_\_\_\_\_ .  
\_\_\_\_\_ .

## C5.2



Who has which feelings about home - and who is the least emotional? Write down the corresponding names behind the statements.

Wie füllt sich Haimet aa?

Name

Me hät si gärn.

Me macht sich Sorge drum.

Me troimt devoo.

S git käs bsunders Haimet-Gfüül.

## C5.3



Which of the four statements can you identify the most with? Is there one that you can't relate to at all? Exchange your thoughts with a partner.

Notes:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

# Multilingualism in Switzerland

Switzerland officially has four national languages: German, French, Italian and Rhaeto-Romanic. Some cantons have only one official language, others have two or even three. In addition to the official languages, many other languages are spoken, for example English, Portuguese, Albanian, Spanish, Serbo-Croatian, Kurdish, Arabic, Tamil and many more. There are also multilingual libraries and bookshops in many of the larger cities.

German is the most widely spoken language in Switzerland and the official language in the majority of cantons. Although the official "Swiss Standard

German" is somewhat different from the one spoken in Germany and Austria, the differences are not that big. In everyday life, however, dialects are usually spoken and sometimes written. These dialects are very different from Standard German and are hardly understandable at first for most people who only know Standard German. They are summarised under the name "Swiss German". According to the Federal Statistical Office, over 60% of people in Switzerland speak Swiss German at work. You can find out more about Swiss dialects here:

[idiotikon.ch/schweizerdeutsch](http://idiotikon.ch/schweizerdeutsch)



Du redisch au  
Rätoromansich.  
Hesch es in de  
Schuel glernet?



Näi, mine Papi  
chumt us Grau-  
bünde und red dihäi  
immer Rätoroman-  
sich mit üs Chinde.

# Last but Not Least

Now you can test your knowledge to see if you meet the learning goals of this unit. Solve the exercises below and then check in the solution section and discover how many points you have scored. Here is our advice:

## Points

0-50	Better check out the unit again.
51-80	That is sufficient! Maybe you want to check out particular sections once more.
81-100	Great - you're there!

## D1



Read through the dialogue.

## Gits aigentli kän Wöschplan?

D Apolline wohnt imene Huus, wo de Wöschchäler vo alne gmainsam prucht wird - das gits no oft i de Schwiiz. Im Momänt ischsi wäg de Situation im Wöschchäler hässig: Niemert haltet sich a iri Regle, obwohl si doch scho sit 15 Jaar i däm Huus wohnt! Im Huus-Chat wiistsi iri Naachber\*ine uf d Regle hii. Si chunt aber gaar nöd dezue, färtigzschriibe, wil ali andere au öppis z säge händ.

Please note that we don't use the voCHabular spelling here - everyone writes the way they like, just as in real life!

**Apolline:** Hoi zäme, ich han es paar Amerkige zur Nutzig vo eusere Wöschchuchi...  
Erstens wird de Tumblerfilter i de letschte Zit nume greinigt. Das isch mega mühsam!

**Dean:** D Wösch wird au vil z'lang hange gla. S hät eifach nie Platz für mich 😞 😞

**Apolline:** Zweitens: D Wöschmaschine wird tatsächlich män-gisch am Sunntig brucht. Das macht definitiv vil zvil Lärm.

**Fahri:** D Wösch chame nach zwei Täg guet abhänke, dän isch sie sicher troche 👍 Aber mini Wösch isch eifach wieder emal nass abghänkt worde! 😞

**Loris:** Anderi Frag, gits eigentlich kän Wöschplan?

**Antonina:** Jesses nai, ich han nume wele mini Chlaiderbügel wäsche und jetz isch gad di ganz Maschine usgstige 😞 😞 😞 Was söli mache? S isch alles volle Wasser da une ... 😞

**Apolline:** 😞 😞 😞

## D1.1

Example: Im Chat wird viel geschrieben. → **Irgendjemand schreibt viel im Chat.**



Read this chat and mark the sentences written in the passive voice (2 points per correct mark). Then rephrase the statements using *irgendjemand* or *jemand* (5 points per sentence).

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## D1.2



What are the laundry rules in this house? What other rules do you know? Write down at least five rules and express them in the passive voice with *müssen* or *dürfen* (5 points per rule, max. 20).

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## D1.3



How do laundry facilities relate to Swiss culture? How typical and important are they, and are they a good thing? Write down just a few thoughts on this (4-5 sentences). Have someone rate your text in terms of vocabulary and grammar. You can show this person the model solution for comparison. (max. 15 points)

---

---

---

---

---

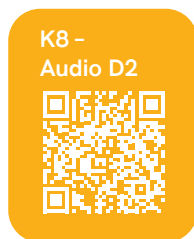
---

---

---



Listen to the piece on homesickness and then answer the questions.



## D2.1



To which question does the person speaking answer? (5 points)

---

## D2.2



What does this person long for? Write down the answers. You can also listen to the text again. (1 point per answer)

---



---



---



---



---



---

## D2.3



What would you miss? Name six things that have not yet been mentioned. (1 point per thing)







# Solution Section

In the following Solution Section you will find translations for all longer Swiss German texts, transcripts for the audio texts and the solutions to all exercises. Please note that different solutions may be possible depending on the exercise. Especially for the solutions at the end of the unit, you should assess for yourself how well your solution fits and give yourself points accordingly.

# Unit 0

## A1

Translation of the texts:

### Martha:

Three people have been injured in a collision at Limmatplatz in Zurich. A tram crashed into a car after the car had to brake sharply. The driver of the car and the two female passengers were taken to hospital immediately. The police are now looking for the people who crossed the road away from the zebra crossing and therefore caused the emergency braking.

### Zoe:

Let's now talk about sports. Yesterday FC Zurich narrowly missed out on winning the Swiss Cup. They lost the final against Young Boys 1:2. At the beginning, the Zurich team was leading, but the Bernese were then able to counterbalance fairly quickly and Cédric Zesiger scored the winning goal in the last ten minutes. So it really was a bitter night for Zurich.

### Charitini:

That's right, Zoe, but at least the weather is looking a bit better. It's still a bit cloudy during the day today, but there's zero chance of rain and the temperature in Zurich is a pleasant 25 degrees. It will clear up in the evening and tomorrow will be fine and about the same temperature all day.

## A2

One speaker (Martha) speaks Standard German (or Standard German) - in everyday life, people usually say **Hochdeutsch**. Zoe and Charitini, on the other hand, speak dialect. All Swiss dialects together are also called Swiss German (in dialect: **Schwiizertüütsch**).

## A3

Zoe and Charitini both speak Swiss German, but not the same dialect: Zoe probably comes from Zurich, Charitini more from the St. Gallen area. That's why they pronounce the A and the R quite differently, for example. Perhaps you can find other differences?

There are many different dialects in Switzerland. None of them is better or more correct than others. Nor are any of them taught in school. In this book, we use the dialect of Zurich - also known as **Zürütüütsch**. The way Zoe talks is the dialect of most people in this book!

## A4

Martha speaks Standard German, but there are different variants of this in Switzerland, Germany and Austria. The introductory text contains many Swiss peculiarities, e.g. the word **Spital** for 'hospital' or the spelling **Strasse** (instead of **Straße**). However, these differences are much smaller than those between Standard German and Swiss German!

## B1.1

**Anfang** / **Aafang** 'beginning', **Finale** / **Finaal** 'final', **eins** / **ais** 'one', **zehn** / **zää** 'ten', **gestern** / **geschter** 'yesterday', **wirklich** / **wükli** 'really', **noch** / **no** 'still', **geführt** / **gfüert** 'led', **geschossen** / **gschosse** 'scored', **gegen** / **gäg** 'against'

## B1.2

**Aug** / **Auge** 'eye', **Blueme** / **Blume** 'flower', **Sune** / **Sonne** 'sun', **chalt** / **kalt** 'cold', **gschribe** / **geschrieben** 'written', **tüür** / **teuer** 'expensive', **Wonig** / **Wohnung** 'flat', **Faischter** / **Fenster** 'window', **abnää** / **abnehmen** 'to answer (phone), to take off sth, decrease, remove', **Chile** / **Kirche** 'church'

## B2.2

Here is a rough transcription of the recordings. The pronunciation variant, which is Zurich German, is highlighted in grey.

	Bedeutung	A	B
1.	we are coming	chömemer	chöimer
2.	have	het	hät
3.	victory	Siig	Seeg
4.	missed	verpassed	vorpassed
5.	one	eis	ais
6.	led	gfiert	gfüert
7.	quick	schnäl	schnäu
8.	can	chene	chöne
9.	last	letschte	letschta
10.	minutes	Minuute	Minüüte

## B3

A few examples that can be seen in the text are:

- In Swiss German, many pronouns combine closely with a verb, e.g. **chömemer** vs. **kommen wir**.
- In Swiss German, there is no simple past (preterite), only the past with auxiliary verbs (perfect), e.g. **hät gfüert** vs. **führte**.
- The word order in Swiss German is sometimes different, e.g. **d Bärner händ chöne-n usgliche** vs. **Die Berner haben ausgleichen können**.

## C1.1

Variant of the dialogue in voCHabular spelling, plus a translation:

<b>Ueli</b>	Hei duu, häsch de noi Spielberg scho gsee?	Hey there, have you already seen the new Spielberg?
<b>Ahmed</b>	Wele mainsch?	Which one do you mean?
<b>Ueli</b>	De mit de Dinos.	The one with dinosaurs.
<b>Ahmed</b>	Bisch sicher, das däa noi isch?	Are you sure it's new?
<b>Ueli</b>	Ja egaal, chunsch mit cho luege?	Never mind, will you join watching it?
<b>Ahmed</b>	Wän gönder?	When are you going?
<b>Ueli</b>	Hüt zaabig am achti im Abaton. D Sarah chunt au.	This evening at eight in Abaton. Sarah is coming, too.
<b>Ahmed</b>	Okay, cool. Tickets händer?	Okey, cool. Do you have tickets?
<b>Ueli</b>	Easy, ich bschtel. Halbi achti bi ois dihai, isch guet?	Sure, I'll order them. At half past seven at our home, okay?
<b>Ahmed</b>	Mues luege, öb i s schaffe. Ich schriib der e Schtund voorher.	Let me see if I can make it. I'll let you know one hour before.

## C1.2

Here are some differences between Ueli's and Ahmed's pronunciation?. The opposite words are pronounced exactly the same in the underlined position, but are spelt differently by the two:

<b>Ueli</b>	<b>Ahmed</b>
<u>neu</u> , bi <u>eus</u>	<u>noi</u>
<u>dihei</u>	<u>mainsch</u>
<u>de</u>	<u>dä</u>
<u>luege</u>	<u>luegä</u> , <u>schaffä</u>
<u>bstell</u>	<u>Schtund</u>

## C2.1

The text reproduces the beginning of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. Here is the version in your language:

All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. They are endowed with reason and conscience and should treat one another in a spirit of brotherhood. Everyone is entitled to all the rights and freedoms set forth in this Declaration, without distinction of any kind, such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status.

## D1.1

c and d

## D1.2

b

## D1.3

c

## D2

All pronunciation variants are transcribed below. The pronunciation variant that is correct in Zurich German is highlighted in grey.

	a	b	c
1.	brate	braate	bräate
2.	Schocki	Schoggi	Schogi
3.	ois	öis	üüs
4.	kurz	hurz	churz
5.	müese	miese	müsse
6.	de Ggarte	de Garte	de Harte
7.	günne	göne	güne
8.	frii	frei	frai

# Unit 1

## A1

Translation of the texts:

### **Fatemeh**

Hello, my name is Fatemeh and I have been living in Switzerland for five years. I do sports almost always when I have time. Sport is my life! I always play football on Wednesdays and Saturdays. Tomorrow, we have our first match of the year. I hope we win! In the evening, I like to play ping-pong with my mates. It's great fun and helps me to relax.

What else? I also like to go to the lake for a swim or just to chill out. My favourite time is always in the evening when it's about to get dark.

### **Nadir**

Hello, my name is Nadir. I recently started working as a fitness trainer at the gym and have turned my hobby into a career. At the moment I give classes four times a week and also look after customers individually. The best thing is seeing people get fitter. But the gym isn't just my place of work - I also meet my friends there.

But sometimes I also need some peace and quiet and go to the lake with my sketchbook. I love drawing nature, but sometimes I just sit on the shore and daydream. Will I turn my second hobby into a career one day?

### **Pablo**

My name is Pablo and I'm really into music. I have my headphones with me everywhere and I'm always listening to something: on the tram, on the street, in the park... and at home anyway. I even have a radio in the shower. Sometimes I also listen to something more quiet when I'm working, but only when I don't need to concentrate. I've also been singing in a choir myself for several years. For me, music is mainly important for relaxing and dreaming. The choir can also be exhausting, but when we've finished rehearsing and are singing, I still forget everything around me. We're performing again next weekend - will you be there?

### **Andrea**

Hello, my name is Andrea. I love being outdoors and I like to go hiking. Sometimes I take the train to the mountains, but I also enjoy walking in my neighbourhood. It's so great when you can just walk out the door and out of the city, past rivers and meadows... There I can forget all my stress.

Once a week I go to the sewing café. There you can hire sewing machines and sew things yourself. I would like to have my own sewing machine, but the cool thing about the sewing café is that the same people are usually there. We help each other and chat. I've already made new friends like this.

## A2

The pictures show from left to right: Andrea, Nadir, Fatemeh, Pablo.

## A3

Fatemeh enjoys playing table tennis and sitting by the lake.

Nadir is often at the gym and also likes to sit by the lake.

Pablo sings in his free time.

Andrea sews her own clothes.

## B1

Fuesbal schpile, e Duschi nää, Schpaass haa, Musig lose, Schii faare, Ziiit verbringe, es Buech läse, Schport mache, i d Bärge gaa, de Matsch güne

## B2.1

Individual solutions. For example:

Im Restaurant: Znacht ässe, schwätze, fiire

Am See: zaichne, troime, es Picknick mache

Im Gym: Fitness mache, Musig lose, Lüüt traffe

I de Bärge: wandere, Schii faare, snööbe

Dihai: Musig lose, läse, baschtle

Uf em Schportplatz: tschutte, Tennis schpile, lauffe

## B2.2

Individual solutions. For example:

Zum Fiire gani imer in es Restaurant.

Bisch au mängisch am See am Troime?

Musig lose tuetsi im Gym nie.

Am Wuchenänd gömmer i d Bärge go wandere.

Loseder au dihai Musig i de Freiziit?

Am Fiiraabig sindsi maischtens uf em Schportplatz am Tschutte.

## B3

I minere Freiziit trifft Fründ\*ine.

Mir gönd jetzt dän im See go schwüme.

Wän si frei hät, ischsi oft am Krimis Läse. /...listsi oft Krimis.

Sitere Schtund bini en Chueche-n am Bache.

Am Wuchenänd trainieri echli.

Si isch im Momänt vil Düütsch am Lärne.

## B4.1

a) Konzerte, Discos

b) basteln

c) Sport, Fitness

d) Wandern, picknicken

e) kochen

f) Freund\*innen treffen

## B4.2

Individual solutions.

## B5.1

am Mache, am Tschile, am Choche, am Mache

## B5.2

Was bisch am Mache?  
Bi grad am Choche  
Das längt mer hüt nööd.  
Okay.  
Mersi.

A was bisch draa?  
Bi am Znacht Mache.  
Hüt hani kä Ziiit.  
Isch guet.  
Danke.

## C1

Translation of the text:

*Andrea's phone is ringing.*

**A:** Hello, here is Andrea.

**F:** Hello Andrea, it's me, Fatemeh.

**A:** Ah, Fatemeh! I wanted to call you too, but it was busy. How are you?

**F:** I'm fine, I went for a walk and have just gotten back. And you, what are you doing right now?

**A:** I'm still working, I have a lot to do!

**F:** Oh, do you want to call me back later or do you have a minute?

**A:** No, no problem, I'm just taking a break.

**F:** Do you have any plans for tonight? I'm going to Pablo's concert. Would you like to come along?

**A:** Unfortunately, I'm off to the mountains tonight. But hey, there's a cool festival in Zurich next weekend. Shall we go together?

**F:** Good idea, I'm in. Shall we get back to each other next week?

**A:** Yes, let's see then.

**F:** So, I'll let you get back to work. See you soon.

**A:** Bye, see you next week.

## C1.1

Ha der au scho wele-n aalüüte, Ich bi go schpaziere, was bisch am Mache, lich bi am Schaffe, Ich bi grad am Pause Mache, Ich gaa-n a s Konzärt, nööschchts Wuchenänd ischs cools Festival, schriibe

## C1.3

For example:

hoi 'Hello', da isch d(e) [Name] 'This...', iich bi s 'It's me', Wie gaats der? 'How are you?', Wottsch schpööter zrugglüüte? 'Do you want to call back later?', Häsch schnäl Ziiit? 'Do you have a moment?', Bis glii 'See you soon', tschüss 'bye'

## C2.1

Translation of the text:

*Fatemeh and Pablo are talking in the corridor.*

**F:** Hey Pablo, I was at your concert. You sing really well!

**P:** Thank you, but that only works in a choir. I sing pretty badly on my own.

**F:** That's funny. Do you also like going to festivals?

**P:** Not really, why?

**F:** There would be one next weekend. Do you prefer things quiet?

**P:** No, it can be loud too. But always travelling so far... I just prefer to be at home!

Solution exercises: 1. koomisch, 2. lieber, 3. schnäl, 4. schön, 5. megaguet, 6. gärn, 7. gärn, 8. lieber, 9. gruusig, 10. am liebschte, 11. gärn

## C3

Translation of the text:

*Andrea and Nadir meet in a tram by chance.*

**A:** Hello Nadir, how are you?

**N:** Hello Andrea, good and you?

**A:** Me too, thank you. What are your plans for the weekend?

**N:** I'm going to my parents' house for dinner on Sunday evening, but I don't have any other plans yet. What about you?

**A:** I will go for a hike on Saturday. Would you like to come along?

**N:** Yes, of course, I'd love to. Have you already thought about where you're going?

**A:** I have several ideas. I'll send them to you via WhatsApp and you can tell me what you fancy the most, okay?

**N:** Yes, that's great. Nice, I'm really looking forward to Saturday!

## C3.1

Was häsch am Wuchenänd voor?, Ich gaa-n am Suntigaabig zu mine Eltere go ässe, Ich gaa-n am Samschtig go wandere, Ich schick si der per Chat

## C3.2

Example 1: Am nööschchte Wuchenänd machi e Velotuur. Go bade würi au gärn. Vilich findi e schööni Schtrecki, wo amene See verbiigaat.

Example 2: Daas Wuchenänd mueni dringend tschile. Ich wott nur uf em Sofa ligge, Musig lose und troime. Wän i Luscht haa, lüüti emene Koleeg aa.

## C4.1

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

<i>De Nadir und de Pablo trüffed sich am See.</i>	<i>Nadir and Pablo meet at the lake.</i>
<b>N:</b> <i>Hoi! Und, wie gaats der?</i>	Hello! So, how are you?
<b>P:</b> <i>Halo Nadir, schön dich z gsee! Miir gaats guet und diir?</i>	Hello Nadir, good to see you. I'm fine and you?
<b>N:</b> <i>Mir au. Häsch gsee? Im Odeon lauft nööchscht Wuche s Schpiil Schwiiz gäg Costa Rica! Gömmer s zäme go luege?</i>	Me too. Have you seen it? The Switzerland v Costa Rica game is on at the Odeon next week! Shall we watch it together?
<b>P:</b> <i>Uu Nadir, du waisch doch, das ich kän Fuessbalfan bin. Ich wür lieber das Konzärt am Samschtig go luege. Sheep on the Moon sind aifach e toli Band!</i>	Nadir, you know I'm not a football fan. I'd rather go to the concert on Saturday. Sheep on the Moon are such a great band!
<b>N:</b> <i>Hm, am Samschtig hani äbe scho mit minere Cousine abgmacht. Ich lueg mit de Fatemeh de Fuessbalmatsch vo de iraanische Fraue-Natsi. Sorry!</i>	I already have a date with my cousin on Saturday. I'm going to watch the Iranian women's national team football match with Fatemeh. Sorry!

### Solution exercise:

- Nadir wants to watch a football match at the Odeon (and has made firm plans to watch another match with his cousin).
- Pablo, on the other hand, wants to go to the Sheep on the Moon concert.
- Nadir's cousin is Fatemeh.

## C5

It's Die Hinterwäldler, who will be singing in Swiss German on 10 June. You can recognise it by some Swiss German words (*drüstimmig, uf*) and by the word **Mundart**, which means 'dialect'.

## D1.1

Laa dini Schwöschter in Rue, si isch am Üebel!  
 Im Winter gömmer amigs am Üetlibärg go schlittle.  
 Metal hani nöd gern, die singed mer aifach z luut.  
 Ich glaub, de Oskar hät schlächti Luune, er isch i siim Zimer am Uusrüeffe.  
 De Roger schpilt doch scho lang nüm Tennis.  
 D Josie isch sitem achti das noie-n Album am Lose.  
 Inere Band schpilt si Gitarre.

## D1.3

Translation of the text:

Lea is currently trying out boxing. I told her that it's a predominantly male sport, but she thought that was a prejudiced thought. Now she trains twice a week and tells funny stories all the time. I'm almost a little envious, but it still wouldn't be anything for me. She really wants to do it and she seems to do well! Her first tournament is in a month's time, so I really have to go and cheer her on. I'm already really excited!

Answers to questions: 1. False, 2. False, 3. True, 4. False, 5. True

## D2.1

1. luegerner, 2. kaufft, 3. schliiffschüendle, 4. laufferner, 5. gseerner, 6. gaa, 7. lose, 8. schwümed, 9. schpilter

## D2.2

Transcription and translation of the text:

Moorn Aabig gani mit mim Koleeg is Open-Air-Kino. S Wätter söl megaschöön wärde, aber das haisst au megahaiss. Aigetlich wärs am beschte, erscht am achti oder so z gaa, wän s scho echli chüeler isch, aber dän sind di guete Plätz scho wäg und mir gsend wider nüüt - letschts Mal ischs e Kataschtroofe gsi! Oise Plaan isch jetzt, das mer ois am sibni trüffed, Plätz reserviered und nacher no es Glace go ässe gönd, bevor de Film loosgaat. Ich weiss eerlich gsait nöd emal, was s Program isch - hoffetlich zaiged s öppis Gschiits! Wän nööd, gömmer aifach echli früener hai.

Tomorrow evening I'm going to the open-air cinema with my friend. The weather is supposed to be really nice, but that also means it's going to be very hot. It would actually be best not to go until eight or so, when it's a bit cooler, but then the good seats are already taken and we can't see anything again - last time it was a disaster! Our plan now is to meet at seven, reserve seats and then go for an ice cream before the film starts. I honestly don't even know what the programme is - hopefully they'll show something good! If not, we simply go home a bit earlier.

Answers to questions: warm, sibni, vor em Film, Si wüssed s nöd, gönd si früener hai.

## D3.1

From top left to bottom right: öppis go aa luege, öppis go trinke, öppis poschte, sich entschpane

## D3.2

1c, 2e, 3a, 4b, 5g, 6d, 7h, 8f



# Unit 2

## A1

Translation of the text:

- R:** It's exciting to hear again about all the options our children have after sixth grade. I think the exam for grammar school will be quite difficult.
- H:** Yes, Fabio would rather go to secondary school. He already knows that he wants to be a chef, so he can start his apprenticeship straight after secondary school. But I don't think secondary school will be that difficult for Selin. Fabio said that she always gets very good grades.
- R:** Yes, that's true. We are very proud that she is doing so well at school and we would be delighted if she passed the entrance exam for grammar school. Of course it would be fine for me and my husband if she went to secondary school, but she really wants to become a doctor, so she needs high school for that.
- H:** Wow, she's got a big goal in mind. Then I hope she passes the entrance exam. I wish her much success!
- R:** Thank you, Helger, I'll tell her. See you soon!
- H:** See you, bye Rasmiral!

## A2

I d Sek gaa, Ärztin

## A3

**Selin:** Ärztin, Gimi, Rasmira, seer gueti Noote  
**Fabio:** Helger, Sek, Choch, müest vil lärne

## B1

**Haa:** gmaalet, grächnet, gschpilt, wele, ghulfe, sich entschpant, tänkt, troimt, müese  
**Sii:** choo, gsii, ghockt, gfaare

## B2

Oisi Chind sind scho i de sächste Klass gsii.	Our children were already in sixth grade.
De Fabio hät nöd i s Gimi wele.	Fabio didn't want to go to grammar school.
Mir sind seer schtolz uf iri Laischtig gsii.	We were very proud of her performance.
Ich ha megavil für Düütsch müese lärne.	I had to study a lot for German classes.
Ir sind i de Schuel imer echli am Troime gsii.	You were always dreaming a bit at school.

## B3

For example:

Mir händ geschter d Uufnameprüeffig gschafft.  
D Selin hät imer di bescht Noote wele.  
D Lektion hät normaalerwiis am halbi achi aagfange.  
De Fabio isch nöd gern i s Gimi ggange.  
D Mattiprüeffig isch megaschwirig gsii.

## B4.1

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

<b>S:</b> Lueg Mami, das isch min noie Schtundeplaan. Am beschte gfalt mer de Friitig, wil dän hämmer Schport, das hani halt am liebschte. Matti hani au megagärn, vil lieber als BG. Im BG tüemer imer zaichne, aber das machi lieber für mich alaige dihai. TTG findi eender no cool, deet chömmer zum Biischpil mit Holz öppis boue.	Look, mum, this is my new timetable. I like Fridays best because that's when we have PE, which is my favourite. I like maths too, much more than BG. We always draw in BG, but I prefer to do that on my own at home. I think TTG is even cooler because we can build something with wood, for example.
<b>R:</b> Und häsch imer na am Mittwochnami frei?	And are you still free on Wednesday afternoons?
<b>S:</b> Ja klaar, suscht chönti ja dän nöd i s Fuessbaltraining gaa.	Of course, otherwise I wouldn't be able to go to football training.
<b>R:</b> Und was isch das NMG am Määntig und Mittwoch? Das Fach käni gar nöd.	And what is the NMG on Monday and Wednesday? I don't know that subject at all.
<b>S:</b> NMG isch «Natur, Mensch, Gesellschaft». Da gaats irgendwie um ales, zum Biischpil Tier, Brüeff oder wi-n en Magnet funktioniert. Im Momänt mache mer verschidnigi Religioone, die müemer ois gägesiitig voorschele.	NMG is "Nature, Man, Society". It's somehow about everything, for example animals, professions or how a magnet works. At the moment we're doing different religions, which we have to introduce to each other.

## B4.2

Schport, Si gaat i s Fuessbaltraining, Religioone

For example:

I de Schuel hani am liebschte Basketbal gschpilt.  
 Mis Lieblingsfach isch Matti gsii.  
 Prüeffige hani nie gärn gschribe.  
 Mit sächs Jaar bini i d Schuel choo.  
 I minere Freiziit hani megagärn gmaalet.  
 I mim erschte Schueljaar bini i de erschte Rei ghockt.  
 Min Naachber hät mer oft gulfe.  
 Ich bi oft mit em Velo i d Schuel gfaare.

## C1.1

Verb forms that are neither present nor past are placed in brackets.

underhaltet sich : händ sich underhalte, (los), ha wele rede : wott rede, machsch : häsch gmacht, hani überlait : überleggi, (wür naahole), wotsch : häsch wele, schiisst aa : hät aagschisse, (wür lärne), wott : ha wele, bruuchi : hani pruucht, isch : isch gsii, gaat : isch ggange, duuret : hät tuuret, chömmer : hämmer chöne, waiss : ha gwusst, hani wele : wotti, cha(-n) : hät chöne, gaat : isch ggange, (chönti), (chönt), mues : ha müese, gfalt : hät gfale, wotsch : häsch wele, gseesch : häsch gsee, isch : isch gsii, entschaidemer : hämmer entschide, isch : isch gsii

## C1.2

For example:

<b>V:</b> Also los, ich ha namal überlait wäg dinere Idee.	So, listen, I've thought about your idea again.
<b>B:</b> Und, was mainsch?	And what do you think?
<b>V:</b> Ich glaub, du söttst es mache. S isch e supper Chance für diich und das mit em Gäld, das bringemer scho irgendwie ane.	I think you should go for it. It's a great opportunity for you and we'll manage somehow with the money.
<b>B:</b> Hei, supper! Also dän wirdi mal luege, wän das me sich cha iischriibe. Und ich wür luege, das i öppis finde, wo me cha füzg Prozänt wiiterschaffe, isch guet?	Hey, great! Well, I'll see when you can enrol. And I'll see if I can find something where I can continue working at 50%, okay?
<b>V:</b> Ja, ich dänk das macht Sinn.	Yes, I think that makes sense.
<b>B:</b> Hei, merci vilmaal für dini Underschtützig!	Hey, thanks a lot for your support!

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

<i>D Meryem und d Lisa händ sich sit irere Ziit i de Primaarschuel nüm gsee. Hüt händsi sich amene Klassesträffe wider troffe - isch ales wider wi früener?</i>	<i>Meryem and Lisa haven't seen each other since their primary school days. Today they meet again at a class reunion - is everything the same again?</i>
---	--

<b>M:</b> Also verzel, was machsch?	So, tell me, what are you doing?
<b>L:</b> Mainsch bruefflich? Ich schaff bi de SBB.	Do you mean professionally? I work for SBB.
<b>M:</b> Konduktöörin oder wie?	Conductor, or what?
<b>L:</b> Nai, sicher nööd! Eender so-n en Bürojob. Waisch, ich bi i d Sek und ha dän gad s KV gmacht.	More like an office job. You know, I went to secondary school and then did the KV straight away.
<b>M:</b> Und, gfalts der?	And, do you like it?
<b>L:</b> Ja, aigetlich schoo. Ich bi zwar de ganz Tag am Kompi, aber s git immer echli Abwächslig und mini Koleegine sind al meganett. Das isch mer ee fascht am wichtigschte.	Yes, actually I do. I'm at the computer all day, but there's always a bit of variety and my colleagues are all really nice. That's almost the most important thing for me anyway.
<b>M:</b> Das töönt aber guet! Miini Koleege sind au nett, aber miin Scheff isch en Schaafseckel.	That sounds good! My colleagues are nice too, but my boss is an asshole.
<b>L:</b> Ui. Was machsch dän duu?	Oh. What are you doing?
<b>M:</b> Ich bi bi sonere Marketing-Firma. Ha zerscht s Gimi gmacht und dän no en Bachelor in Schurnalismus.	I work for a marketing company. I first finished college and then a bachelor's degree in journalism.
<b>L:</b> Töönt au nach Kompi-Job.	Also sounds like a computer job.
<b>M:</b> Ja vol, git halt imer mee vo däne. Aber häsch das ghöört, was de Thien macht?	Yes, totally, there are more and more of them. But have you heard what Thien is doing?
<b>L:</b> Nai, wiso? Isch er au ume?	No, why? Is he there too?
<b>M:</b> Ja ee, lueg de Härzigi det im Egge. Imer no di ganz Ziit am grinse, wie früener scho.	Yeah, sure, look, the handsome one in the corner. Still grinning all the time, just like before.
<b>L:</b> Und was machter?	And what about him?
<b>M:</b> Är hät nach de Schuel e Leer gmacht und schafft jetzt scho siit es paar Jaar i de Schtattgärtnerei. Imer verusse im Grüene.	He completed an apprenticeship after school and has now been working at the city garden centre for a few years. Always out in the countryside.
<b>L:</b> Megaguet! Mit däm muesi au no rede.	Cool! I'll have to talk to him too.

## C2.1

True, True, True, False, True

## C2.2

Answers (deviating formulations possible):

1. D Lisa häts KV gmacht.
2. D Lisa hät gärn Abwächslig und netti Koleegine.
3. D Meryem hät Schurnalismus schtudiert.
4. De Thien schafft bi de Schtattgärtnerei.

## C3.1

1. Am halbi sibni bini uufgschtande und han mich paraat gmacht.
2. Churz nach em sibni bini mit em Bus i d Schuel gfaare.
3. Am Morge vo acht bis zää simmer zwai Schtund i s Brueffsinformationszäntrum ggange.
4. Vor em Mittag hämmer e Mattprüeffig ghaa.
5. Am Mittag hani mit Koleege i de Mensa ggässe.
6. Im Schport am Namittaag simmer e halb Schtund i de prale Sune umegränt.
7. I de letschte Lektion im Düütsch händ zwai us de Klass no en Voortraag über es Buech ghalte.
8. Nach de Schuel hät mer e Koleegin no bi de Ufzgi ghulfe.
9. Am früene Aabig dihai hani en Snack ggässe und tuschet.

## C3.2

**Sii:** uufschtaa (uufgschtande), faare (gfaare), gaa (ggange), umeräne (umegränt),

**Haa:** mache (gmacht), haa (ghaa), ässe (ggässe), halte (ghalte), hälfe (ghulfe), dusche (tuschet)

## C4

- *Alli mini Ufzgi*: 'all my homework'. The sentence seems to be part of a city tour and is probably aimed at students.
- *suechsch Arbeit*: 'are you looking for work', *bruchsch e Lehrstell*: 'do you need an apprenticeship': These sentences are probably found at an employment centre. They are aimed at young people (*du*) who are looking for an apprenticeship or a job.
- *nach IMMER was d'wotsch*: 'always do what you want'. This graffiti is aimed at anyone dreaming of an apprenticeship or a new job.

## D1.1

1. Am Morge ischs mit Musig loos ggange.
2. Dän isch Znüüni gsii.
3. Nacher händsi e Düütsch-Prüeffig gschribe.
4. Für die hätsi no müese lärne.
5. Hoffetlich ischsi nöd so schwirig worde wi letschts Maal.
6. I de Mittagspause hätsi öppis ggässe.
7. Ich glaub, hüt häts Spaghetti Bolognese zum Zmittag ggää.
8. Am Nami händsi Schport ghaa.
9. Da hätsi sich scho druuf gfroit!
10. Si händ sicher wider Volleyball gschpilt.

## D1.2

Answers to questions: True, True, False, True, False

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

Franz isch hüt wider me-gadoof gsii. Zerscht hät d Leererin en Text us em Buech voorgläse. Ich find, das isch langwilig. Wämme das Züügs sälber chönti läse, okay, aber dän mues me lose, bis si färtig isch. Ich ha drum müese gaine. Das hät si gad gsee und ich glaub, si isch hässig uf mich worde. Jedefals hätsi mich dän usgfröoget und luuter so schwirigi Wörter pruucht, wo im Text gar nöd voor choo sind. I de zwaite Helfti hämmer dän mitenand dörfe rede, das gfalt mer amigs vil besser. Aber dän isch i mim Grüppli de Jérôme gsii. Är redt megaguet wäg sine Eltere, aber er isch aifach so-n en Poser!

French was very dumb again today. First, the teacher read a text from the book. I think that's boring. If you could read the stuff yourself, that's okay, but then you have to listen until she's finished. That made me yawn. She saw that straight away and I think she got angry with me. Anyway, she then quizzed me and used lots of difficult words that didn't even appear in the text. In the second half, we were allowed to talk to each other, which I always like much better. But then Jérôme was in my group. He speaks really well because of his parents, but he's just such a poser!

## D2.2

For example:

1. Nach de Schuel hani grad e Leer aagfange.
2. Ich bi mit de Schuel scho fascht färtig gsii, aber dän hani müese di letscht Klass widerhole.
3. Nach de Schuel hani wele alai wone und bi vo dihai uuszoge.
4. Ich ha no mee wele lärne und bi drum uf e Fachhochschul ggange.
5. Nach de Schuel hani zerscht emal de Chopf wele frei mache und bi ais Jaar lang um d Wält graist.

## D3.1

1b, 2d, 3e, 4a, 5c

## D3.2

1c, 2a, 3j, 4f, 5b, 6d, 7h, 8e, 9g, 10i

## D3.3

Translation of the text:

Last week I looked at my CV and thought about what I could do to get a bit further. Some kind of further training wouldn't be a bad idea, but what? There are so many opportunities in Switzerland! My German is okay, but maybe I should take another test so that it can prove it when I apply. But what I really miss is this computer stuff. I'm glad I can switch my computer on and off. But in every advert I read "you have a flair for IT". I think I should do something for office software, I don't know anything about that. OK then, I just need to find out where there are courses!

Answers to questions: noii Möglichkaite entdecke, Ich wett mis Niveau gärn zaige, IT-Käntnis, z wenig Wüsse, imene Kurs

# Unit 3

## A1

Translation of the text:

<b>A:</b>	Aaron Scholz?
<b>D:</b>	Good afternoon, here is Diaga.
<b>A:</b>	Hello, Mrs. Diaga.
<b>D:</b>	You have applied for the position of care specialist with us. Firstly, perhaps I should ask if you are still interested?
<b>A:</b>	Yes, certainly.
<b>D:</b>	We found your application documents very interesting and would therefore like to invite you to an interview.
<b>A:</b>	Oh, that makes me very happy of course!
<b>D:</b>	When is the best time for you? Would Tuesday or Wednesday morning work for you?
<b>A:</b>	Wednesday would be good for me.
<b>D:</b>	Then let's say on Wednesday at a quarter to 9, if that's OK with you?
<b>A:</b>	Yes, that suits me well, thank you very much.
<b>D:</b>	We would then conduct the interview together. Apart from me, my colleague who is responsible for HR will also be there.
<b>A:</b>	Good, that's great, I'm delighted!
<b>D:</b>	Well, we look forward to getting to know you. Have a nice evening, Mr. Scholz.
<b>A:</b>	Thank you, likewise. Goodbye Mrs. Diaga.

## A2

These are correct: 1b, 2a, 3b

## A3

Bewärbigschprööch, intressant, Fachmaa Betroiig, Mittwoch, Viertel vor 9i

## B1

Mrs. Hussein: *Hoi Donard!* Donard: *Grüezi Frau Hussein!* (alternative: *guete Morge*)  
 Seller: *Ade mitenand!* Tanja and Sia: *Ade!* (alternative: *wider-luege*)  
 Fabio: *Hoi zäme!* Friends: *Hoi Fabio!*  
 Mrs. Hassan: *Guete Morge mitenand!* Team: *Guete Morge Frau Hassan!* (alternative: *Grüezi*)  
 Mr. Faizi: *Grüezi Här, Marques!* Mr. Marques: *Grüezi wool!*  
 Tina and Dani: *Grüezi mitenand!* or as well *Hoi zäme!* (e.g. when all participants are relatively young). couple: *Grüezi mitenand!* / *Hoi zäme!*  
 Laila: *Tschau zäme!* Parents: *Tschau Laila!* (alternative: *tschüss*)  
 Mrs. Sirimisetty: *Ade Frau Martinez!* Mrs. Martinez: *Wider-luege!*

## B2

1. müend Si
2. Wänder
3. du bisch
4. ir händ (In a team, people are usually on first-name terms. However, if the team is very large or the team leader is strict, he could also say: *Si händ*)
5. chönd Si
6. Zaled Si
7. Händer
8. bringsch duu (de Güsel) use

## B3.1

1. sich bewärbe
2. intressiert sii
3. imer no
4. verantwortlich sii
5. d Schtel
6. d Bewärbigsunderlage
7. iiglade wärde
8. sich go voorschtele

## B3.2

1. Häsch du dich scho uf d Schtel beworbe?
2. Als Chef füberter es Team mit 12 Mitarbeitende.
3. Nööchscht Wuche chani mi go voorschtele!
4. Sind Si imer no a oisem Aagebott intressiert?
5. D Personalchefin isch verantwortlich für s Personal.
6. De Job als Leererin passt perfekt zu dir!

## B4

Translation of the text:

<b>E:</b>	Hi Albert, you're late. It's already a quarter past seven! Was the train late?
<b>A:</b>	Hello Elif, no, I missed the train and had to wait half an hour.
<b>E:</b>	Oh, that's why. But the food is almost ready now. How was your day?
<b>A:</b>	Stressful. This morning at seven, when I left the house, my boss called me to say that one of my colleagues was ill and I had to look after ten children on my own.
<b>E:</b>	Wow, that sounds exhausting!
<b>A:</b>	Yes, I walked around all day counting whether all the children were still there. And one child also had a cold and cried all day. But that's just the job.
<b>E:</b>	I had also thought about working with children, but when I hear you say that, I don't feel like it.

<b>A:</b>	No, don't let me put you off, the job also has its good sides. There's always something going on when you work with children, I like that. But you're happy with your job anyway, aren't you?
<b>E:</b>	Yes, I like working at the bank. I'm more of an office type and I like the different areas of responsibility.
<b>A:</b>	Tell me, where is Lou anyway?
<b>E:</b>	She's on night shift at the hospital.
<b>A:</b>	Yes, that's right, I completely forgot. I couldn't do that, always working so irregularly!
<b>E:</b>	I think the spaghetti is ready, shall we eat?
<b>A:</b>	Yes, I'm hungry!

## B4.1

Examples for answers to the exercise questions:

Um weli Ziit gaasch du normalerwiis us em Huus? - Ich gaa jede Morge am 8i loos.  
 Muesch au de Zuug oder de Bus nää? - Ich haa nöd wiit, ich cha z Fuess gaa.  
 Mit wäm redsch über din Arbetstaag? - Am maischte redi mit mim Partner / mit minere Partnerin.

## B4.2

Examples for answers to the exercise questions:

Häsch s au oft schträng i dim Brueff? - Ich mues zwar vil schwitze, aber defür hani nöd so vil Schtress.  
 Was isch als Chind din Traumjob gsii? - Als Chind hani unbedingt Pilotin wele wärde.  
 Was wüsch hüt am liebschte mache? - Hüt dänki mängisch, Tramchauffeur chönt no lessig sii.

## B4.3

Examples for answers to the exercise questions:

Wie schafftsch duu am liebschte - häsch s lieber ruig oder häsch gärn öppis loos? - Ich haa s am liebschte ruig.  
 Häsch lieber gregleti Arbetsziite oder flexiibli - und häsch scho mal Schicht gschaffet? - Ich bruuch kä gregleti Arbetsziite, ich tail si mer lieber sälber ii. Durum wetti au nöd Schicht schaffe.  
 Bisch lieber dine oder verusse? - Ich bi am liebschte a de früsche Luft!

## C1

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

<b>D:</b>	So, Grüezi Här Scholz!	So, hello Mr. Scholz!
<b>A:</b>	Grüezi! Sind Sii d Frau Diaga?	Hello! Are you Mrs. Diaga?
<b>D:</b>	Genau, und das da isch d Frau Galli, wo fürs HR mit debii isch.	Exactly, and this is Mrs. Galli, who is here for HR.
<b>A:</b>	Grüezi wool.	Hello.
<b>G:</b>	Grüezi.	Hello.

<b>D:</b>	Wetted Si gärn es Glaas Wasser?	Would you like a glass of water?
<b>A:</b>	Nai, isch guet, danke.	No, that's fine, thank you.
<b>D:</b>	Guet. Si händ sich ja bi ois als Fachmaa Betroiig beworbe. Chönted Si churz verzele, was Si mit däre-n Uusbildig verbinded?	Good. You have applied to us as a care specialist. Could you briefly explain what you associate with this training programme?
<b>A:</b>	Jaa, gärn. <i>Der Aaron git gueti Antworte und so gaat das Gschpröoch es Wiili hin und häär. Nachere halbe Schtund chunts langsam zum Ändi.</i>	Yes, with pleasure. <i>Aaron gives good answers and the conversation goes back and forth for a while. After half an hour, it gradually comes to an end.</i>
<b>A:</b>	Märsi vilmal, das töönt seer schpanend. Jetzt hetemer no es paar Fraage zum Schluss - Stefanie, wottsch du übernää?	Thank you very much, that sounds very exciting. Now we have a few final questions - Stefanie, do you want to take over?
<b>G:</b>	Ja. Här Scholz, Si sind im Momänt aagschtelt - ab wän wääred Si dän verfüegbar?	Yes, Mr. Scholz, you are currently employed - when would you be available?
<b>A:</b>	Ich haa drüü Möned Chündigungsfrischt. Nacher chönti gad aafange, das wär dän im Juni.	I have a three months' cancellation period. After that, I could start straight away, which would be in June.
<b>G:</b>	Supper. D Schtel isch mit 60% uusgschribe, isch das guet für Sii?	Great. The position is advertised at 60%, is that okay for you?
<b>A:</b>	Laat sich da ächt no drüber diskutiere? Also wän au mee giengti - aigentlich würi scho gärn 80% schaffe.	Is there perhaps still room for discussion? Well, I could do more - I would actually like to work 80%.
<b>G:</b>	Im Momänt chömmer das nanig genau säge, aber das isch scho mal guet z wüsse, das Si mit em Pensum au chönted ufegaa. Und no e letschti Fraag - Iri Ghaltvorschtelig, also bi 60%?	We can't say for sure at the moment, but it's good to know that you could go up with the workload. And one last question - your salary expectations, i.e. 60%?
<b>A:</b>	Also 3000 im Monet müesti scho haa. Wän di 60% für das nöd länged, chönti wie gsait au gärn mee mache.	So I would need to get 3000 a month. If the 60% isn't enough, I could do more, as I said.
<b>G:</b>	Guet. Das wärs dän vo oisere Siite - händ Si no Fraage, Här Scholz?	Good. That's it from our side - do you have any more questions, Mr. Scholz?
<b>A:</b>	Nai, für miich isch au guet, danke. Oder nai, ais no - bis wän chönd Si mir Bscheid gää?	No, that works for me too, thank you. Or no, one more thing - when could you let me know?
<b>D:</b>	Mir händ morn no ais Gschpröoch und dän wärdemer ois entschaide. Bis nööchscht Wuche wüssed Si Bscheid.	We have another meeting tomorrow and then we will decide. You'll know by next week.

<b>A:</b> Märsi vilmal. Dämfal, ade mitenand und es schööns Tägli!	Thank you very much. Well, goodbye and have a nice day!
<b>D:</b> Uf Widerluege, Här Scholz!	Goodbye, Mr. Scholz!

## C1.1

The interview probably went well. Between the two blocks of the dialogue it is said that Aaron gave good answers. At the beginning of the second block, Mrs. Diaga says that Aaron's answers were "very exciting".

## C1.2

Right answers: nai, Stefanie, ab em Juni, 80%, nööchscht Wuche

## C1.3

Suggested translation (slight variations possible):

1. *Wiso wetted Si däa Job gärn mache? Was isch Iri Motivation?*
2. *Wo gsend Si Iri Schtärchene? Chönd Si es Biischpil gää, wo lne das i früenere Jöbs ghulfe hät?*
3. *Was sind Ire Schwechene und wie gönd Si mit däm um?*
4. *Wo gsend Si sich i foif Jaar?*

## C1.4

For example:

<i>Bi ois cha s au emal schtressig wärde. Wie gönd Si mit Schtress um?</i>	Things can get stressful here. How do you deal with stress?
<i>Was bringed Si vo lrere letschte Shtel mit, was Si da chönd bruuche?</i>	What do you bring with you from your last job that you can use here?
<i>Was isch a lne anderscht wi a anderne Lüüt, wo sich beworbe händ?</i>	What is different about you compared to other people who have applied?
<i>Wo gsend Si bi sich no Luggene?</i>	Where do you still see gaps?
<i>Wie würed Si sich gärn wiiter entwickele?</i>	How would you like to evolve?

## C2

Translation of the text:

*Lemlem is currently doing an apprenticeship. She wants to earn some money on the side and is therefore looking for a simple job. She first asks her friend Semhar.*

**L:** Semhar, do you know where there's work available right now?

**S:** Why?

**L:** I'm currently doing this apprenticeship and my money is getting a bit tight. I'd like to do something on the side until I'm finished.

**S:** And what?

**L:** Something simple where you don't need any major qualifications. You know, cleaning, building site, that sort of thing.

**S:** Hm. Have you ever thought about a restaurant? Service?

**L:** Why not? Do you know one?

**S:** I'm not sure, but this café next to the retirement village is always incredibly busy. Why don't you go and ask there?

*The next day, Lemlem comes into the café. It's two o'clock and there's not much going on yet.*

**R:** Hi!

**L:** Hello! My name is Lemlem Senai. I've heard that you might need some help.

**R:** Ah, yes, we actually do (need someone). Have you ever worked in gastronomy before?

**L:** No, that would be my first time. But I saw that a lot of elderly people come here in the afternoon and I like that!

**R:** Why is that?

**L:** You know, I'm currently training to be a carer. I really like older people and get on really well with them. And I know they don't like to wait for their cake! It would certainly be good if I could help out a bit.

**R:** All right, let's give it a try. Can you perhaps come back tomorrow at 11 a.m. and bring your CV with you? Then we can see if it really fits and talk about the salary if necessary. Oh yes, and I'm Rosina by the way, alright?

**L:** Okay, nice to meet you, Rosina! Great, see you tomorrow then, thank you very much!

## C2.1

See C2.

## C2.2

Individual solutions.

## C2.3

Rosina appears to have a casual relationship with her customers and therefore addresses Lemlem as 'you' from the outset. Lemlem, on the other hand, who comes to the café as an applicant, behaves politely and uses the polite form *Sie* until Rosina offers her the first name or the *du*.

## C3.1

1. De schpanendscht Tail
2. S schöönschte Gfüül
3. Di bescht Chefin
4. De hööchscht Loon
5. Vo de jüngschte Mitarbeitende
6. De lengscht Arbetswääg, zur ruigschte Ziit
7. Di schträngschte Tääg, es fains Ässe

## C4.1

1k, 2f (*Pöschtl*), 3d, 4g, 5i (*Tierärztin*), 6a (*Mechaaniker*), 7b, 8l, 9c (*Beckerin*), 10j  
 Not used: *Chauffeur*, *Chöchin*

## C4.2

For example:

En Choch chocht Ässe für d Gescht vomene Restaurant.  
 E Schriinerin bout Möbel us Holz.  
 E Schriftschtelerin schriibt Büecher.  
 En Bouarbaiter schafft ufere Bouschtel, zum Biischpil bim Hüüser oder Schtraasse Boue.  
 E Beamtin schafft i de Verwaltig, zum Biischpil bi de Schtatt oder bim Kanton.  
 En Profässer forschd und unterrichtet anere Hoochschuel.

## C5.1

1c, 2b, 3a

## C5.2

The picture mainly shows when the shop is open (*Öffnungsziite* 'opening hours'). The shop wants to show that it is a good employer - on Sundays the shop stays closed for the sake of its employees (*Am Suntig lömmer eusnä MitarbeiterInnä... Ziit für Fründä und Familiä* 'On Sunday we grant our employees... time for friends and family').

## D1.1

Transcription and translation (A = caller, B = (exemplary) correct answers):

1	A	Grüezi wool, da isch Bhatia.	Hello, this is Bhatia speaking.
	B	Grüezi Här Bhatia.	Hello Mr. Bhatia.
2	A	Si sind ja vor Churzem bi ois gsii für es Vorschteligsgschprööch und händ ois also zimli beiidrukt.	You recently visited us for a job interview and made quite an impression.
	B	Oo, danke!	Oh, thank you!

3	A	Mir mached jetzt e zwai-ti Rundi und ich ha mit lne wele luege, wän Si Ziit hetted, isch guet?	We're doing a second round now and I wanted to see when you'd be free, all right?
	B	Ja, isch guet.	Yes, sure.
4	A	Also, für ois wärs am beschte nööchscht Wuche-n am Dunschtig. Friitig wür au no gaa, aber nur am Morge.	So, for us it would be best next week on Thursday. Friday would also work, but only in the morning.
	B	Am Dunschtignami würs mer gaa.	Thursday afternoon would be convenient for me.
5	A	Supper. Dän sägemer gad am ais?	Great. Then, let's say right at one?
	B	Ais isch echli früe. Gaats au am drüü?	One is a bit early. Would three be okay?
6	A	Ja sicher, drüü isch au guet. Also am Dunschtig am drüü. Wo s isch, wüssed Si ja scho.	Yes, of course, three is also good. So, Thursday at three. You already know where it is.
	B	Ja, deet am Baanhoof.	Yes, there at the train station.
7	A	Genau. Also, dän froiemer ois und bis nööchscht Wuche!	Exactly. So, we look forward to seeing you next week!
	B	lich mi au. Widerluege Här Bhatia!	Me too. Goodbye, Mr. Bhatia!

## D1.2

1. hoi, 2. ade/tschüss, 3. grüezi mitenand, 4. hoi zäme,
5. tschüss, 6. ade mitenand, 7. ade, 8. grüezi, 9. hoi

Your answers are also correct if you used *halo* instead of *hoi*, *widerluege* instead of *ade* or *tschau* instead of *tschüss*. However, if you have forgotten *mitenand* or *zäme*, the answer is incorrect.

## D2.2

If your answer is slightly different, you can give yourself half a point. You can ignore the spelling as usual.

1. Das isch e gueti Fraag.
2. Ich find sympathisch, das Si so vil für Familie mached.
3. Nai, ich haa käs Probleem mit Teamarbet.
4. Mir gfallts aifach, wän i am Änd vom Taag gseene, was i gschaft ha.
5. Ich wür gärn hundert Prozänt schaffe.
6. Ich chönt ab Auguscht aafange.

# D3.1

Translation and assignment of sentences:

1. office worker	b. Making appointments for other people? No thanks.
2. Carer	c. I really like old people.
3. bus driver (f)	g. Don't you also have to drive at night?
4. journalist	a. Write messages instead of just reading them!
5. garbageman	d. That's not so bad, you're always outdoors!
6. cleaner	h. I have a skin allergy, so that wouldn't work.
7. accountant	f. I'm fussy, I'd be good at that.
8. lawyer	e. I think they're just twisting the law.

# D3.2

Transcription with translation:

<b>Faizal</b>	Min Name-n isch Faizal. Grüezi mitenand. Min Plaan isch, Elektroingenieur z schtudiere. Im Momänt bini inere Garage und min Chef wür mi näbetem Schtudium la wiiter schaffe. Ich ha wükli Glück!	My name is Faizal. Hello everyone. My plan is to study electrical engineering. At the moment I'm working in a car garage and my boss would let me continue working alongside my studies. I'm really lucky!
<b>Jelena</b>	Ich haisse Jelena. Min Traumbrueff isch aigetlich Leererin gsii und das bini jetzt au. Aber die Chind sind eso fräch! Ich wett lieber mit Erwachsene schaffe, vilich a de Brueffsschuel. Ich dänk, ich wird en Umschuelig mache.	My name is Jelena. My dream job was actually to be a teacher and that's what I am now. But the children are so cheeky! I'd rather work with adults, maybe at a vocational school. I think I'll do a retraining programm.
<b>Ali</b>	Halo zäme, ich bi de Ali. Ich schaff im Momänt imene Suppermärt, aber aigetlich wäri lieber unabhängig. Jetzt bini am Schpare und nööchscht Jaar wotti min aigete Kiosk ufmache!	Hello, I'm Ali. I'm working at a supermarket at the moment, but I'd actually prefer to be independent. Now I'm saving money and next year I want to open my own kiosk!

<b>Jacques</b>	Also jetzt gad schaffi als Ärtnehälfer und das isch imfal mega-schträng. De Loon isch nöd guet und jede-n Aabig tuet mer de Rugge wee. Ich sött wükli öppis anders mache, aber ich waiss nanig, was und wie. A jaa, ich bi de Jacques!	Right now I'm working as a harvester and it's really exhausting. The pay isn't good and my back hurts every evening. I should really do something else, but I don't know what or how yet. Oh yes, I'm Jacques!
<b>Pramila</b>	Hoi zäme, ich bi d Pramila. Ich ha scho imer öppis mit Zaale wele mache, scho i de Schuel han i Matti gliebt! Ich chönt mer zum Biischpil voorschtele, binere Versicherig z schaffe. Aber im Momänt bini Huusfrau.	Hello, I'm Pramila. I've always wanted to do something with numbers, I loved math at school. I could imagine working for an insurance company, for example. But at the moment I'm a housewife.

**Exercise solution:**

**Faizal:** Garage, Ingenieur, hät en nette Chef

**Jelena:** Schuel, Brueffsschuel, plaant en Umschuelig

**Ali:** Kassierer, sälbschtändig, lait Gäld uf d Siite

**Jacques:** Buurehof, waiss es nanig, hät Schmärze wäg sim Brueff

**Pramila:** Huusfrau, Versicherig, rächnet gärn



# Unit 4

## A1

Translation of the texts:

### In the Bakery

*Oleg is in the bakery.*

- V:** Good afternoon, what would you like?  
**O:** Hello, I would like two butter croissants.  
**V:** With pleasure. Would you like anything else?  
**O:** No, thank you, that's all.  
**V:** That's 3 francs 50. Do you want the receipt?  
**O:** No, thanks, I don't need it.  
**V:** Thank you very much and have a nice day!  
**O:** Thank you, you too. Goodbye!

### At the Cheese Counter

*Seda looks at the cheese counter.*

- S:** Hello, I would like a piece of the Appenzeller cheese.  
**V:** With pleasure. How much would you like?  
**S:** Approximately 200 grams.  
**V:** Is it okay like this? Should I cut it this way?  
**S:** A little more, please. Yes, that's wonderful.  
**V:** That's 220 grams. That makes 5 francs 40.  
**S:** Thank you very much. Have a nice day!  
**V:** Thank you, you too!

### At the Checkout

*Bikas is at the checkout to pay.*

- V:** Good afternoon.  
**B:** Good afternoon. This one and I would also need a roll of rubbish bags.  
**V:** Yes, here you go. Do you collect bonus points?  
**B:** No, I don't collect them. But could I have a bag?  
**V:** Yes, of course. However, this costs 5 cents.  
**B:** No problem, I'm happy to pay that.  
**V:** 25 francs 30, please. Do you pay in cash or by card?  
**B:** By card, please.  
**V:** Hold right here... thank you.  
**B:** Goodbye, have a nice day!  
**V:** Thanks, you too, goodbye.

### When buying clothes

*Liridona has a question at the fashion shop.*

- L:** Excuse me, do you also have this jumper in size M?  
**V:** Just a moment, I'll have a quick look in the warehouse. (...) No, unfortunately not, but we could order it if you like.  
**L:** Yes, I would love to.  
**V:** It should be here in about a week. We will call you. What is your telephone number?  
**L:** It's 075 725 56 63. Thank you very much, see you then.  
**V:** Thank you too, see you soon!

### In the Fruit and Vegetable Section

*Raifah is standing in front of the vegetable shelf and is looking for asparagus.*

- R:** Sorry, I'm looking for asparagus, don't you have any at the moment?  
**V:** Sorry, they're not in season at the moment, we won't have them until around April.  
**R:** Ah, right, they don't grow all year round! Something else. I've seen that the oranges aren't looking so good, there are a few moldy ones underneath. I thought it would be better if I told you.  
**V:** Oh yes, thank you very much, I'll sort them out straight away.  
**R:** Wonderful, thank you very much and have a nice afternoon.  
**V:** Thank you, you too.

## A2

1. zwai
2. (Appenzäler) Chääs
3. mit de Charte
4. Nai
5. Si sind schimlig

## A3

1a, 2h, 3e, 4f, 5d, 6i, 7b, 8c, 9g, 10j

## B1.1

1. Hüt gaa-n ich i d Bärge.
2. Ich hol si jede Taag am ói ab.
3. Am nööchschte Samschtig cha-n ich laider nöd.
4. Ich verschtaa-n in oft nöd.
5. Wän s Wätter schön isch, wänd mir schpööter en chliine Schpaziergang goo mache.
6. Ich cha dir gärn mis Skatebord uusleene.
7. Aachoo sind si uf jede Fal.
8. Är isch geschter am Aabig namal useggange.
9. Zum Schaffe bin ich geschter nüme rächtziitig choo.
10. Ich boue di noie Brämse morn ii.

## B1.2

### Sentence 1:

topic (focus)	verb	rest	example of context
Ich	gaa	hüt i d Bärge.	Und was machsch duu?
Hüüt	gaani	i d Bärge.	Morn sötti dän emal d Wonig uufruume.
I d Bärge	gaani	hüt.	Dihai bliibe chani morn, dän söls ee rägne.

### Sentence 6:

topic (focus)	verb	rest	example of context
Ich	cha	der mis Skateboard gärn uusleene.	Bringsch es aifecht nööchscht Wuche zrug, isch guet?
Diir	chan	i mis Skateboard gärn uusleene.	Nur dinere Schwöschter würi s eender nöd gää.
Miis Skateboard	chan	i der gärn uusleene.	Aber mis Velo bruuchi sälber.
Gärn	chan	i der mis Skateboard uusleene.	Wükli gar kais Probleem!
Uusleene	chan	i der mis Skateboard gärn.	Schänke dueni s der aber nöd.

### Sentence 9:

topic (focus)	Verb	Rest	example of context
Ich	bi	geschter nüme rächtziitig zum Schaffe choo.	Min Chef isch zum Glück sälber au z schpaat gsii.
Geschter	bin	i nüme rächtziitig zum Schaffe choo.	Hoffetlich chunt hüt de Zuug pünktlich.
Rächtziitig	bin	i geschter nüme zum Schaffe choo.	Aber choo bini, und mini Sache erledige hani au chöne.
Zum Schaffe	bin	i geschter nüme rächtziitig choo.	Wenigschtens zum Konzärt bini dän wider pünktlich gsii.

## B2

The more suitable variants: 1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 1

## B3

1. Ich glaub das ales nöd.
2. Bitte trink jetzt dini Milch uus!
3. Du chasch gärn au zum Znacht choo.
4. Er isch scho am 8i haiggange.
5. Si chunt wider emal nöd.
6. Chum, mir gönd no schnäl i de Lade ine.
7. Si händ di ganz Ziit uf d Uur glueged.
8. Ir losed ois wenigschtens zue.
9. Höör uuf de ganz Taag jamere.
10. Mir händ das Projäkt abproche.
11. Si probiert a oisi Hochzig z choo.
12. Es hät geschter megavil grägned.
13. Das macht mer imfal gar nüüt.
14. Machschr mer gschnäl d Tüüre-n uuf, bitte?

## B4.1

Gipfeli, Chääs, Söcke, Puli, Poulet, Spaghetti, Choigumi, Broot, Orangschesaft, Wurscht, Ziitig

## B4.2

Chääs - Chäästeeke, Broot - Beck, Söcke - Chlaiderlade, Ziitig - Kiosk, Spaghetti - Suppermärt, Poulet - Metzger, Orangschesaft - Suppermärt, Gipfeli - Beck, Choigumi - Kiosk, Wurscht - Metzger, Puli - Chlaiderlade

## B4.3

1. Chääs: De Chääs chauffi a de Chäästeeke or Ich chauff de Chääs a de Chäästeeke.
2. Metzger: Bim Metzger chauffi s Poulet / d Wurscht or Ich chauffe bim Metzger s Poulet / d Wurscht.
3. Kiosk: Am Kiosk chauffi d Ziitig / d Choigumi or Ich chauffe-n am Kiosk d Ziitig / d Choigumi.
4. Spaghetti: Spaghetti chauffi im Suppermärt or Ich chauffe d Spaghetti im Suppermärt.

## B5

My favourite meal is spaghetti with tomato sauce. I love eating it because it's very quick to cook when you don't have a lot of time. But if you have a bit more time, you can make the tomato sauce more special and elaborate. You can add lots of different vegetables and leave it to cook for a long time. You can either use grated Parmesan straight from the bag or buy the Parmesan in one piece at the cheese counter and grate it on top yourself.

My favourite food is cake. I love baking myself. If it's someone's birthday, I usually bring them a chocolate cake. Home-made is of course the tastiest. But there are also very tasty cakes in the bakery. I love sweets in general, such as biscuits, chocolate croissants or chocolate bars.

My favorite meal is lentil stew. I put lots of vegetables in it, onions, carrots, leek, celery or whatever else I can find in the fridge and a little chilli. Sometimes I like to have rice with it, but often I just eat it as it is.

## B5.1

Spaghetti, Tomaatesoosse, kochet, Tomaatesoosse, Gmües, iichoche, Parmesan, Parmesan, Chäästeeke, raffle

Chueche, bache, isse, Schoggichueche, sälbergmacht, am fainschte, Beck, Chüeche, süessi Sache, Guezli, Schoggigipfeli, Schoggischtängeli

Linsenaintopf, Gmües, Zwible, Rüebl, Lauch, Seleri, Chüel-schrank, Tschili, Riis

## B5.2

### Spaghetti mit Tomaatesoosse:

at least Spaghetti, Salz, Tomaatesoosse, maybe also Gmües, Parmesan, Chrüeter,...

### Schoggichueche:

at least Schoggi, Määl, (Aier), (pflanzlich) Milch, (pflanzlich) Butter, Bachpulfer maybe also Butter, Salz, Puderzucker, ...

### Linsenaintopf:

at least Linse, Zwible, Rüebl, Lauch, Seleri, Tschili, maybe also anders Gmües, Riis, Wiisswii...

## B5.3

Individual solutions.

## C1.1

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

<b>A:</b>	Grüezi wool, wär isch als nööchschts draa?	Good afternoon, whose turn is it?
<b>R:</b>	Grüezi - das wäär dämfal iich.	Good afternoon - that would be me.
<b>A:</b>	Schöön, was hetted Si dän gärn?	Great, what would you like?
<b>R:</b>	Ich brüüchti vier chliini Zuggettis und öppe 400 Gramm vo däne Pilz deet. Aa, und gärn grad no de Bund Peeterli dezue.	I would need four small courgettes and about 400 grams of those mushrooms there. Ah, and please add this bunch of parsley.
<b>A:</b>	Seer gärn. Dörfs suscht no öppis sii?	With pleasure. Anything else?
<b>R:</b>	Jaa, zwaiehalb Kilo Här-döpfel brüüchti no, zwai Rande und e chli Schpinaat.	Yes, I also need two and a half kilos of potatoes, two pieces of beetroot and some spinach.
<b>A:</b>	Wivil Schpinaat hetted Si gärn? So drüü Hampfle?	How much spinach would you like? About three handful?

<b>R:</b>	Jaa, das isch supper esoo. Dän brüüchti no chli Gmües, wo mer au chan uf de Gril tue, was empfäled Si daa?	Yes, that's great. Then I need some vegetables that can also be put on the grill, what do you recommend?
<b>A:</b>	Oberschiine chame guet grilliere, oder jetzt händ Schpargle gad Saison, die passed au guet. Für Schpiessli chönd Si au Pepperooni nää.	Aubergines are ideal to grill, or asparagus is in season at the moment, which also works well. You can also use peppers/cap-sicums for skewers.
<b>R:</b>	Säsonaal töönt guet, dän nimi gärn gad so-n en Bund grüeni Schpargle. Und dän bitte no es paar Frücht.	Seasonal sounds good, then I'll take a bunch of green asparagus. And then some fruit, please.
<b>A:</b>	Gärn, gömmer doch gad da chli wiiter füre. Was dörfs sii?	Sure, let's go a little further forward. What would you like?
<b>R:</b>	Ich wott en Öpfelchueche bache. Was nimi daa für Öpfel?	I want to bake an apple pie. What kind of apples do I use?
<b>A:</b>	Wän Si gärn eender süess-liche Öpfel händ, empfili Ine Gala, und wän s lieber söl en süürliche sii, passt Elstar seer guet.	If you rather like sweet apples, I recommend Gala, and if you prefer a more tartish one, Elstar is a good choice.
<b>R:</b>	Guet, dän nimi es Kilo vo de Elstar. Suscht brüüchti nur no so-n e Schale Äppeeri und zää Schtange Rabarbere.	Well, then I'll take a kilo of the Elstar. Otherwise I'll just need a bowl of strawberries and ten stalks of rhubarb.
<b>A:</b>	Seer gärn. Das isch dämfales?	With pleasure. Is that all then?
<b>R:</b>	Ja, das wär ales. Ou nai, gärn au no es Schäleli Himbeeri.	Yes, that would be all. Oh no, a basket of raspberries too, please.
<b>A:</b>	Guet, des wär dän ales zäme... 53 Franke 50.	Well, that would be all together... 53 francs 50.
<b>R:</b>	Vwala, das sött gad schti-me soo.	There you go, that should be exactly right.
<b>A:</b>	Perfäkt, danke und no en schöne Taag wünschti Ine.	Perfect, thank you and have a nice day.
<b>R:</b>	Danke glichfalls. Ade!	Thank you too. Good bye!

## C1.1

**Gmües:** 4 (vier) Zuggetti, 300 (drüühundert) Gram Pilz, 1 (ai) Bund Peeterli, 2,5 (zwaiehalb) Kilo Här-döpfel, 2 (zwei) Rande, 3 (drüü) Hampfle Schpinaat, 1 (ai) Bund grüeni Schpargle, **Frücht:** 1 (ais) Kilo Öpfel (Sorte: Elstar), 10 (zää) Schtange Rabarbere, 1 (ais) Schäleli Himbeeri

## C1.2

1. Er empfilt Oberschiine, Schpargle, Pepperooni.
2. Si nimt d Schpargle, wil si Säson händ.
3. Si wott en Öpfelchueche bache.
4. S Schäleli Himbeeri hettsi fascht vergässe.

# C1.3

1b, 2e, 3c, 4a, 5d

# C1.4

For example:

1. **Tomaate** (tomato): root, rund, glänzig
2. **Gurke** (cucumber): grün, lang, schpitzig
3. **Bire** (pear): gääl, süess, waich
4. **Kütte** (quince): härt, gääl, suur

# C2.1

Was laufft? → Öppis laufft.

Was machemer? → Mir mached öppis.

Machsch mer en Döner? → Du machsch mer en Döner.

Wottsch Zwible? → Du wottsch Zwible.

Tue-n echli Tschili drii! → Du tuesch echli Tschili drii.

Machemer! → Mir mached (s).

Issisch en gad? → Du issisch en gad

Söl' en iipacke? → Ich söl en iipacke.

Gib mer no e Serviette! → Du gisch mer no e Serviette.

Chani mit Chartre zale? → Ich zale mit Chartre.

Lueg, mis noie Gräätli! → Du lueg mis noie Gräätli (aa).

Mach s guet! → Du machsch (es) guet.

# C2.2

For example (other questions are possible):

1. Wiso chunt de David in Lade-n ine?
2. Was bschtelt de David?
3. Was wott de David im Döner?
4. Wie zalt de David?
5. Was sait de David zum Abschiid?

# C2.3

1. Gisch mer no es Seckli? or Chasch mer no es Seckli gää?
2. Packed Si mir das ii.
3. Laasch de Chnobl wäg, bitte? or Chasch de Chnobl wäglaa, bitte?)
4. Tüend Si no chli mee Chääs druuf? or Chönd Si no chli mee Chääs druuftue?)
5. Braat s guet dure, bitte.
6. Hei, schtönd hine-n aa, bitte!

# C3

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

<b>R:</b> Hoi Esmel! Gaats guet?	Hello Esme! Are you okay?
<b>E:</b> Hoi Raffa, mol, und diir?	Hello Raffa, yes, and you?
<b>R:</b> Au, danke. Hei, eewigs nüme gsee! Hetttsch äch nööchscht Wuche mal Luscht, zu mir zum Znacht z choo?	Thanks to you too. Hey, I haven't seen you for ages! Would you like to come for dinner sometime next week?
<b>E:</b> Ja, wüki scho eewigs häär. Znacht wär schön, ich han zwar vil loos, aber das sött scho irgendwie gaa. Hetttsch gad am Määntigaabig Ziiit?	Yes, it really has been ages. Dinner would be nice, I have a lot going on, but it should work out somehow. Would you be free on Monday evening?
<b>R:</b> Ou nai, sorry, han am Viertel ab 5i no en Coiffeur-Termin und am 9i es Telefoon mit minere Mueter, das wär chli knapp. Aber am Ziischtigaabig nach em Schaffe wäri frei, du au?	No, sorry, I have an appointment at the hairdresser at a quarter past five and I'm on the phone with my mum at nine, so that would be a bit tight. But I'm free on Tuesday evening after work and you?
<b>E:</b> Ziischtig- und Mittwuchaa-big muesi ab em 6i bis am halbi 10i uf d Chind vo mim Brüeder uufpasse, das gaat laider nöd. Wie wärs mit em Dunschtig?	On Tuesday and Wednesday evenings, I have to look after my brother's children from six to half past nine, so unfortunately that's not possible. How about Thursday?
<b>R:</b> Am Dunschtig hani aifach bis öppe-n am Viertel vor 7ni no e Sitzig. Denaach hetti Ziiit, aber dän isch vilich scho chli schpaat? Du muesch ja amigs rächt früe use.	I just have meeting until about a quarter to seven on Thursday. I'd have time after that, but maybe it's a bit late for you? You always have to get up quite early, don't you?
<b>E:</b> Ja, das schtimt. Aber am Friitig hani Schpaatdiensch, vo dem häär wär das scho gaa.	Yes, that's true. But I'm on a late shift on Friday, so that would be fine.
<b>R:</b> Supper! Ich haa d Sitzig vo dihai uus, das haisst, du chöntscht so uf di 7ni zu mir haichoo. Isch des guet für diich?	Great! I have the meeting from home, which means you could come over to my house around seven. Does that suit you?
<b>E:</b> Jaa, perfekt! Chani no öppis mitbringe?	Yes, perfect! Can I bring something?
<b>R:</b> Nai, isch guet, aber danke. Ich froi mich! Mach s guet und bis nööchscht Wuche. Tschüss.	No, that's fine, but thank you. I'm looking forward to it! Take care and see you next week. Bye.
<b>E:</b> lich mich au! Du au, tschau.	Me too! You too, ciao.

## C3.1

	Raffaella	Esme
<b>Määntig</b>	16.45 hairdresser 21.00 phone mother	
<b>Ziischtig</b>		18.00-21.30 looking after children
<b>Mittwuch</b>		18.00-21.30 looking after children
<b>Dunschtig</b>	meeting until 18.45	
<b>Friitig</b>		late shift

## C3.2

They meet at Raffaella's on Thursday at 7 p.m.

## C3.3

		As numbers
1. foif ab zäni		10.05
2. Viertel ab drüü		3.15
3. halbi aichti		7.30
4. zwänz ab vieri		4.20
5. zää vor sibni		6.50
6. Viertel for zäni		9.45
7. foif vor halbi zwai		1.25
8. Punkt ais		1.00

## C3.4

Es isch...

1. 5.25	foif for halbi sächsi
2. 5.55	foif for sächsi
3. 12.30	halbi ais
4. 8.20	zwänz ab aichti / zää vor halbi nüüni
5. 9.50	zää vor zäni

## C3.5

For example:

Hoi, daa sind no d Details für oises Znacht am Dunschtig. Chasch uf di ói zu ois in Garte choo, Dupointstraass 15. Mir grilliered und händ scho en Huuffe Züügs, aber wän d wottscht, chöntscht no en Salaat mitbringe. Bis dän!

## C4

Dialogue translation

- E:** Mmhh, the lasagne is really delicious. How did you make it?
- R:** Thank you, I'm glad you like it. So, you need to cut about half a kilo of courgette into thin slices and season it with salt, pepper and herbs. Then slice the mushrooms and fry them in oil with onions and a bunch of parsley. Add half a liter of cream, grated cheese and a little nutmeg to the sauce. Finally, simply layer the lasagne, vegetables and cheese sauce alternately and sprinkle with a little Parmesan cheese. Put it in the oven for half an hour and it's ready. It's also super handy to prepare in advance. The recipe is from Betty Bossi, I can send it to you if you like.
- E:** Oh yes, I'd love to! I also like to make things in the oven, then you have some time to clean up while the food is in the oven. For example, I often make a pizza to use up leftovers. You simply make a pizza dough, divide it up, roll out the pieces into an oval shape and top them from the centre, for example with leftover cheese, vegetables, meat - whatever you have at home. It only takes a quarter of an hour in the oven.
- R:** That sounds good, I definitely have to make it sometime. I'm always at a loss when it comes to leftovers, so something like this is great.
- E:** Absolutely! There's also a cookbook called "Cooking for less than 5 francs". It only contains recipes where you don't pay more than 5 francs for all the ingredients together. They also have a few free recipes on their website <https://joelundmuriel.ch/pages/kochen-unter-5-fr>.
- R:** Wow, that sounds very good, I'll have a look at it later!

## C4.1

Example sentences:

- **Pfäffer:** I de Suppe fäält no chli Pfäffer!
- **Rezäpt:** Das ischs Rezäpt vo minere Mueter.
- **raffle:** Chasch mer scho mal d Härdöpfel raffle, bitte?
- **schtroie:** Wän im Winter d Schtraasse rutschig sind, schtroitme Salz.
- **abwächsligswiis:** Mir chönd ja d Wösch abwächsligswiis mache.

## C5.1

Chömed verbi! 'Come over!'

Mir bringet oi au im Februar Xund & Rund mit Marroni über die chalt Zyyt! 'We'll keep you healthy and round with chestnuts through the cold month of February!'

Chuchi am Wasser 'kitchen by the water'

## C5.2

1d, 2a, 3e, 4b, 5f, 6c.

*Ghopfts* ('*Gehopftes*', i.e. 'something to which hops have been added') simply means in everyday life Bier. The '*Burger*' is pronounced *Börger*.

## C5.3

In dialect it would be *Gmües bitte sälber wäge*. In other German-speaking countries they say *Gemüse bitte selber wiegen*.

## D1.1

1c, 2g, 3e, 4b, 5j, 6i, 7d, 8f, 9a, 10h

## D1.2

1. Sind das Zwätschge?
2. Gänd Si mir es Kilo vo dänel!
3. Ois gaats esoo. (or: S gaat ois esoo.)
4. De Zopf isch günschtiger worde.
5. Händ Si kä Broot mee?
6. Packed Si mir des ii, bitte!

## D2.1

1. Peeterli, 2. Jogurt, 3. Äppeeri, 4. Broot, 5. Rabarbere, 6. Härdöpfel, 7. Schoggi, 8. Schpinaat, 9. Taigwaare, 10. Orang-schesaft

## D2.2

1. en Bund, 2. es Glaas, 3. es Schäleli, 4. en Laib, 5. e Schtange, 6. en Sack, 7. e Tafle, 8. e Hampfle, 9. es Päckli, 10. e Fläsche

1. a bundle, 2. a glass, 3. a (small) bowl, 4. a loaf, 5. a pint, 6. a bag, 7. a bar (of chocolate), 8. a handful, 9. a packet, 10. a bottle

## D2.3

1d, 2e, 3g, 4a, 5b, 6f, 7c

## D3.1

Dialogue in the correct order and with translation:

<b>A</b>	Ui, du häsch ja scho aag-fange.	Oh, you've already started.
	Chani der öppis hälffe?	Can I help you with something?
<b>B</b>	Das isch lieb vo dir.	That's nice of you.
	Also lueg, die Härdöpfel daa chasch mer schele.	So look, you can peel these potatoes for me.

<b>A</b>	Isch guet.	Okay.
	So, färtig. Und jetzt?	So, done. And now?
<b>B</b>	Bisich ja megaschnäl.	You are super fast!
	Jetzt fiin schiible und nacher uuf d Siite tue.	Now cut into thin slices and set aside.

## D3.2

Answer the questions:

1. (Chääs-)Fondue
2. öppe 200 Gram
3. Wän me z vil Maizena nimt.
4. S Fondue bränt aa.
5. Broot(-Würfeli)

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

S Wichtigschte-n isch de Chääs. Es sött scho en rässe Chääs sii, öppis Chreftigs. En Klassiker isch halb Gruyère und halb Vacherin. Me sait pro Persoon öppe 200 Gram. Am Aafang mues-me s Caquelon mit Chnobl uusrübe. Dän tuetme de Chääs mit echli Maizena vermische. D Mängi isch no schwirig, wän d z wenig nimsch, chas passiere, das sich de Chääs tränt, aber mit z vil wirds megagräämig, fasch wi ne Gräämsuppe, und daas isch dän au nüme fain. Aifech echli experimentiere und lieber z wenig wi z vil! Nacher güsstme de Wii dezue. Wiiswi natürl, uf 100 Gram Chääs es bizzli weniger wi-n en halbe Dezi. Der Alkohol verdunschtet dän, aber me cha s au ganz ooni mache, mit Süessmoscht. Dän langsam wärme und imer schön umrühre, das es nöd aabränt. Me cha s mit Pfäffer und Muskat wärze und s git Lüüt, wo es Glesli Kirsch dezuetünd, aber iich ha das nöd so gärn. Wän de ganz Chääs schön gschmulze-n isch, sofort serviere! Aa, und s Wichtigschte hetti fasch vergässe: Zum s überhaupt ässe z chöne bruuchts natürl no Broot, so chliini Würfeli! Die muesch vorane scho paraat mache.

The most important thing is the cheese. It should be an intense, mature cheese, something strong. A classic one is half Gruyère and half Vacherin. They say about 200 grams per person. To start, rub the caquelon (fondue pot) with garlic. Then mix the cheese with a little cornflour. The quantity is quite tricky, if you use too little, the cheese may separate, but too much will make it very creamy, almost like a cream soup, which will no longer taste good. Just experiment a little and it's better to use too little than too much! Then pour in the wine. White wine, of course, a little less than half a decilitre per 100 grams of cheese. The alcohol then evaporates, but you can also do it without any, use apple juice instead. Then heat slowly and always stir well so that it doesn't burn. You can flavour it with pepper and nutmeg and some people add a glass of kirsch, but I don't like that. Once all the cheese has melted, serve immediately! Ah, and I almost forgot the most important thing: For it to be eaten at all, it needs bread of course, cut in small cubes! You need to prepare these in advance.

# Unit 5

## A1

Translation of the advertisements:

### Room Available

Us: Four-room flat share on the outskirts of the city. You: easy going and grown-up!

A room will be available in our shared flat as of the beginning of August (20 m<sup>2</sup>, CHF 530). The flat is in a quiet neighbourhood, but there are shops and a bus stop five minutes away. We all work and are therefore looking for someone who doesn't party every week and preferably has some experience of sharing a flat. We like to cook dinner together from time to time and have a small balcony that can be planted.

### Flat for Rent

I am moving away and am therefore looking for a new tenant for my affordable flat near the city center (three rooms, 65 m<sup>2</sup>, CHF 1875. from February). The flat is sunny, in an old building, without a balcony, but with a lovely courtyard. The owner enjoys having children and the lively neighbourhood is ideal for families (playground and small park around the corner, no dangerous streets). I won't be taking my furniture with me, taking it over is optional, otherwise I'll just have to dispose of it.

### Shared Flat Wanted

Hello everyone! I'm new in Switzerland and looking for a fun flat share to meet more people. I am 25 years old and from Syria, a non-smoker and a neat guy. I like to listen to music, play the guitar and am sociable. I would prefer to move into a student flat because I would also like to start studying later. But it's not a must! My budget is up to 650 francs.

### Room for Subletting

We are a retired couple who would like to sublet a room. The room has 23 m<sup>2</sup> and is furnished, ideal for students or trainees. Nice view from the 13th floor. Shared use of bathroom and kitchen without living room. Public transport and shops nearby. Please only applications from clean, reliable people and with picture.

## A2

Example: Mir gfalt di erscht Aazaig am beschte. Ich wone gärn i WGs, aber nach em Schaffe bruuchi mini Rue - mit 30i hätme aifet andri Bedürfnis wi als Schtudi. Durum gfalt mer au, das d Wonig am Schtattrand liit, deet ischs ja au maischtens nöd eso hektisch wi i de Ineschtatt. Ich glaub, die andre deet sind au so druuf, aber au kä totaali Einzelgänger\*ine - ich finde, gmüetlich und gselig passt seer guet zäme!

## A3

1d, 2a, 3c, 4b

## B1.1

Here are the sentences with the correct prepositions:

Ich wone **mit** minere Schwöschter zäme.

Er cha sich e Wonig **ooni** en Balkoon nöd vorschtele.

Si woned scho lang **z** Basel.

Rüersch bitte dini Chlaidler nöd imer **über** de Färnsee.

S Sofa isch **i** de Schtube.

Am Suntig lauffi ainisch **um** de Block ume.

**Bi** mir dihai isches immer sauber.

D Thea hät en noie Schrank **für** iri Fründin kaufft.

De Erkin isch **wäg** sim Fründ seer pingelig mit de Ornig dihaime.

Si händ s Bild im Schlaaffzimmer nur **gäg** d Wand gleent.

**Näbet** ere moderne Chuchi büüet die Wonig no e groossi Schtube.

Ich gaa schnäl **in** Eschtrich.

S isch vil ruiger worde, **sit** d Wonig **under** ois noi vermietet isch.

Ich hett jetz persöönlich der Ässtisch nöd **uf** de Teppich gschtelt.

## B1.2

All prepositions, one possible solution each:

preposition	Sentence from exercise	New Sentence (example)
<b>besides</b>	Näbet ere moderne Chuchi büüet die Wonig no e groossi Schtube.	D Schtube chöntemer ja näbet d Chuchi boue.
<b>under</b>	S isch vil ruiger worde, sit d Wonig under ois noi vermietet isch.	Under die Wonig würdi nöd zügte, die lauffed de ganz Taag ume und me ghöört s rächt laut.
<b>above</b>	Rüersch bitte dini Chlaidler nöd imer über de Färnsee.	Über em Färnsee isch scho wider es füechts Tüechli, wäm isch daas?
<b>on</b>	Ich hett jetz persöönlich der Ässtisch nöd uf de Teppich gschtelt.	Uf em Teppich ligged Schpilsache.

## B2.1, B2.2

(prepositions marked)

Latifah writes...

Ich schtaa-n **im** Migros / **uf** em Zentraalplatz / **hinder** em Baanhoof.

Ich gaa **hinder** de Park / **i** d Hauptschtraass / **uf** d Brugg.

Friederike writes...

Bisch **vor** em Kafi? / **zwüschet** em Schpilplatz und de Schuel? / **am** Seeufer aachoo?

Lauff **a** s Ändi **vo** de Schtraass. / **vor** de Manor. / **zwüschet** Haltischtel und Kiosk.

## B3.1

suuber - dräckig

zueverlässig - unzuverlässig

vermiete - miete

unordentlich - ordentlich

Noibou - Altbou

gföörlich - harmlos

unmöbliert - möbliert

kontaktfroidig - verschlosse

mürrisch - uufgschtelt

läbig - toot

## B4

I oisere noie Wonig häts e groossi Chuchi.

Uf mim Balkoon schiint de ganz Tag d Sune!

Wil de Pablo im Härbscht go raise gaat, tueter sis Zimer undervermiete.

Zum Glück häts für Chind i de Nööchi en grosse Schpilplatz.

Känsch du d Aigetümerin vo däm Huus?

Ui, s Baad isch megadräckig, das muesi unbedingt no putze hüüt!

Chasch du hüt bitte no s Glas entsorge?

Wo züglisch ane?

Während em Schtudium hät d Thais no inere 4er-WG gläbt.

Isch das s Won- oder s Schlaaffzimer?

## C1

Dialogue translation:

Gül and Walter are looking for a flat. Today they are looking at a flat where the viewing date was already stated in the advert. The landlord welcomes them at the door.

**V:** Good afternoon. Are you here for the viewing?

**G:** Yes, exactly! May we come in?

**V:** Of course, come along. There are already a few people here.

**G:** Do we have to take off our shoes?

**V:** No no, that's not a problem.

**G:** Look, Walter, the view from the window is really beautiful.

**W:** Yes, but it must get really hot here in summer. This is the south side.

**G:** Better hot and beautiful than cool and ugly, right?

**W:** Hmm... The kitchen is a bit older, the way it looks.

**G:** Come on, the main thing is that it works! I think the quality makes a good impression. - Excuse me, can I ask you something else?

**V:** Yes, sure.

**G:** When was the kitchen made? It looks great.

**V:** It must be about 20 years old now, but it's still in perfect working order. We only had to replace the fridge last year.

**W:** I also have a question. There is no window in the bathroom, doesn't it get moldy?

**V:** Not yet, no. You simply must not forget to switch on the ventilation.

**W:** Ah, all right then, thank you.

## C1.1

1. de Walter, 2. d Gül, 3. d Gül

## C1.2

1. Baad (e), 2. Balkoon (b), 3. Schtube (c, f), 4. Chäler (d, g), 5. Chuchi (a)

## C1.3

Individual solutions.

## C2

Translation of the instructions:

The bed frame is placed against the wall on the left in the center of the room.

You can place the wardrobe units to the right of the bed.

Place the sofa in front of the window.

Place the mattress on top of the bed frame.

Put the two bags under the table in the kitchen.

You can put the three boxes between the bed and the sofa.

You can carefully place the mirror behind the sofa.

## C2.1

i d Mitti, a d Wand, näbet s Bett, vor s Faischtär, uf de Bettroscht, i de Chuchi, under de Tisch, zwüschet s Bett, hinder s Sofa

## C2.2



## C2.3

Customised solutions, example of instructions:

S Sofa chunt under s Faischter. De Färnsee schtelsch uf d Komoode. D Madratze chasch deet hine a d Wand schtele. De Schpiegel chunt über em Färnsee a d Wand. Die Chischtene chömed i d Chuchi. Dää Schtuel chöntsch näbed de Chuchitisch tue.



# C3

Transcription and translation of the dialogue:  
De Erkin und de Gion woned nanig lang zäme. S chunt zum erschte Schritiit.

<b>E:</b>	Die Undsghi uf em Sofa isch scho diir, oder?	The panties on the sofa are yours, aren't they?
<b>G:</b>	Ja ee, wisoo?	Yes, of course, why?
<b>E:</b>	Si liit aifecht scho es paar Tääg dette und gseet uus, wi wän si eender i d Wösch sötti...	They've just been lying there for a few days and look like they should rather be in the wash...
<b>G:</b>	Aa, easy, ich cha si scho wägtue.	Ah, easy, I can put them away already.
<b>E:</b>	Ja, das wäär no guet... und eerlich gsait, bim nööch-schte Maal gärn echli früener.	Yes, that would be good... and to be honest, next time rather a little earlier.
<b>G:</b>	Hei, s isch nur en Undsghi. Die häsch doch scho mal gsee, oder?	Hey, it's just a pair of panties. You've seen them before, haven't you?
<b>E:</b>	Schoo, aber wän diis Züügs so lang umeliit, das isch doch gruusig! Du gseesch das irgend-wie nööd, aber das Tassli schtaat imfal au scho eewigs am Faischter. Das isch scho iitröchnet, das bringsch gar nüm sauber.	Yes, but if your stuff has been lying around for so long, it's disgusting! You can't see it, but that cup there has been standing by the window for ages too. It's already dried out, you can't get it clean anymore.
<b>G:</b>	Jetzt aber langsam, de Här! I de Duschi mues nämlich imer iich diini Haar wägmache, wil d nöd richtig luegsch. Isch das öppe nöd gruusig?	Slow down now, mister! I always have to clean up your hair in the shower because you don't look properly. Isn't that disgusting?
<b>E:</b>	Haar? Ich ha doch gar nüm so vil Haar.	Hair? I don't have that much hair anymore.
<b>G:</b>	Aso du häsch sicher no gnuieg Haar zum miir s Läbe schwäär z mache.	Well, you certainly have enough hair to make my life difficult.
<b>E:</b>	Aso guet, ich mues schiin-bar besser luege. Aber du muesch au dini Sache nöd überal ligge laa.	Alright, apparently I need to look better. But you shouldn't leave your things everywhere either.
<b>G:</b>	Ich wird s versueche. Sim-mer wider guet?	I'll give it a try. Are we good again?
<b>E:</b>	Jaa. Hei sorry, ich han en schtränge Taag ghaa. Aso chum, ich nim s Tassli, du d Undsghi.	Yeah. Hey sorry, I've had a stressful day. So come on, I'll take the cup, you take the panties.

## C3.1

True, True, False, False, False, True

# C3.2

Exemplary solution (other wordings possible):

Das isch en Bütschgi. Er liit am Faischter. Er sött in Güsel. Das sind Büecher. Si liiget uf em Färnsee. Si sötted i s Regaal. Das isch es Chüssi. Es liit am Bode. Es sött uf s Sofa. Das isch e Zigi. Si liit uf em Tisch. Si sött in Äschebächer. Das sind Söcke. Si liind uf em Sofa. Si sötted i d Wösch.

# C4

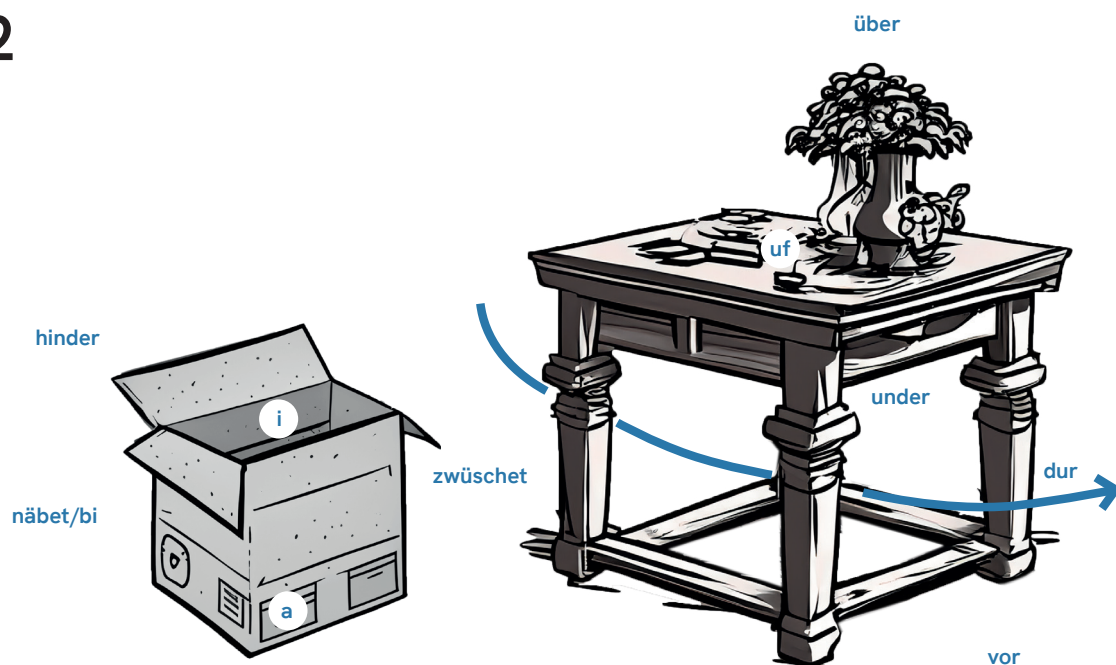
Translation of the dialogue:

*At Easter, many people in Switzerland hide eggs and chocolate bunnies for others to find for fun. Meryam and Didi are siblings and are currently looking for eggs at home that their parents have hidden. But a few are still missing!*

<b>M:</b>	Have you looked on the television yet?
<b>D:</b>	Yes, there aren't any on it. Didi points at the sofa.
<b>D:</b>	But there was one underneath!
<b>M:</b>	Very good. And behind it?
<b>D:</b>	Wait a minute... yay, there's a rabbit! But that's mine now.
<b>M:</b>	Hey, and me?
<b>D:</b>	You have to find it yourself! Why don't you pull out the drawer? <i>Meryam takes a look inside.</i>
<b>M:</b>	No, there's nothing inside.
<b>D:</b>	Hmm... behind the flower pots?
<b>M:</b>	No... but there's another one in between, a red one!
<b>D:</b>	And what's that box on the cupboard? Why don't you take it down? Meryam has to stretch herself quite a bit.
<b>M:</b>	Whew... Ha, there's my rabbit in there! And there's also something shiny next to it...
<b>D:</b>	What is it? I can't get there, you get it, please!
<b>M:</b>	Wow... ah, these are just the garlands from my birthday!

## C4.1

Adverb	Frage	Genauer gesagt
druuf	where?	uf em Färnsee
drunder	where?	under em Sofa
dehinder	where?	hinder em Sofa
use	where from?	us em Chaschte /...
ine	where to?	i d Schublade
dezwüschet	where?	zwüschet de Blueme-töpf
abe	where from?	vom Chaschte
dine	where?	i de Schachtle
denäbet	where?	näbet de Schachtle
ane	where to?	a d Schachtle



## C4.4

aberüere	Chasch mer de Schlüssel aberüere?	Can you throw the key down for me?
usebringe	Sone fuule Siech, är wott nöd emal de Güsel usebringe!	What a lazy guy, he won't even take out the rubbish!
durefaare	Es hät jetzt en noie Velotunel. Geschter bini duregfaare.	There is now a new cycle tunnel. I cycled through it yesterday.
inegüüsse	Lueg die Glesli, da chasch nacher d Gonfi inegüüsse.	You can pour the jam into the jars here later.
fürelauffe	Villich hät s wiiter voore no Plätz, ich lauff emal füre.	Maybe there are still seats available further ahead, I'll walk to the front.
hindere-schiebe	Mer sötted de Färnsee no chlii hindereschiebe.	We should push the television back a bit.
übereruumme	Ruum emal dis Züügs übere, me hät ja gar kän Platz mee zum Ässe.	Move your stuff over, there's nowhere to eat.
anehocke	Dörfi da anehocke?	May I sit down here?
ufelupfe	Die Halter sind vil z hööch, ich chaa mis Velo da nöd alai ufelupfe!	These holders are far too high, I can't lift my bike up there on my own!

Almost all adverbs from the list can be combined with almost all verbs. To name just a few examples: *anegüüsse* 'to pour sth here', *dureschiebe* 'to push through', *inehocke* 'to go sit inside / to attend', *hinderebringe* 'to bring sth to the back', *überefaare* 'to drive across', *uferüere* 'to throw sth onto/up to', *umelauffe* 'to walk around', *drunderruumme* 'to move sth away/under', *abelupfe* 'to lift sth down', *useschüsse* 'to throw sth out', *fürebringe* 'to bring sth up front/to the front'. Only *wickle* is difficult to combine with other adverbs.

## C4.5

Kombination	Meaning	Translation Example Sentence
1. druuschoo	to understand	Sorry, I don't understand this book.
2. umehange	to laze around	On Sunday we just lazed around at home.
3. anebringe	to manage (to do) sth	I wanted to bake a cake, but I didn't manage to get it right.
4. draabliibe	to pursue sth	You have to pursue your studies now!
5. fürechoo	to appear	Yesterday I tidied up. The things that have turned up!
6. durezie	to see sth through	She sees her project through without listening to anyone.
7. devooschoo	to get away with sth	This guy evaded millions and still got away with it.
8. abebräche	to simplify	I think the phrasing is too complicated, we need to simplify it a bit more.

## D1.1

1f, 2e, 3a, 4g, 5d, 6b, 7c, 8h

## D1.2

Correct solutions:

ab Auguscht, 1600 Franke, S isch ire z tüür worde, Si chönted sich s laische, en Balkoon

Transcription and translation:

L: Hoi Friederike, ich bi s, d Latifah. Ich ha ghöört, du züglisch?	Hello Friederike, it's me, Latifah. I hear you're about to move?
---	--

<b>F:</b> Hoi Latifah! Jaa, ich zie-n uus, aber erscht im August.	Hello Latifah! Yes, I'm moving out, but not until August.
<b>L:</b> Aa, das isch scho mal guet. Mir würed ois nämlich für d Wonig intressiere. Dörfi di es paar Sache frööge?	Ah, that's good. We're actually interested in the flat. May I ask you a few things?
<b>F:</b> Ja, ee.	Yes, of course.
<b>L:</b> Aso August isch fix, hä?	So, August is set, right?
<b>F:</b> Du chasch scho au schpööter iizie, aber dän müesteder d Wonig läär zale.	You could also move in later, but then you would have to pay for the empty flat.
<b>L:</b> Wivil choschtetsi überhaupt?	How much does it cost anyway?
<b>F:</b> 1600 Franke. Durum gaani au use, für mich alaige ischs z tüür worde. Aber für oi müestis ja gaa.	1600 Swiss francs. That's why I'm moving out, it's become too expensive just for myself. But it would work for you, I suppose.
<b>L:</b> Ja, danke s scho. Gäl es sind drüü Zimer?	Yes, I think so. It's three rooms, right?
<b>F:</b> Genau. Kä Balkoon, aber en Eschtrich.	Correct. No balcony, but an attic.
<b>L:</b> Okay. Was hani no ghaa... a ja, wi isch de Vermieter esoo?	Okay. What else did I have... ah yes, what's the landlord like?
<b>F:</b> S isch en privaate Aigentümer, durum chani au en Naachmieter sueche. Sone-n alte Zürcher, ich find rächt en härzige. Isch au fair, wän a de Wonig mal öppis mues gmacht wärde.	It's a private owner, that's why I can look for a next tenant. He's an old local, I find him quite nice. He's also quite fair when something needs to be done in the flat.
<b>L:</b> Das töönt aber guet. Chöntemer äch morn oder so mal verbiichoo?	That sounds good though. Could we perhaps come by tomorrow or so?

## D2.1

1. i d Chuchi
2. i d Schtube/ i s Wonzimmer
3. i s Baad
4. im Chäler
5. im Auto
6. i s Schlaaffzimer
7. im Lift
8. i s Chinderzimer
9. in Gang
10. i de Chuchi

## D2.2

1. Was isch i дәre Chischte? - Gschir.
2. Was isch i дәm Sack? - Lampene.
3. Was isch i дәne Chischtene? - Chlaider.
4. Was isch i дәm Täschli? - Zaabürschtl.
5. Was isch i дәne Seck? - Schpilsache.
6. Was isch i дәre Schachtel? - Schmuck.
7. Was isch i дәre Chischte? - Pfanene.

## D3.1

Dialogue in the correct order with translation:

<b>1 H:</b> Du Schatz, chasch em Farid bitte d Windle wächsle?	Darling, would you please change Farid's nappies?
<b>2 R:</b> Wän i wüssti, wo si wider sind, chönti scho...	Yes, if I knew where they were again, I could...
<b>3 H:</b> Los, ich tue si imer a de gliich Ort, i de Chaschte-n im Baad, ich weiss au nöd, wiso das si nacher umewandered...	I always put them in the same place, in the cupboard in the bathroom, I don't know why they grow legs afterwards...
<b>4 R:</b> Aa, ha si gfunde. Häsch duu kä Ziit?	Ah, I found them. You haven't got time?
<b>5 H:</b> Ich bi da gad oises Znacht am Choche, chasch gärn übernäa...	I'm cooking our dinner right now, you're welcome to take over...
<b>6 R:</b> Ja soo... Aso chum, Farid, mir sueched ois es schööns Plätzli.	I see... Well, come on, Farid, let's find a nice spot.
<b>7 H:</b> D Wickeldecki isch glaub no im Wonzimer.	I think the baby blanket is still in the living room.
<b>8 R:</b> Jaa, ha si, märsi.	Yes, got it, thanks.
<b>9</b> De Chlii faat aafa schreie.	The little one starts to scream.
<b>10 R:</b> Ja waas, wottsch lieber de Papi? Dä isch jetzt aber i de Chuchi, da müemer dich erscht suubermache...	What now, would you rather have your dad? But he's in the kitchen at the moment, so we need to clean you up first...

## D3.2

i de Chuchi, im Baad, im Wonzimer, d Rozhan, de Farid

## D3.3

Individual solutions.

# Unit 6

## A1

Translation of the dialogues:

<b>G:</b>	Hey, how are you?
<b>S:</b>	Great... On cloud number 9!
<b>G:</b>	Tell me!
<b>S:</b>	I'm in love!
<b>G:</b>	No! Who is it?
<b>S:</b>	A new colleague at work. Rather a quiet, decent one, but you know my preferences... his name is Ruedi!
<b>G:</b>	And you tackled poor Ruedi straight away?
<b>S:</b>	Yes, no, well, not immediately... But last week I asked him about going to the cinema and he was absolutely pleased.
<b>G:</b>	And then you got closer.
<b>S:</b>	Yes, but only because we shared the popcorn.
<b>G:</b>	And now, are you together?
<b>S:</b>	I don't know... It feels like it.
<b>G:</b>	Hey, cool!
<b>R:</b>	Hi, how's life?
<b>N:</b>	Fine, I'm off today. You?
<b>R:</b>	Ugh, I'm in a really shitty mood. Yael has broken up with me.
<b>N:</b>	Oh, shit. How long were you together?
<b>R:</b>	Almost two years.
<b>N:</b>	What a pity. What happened?
<b>R:</b>	She just thought I was too immature for her.
<b>N:</b>	But you're super solid.
<b>R:</b>	Yeah, don't ask. The point is that she desperately wants children. But sorry, I just don't fancy having kids!
<b>N:</b>	You're just not ready for it yet.
<b>R:</b>	Are you kidding?
<b>N:</b>	Want to come over for a beer?
<b>R:</b>	Thanks bro. I'll be there in 20 minutes.

## A2

Shirin (a (female) friend / *Koleegin*) → Guanghao  
 Guanghao (a (male) friend / *Koleeg*) → Shirin  
 Ruedi (the boyfriend / *Fründ*) → Shirin  
 Yael (the ex girlfriend / *Ex*) → Reza  
 Reza (a (male) friend / *Koleeg*) → Nahom  
 Nahom (a (male) friend / *Koleeg*) → Reza

## A3

*verliebt* 'in love', *sich froie* 'to be pleased', *truurig* 'sad',  
*wüetig* 'angry', *laidtue* 'to be sorry'.

Other translations are possible.

## A4

1b, 2a, 3a, 4b, 5b.

In Switzerland, many people think that there is no "normal" or "right" behaviour when it comes to the topics discussed – you do it the way you like it. Many people prefer to talk about relationship issues with same-sex friends, like Reza, but some people do it like Shirin. Both can start or end a relationship. When a relationship ends, some people may pretend they don't care, while others talk openly about their feelings.

## B1

1. gächts, seg
2. gsäächsch
3. seg
4. gäbid
5. machid

## B2.1

1d, 2e, 3a, 4c, 5b, 6f, 7j, 8g, 9i, 10h

## B2.2

Many solutions are possible, here are a few examples:

Wän d mer besser wüsch zuelose, hettsch güsst, das i min Schlüssel vergässe ha.  
 Wän si hüt i d Feerie chönt, wüsi diräkt a s Meer faare.  
 Wän ich nöd inere feschte Bezieig wäär, wüsch mer mega gfale.  
 Wämmer Chind hetted, hettemer vil weniger Ziiit für ois.

## B2.3

1. Mir hetted s güsst, wän si iri Partnerin betroge hett.
2. S hett vil mee Schpaass gmacht, wän du au debii gsi wäärsch.
3. Wän d dir weniger Sorge gmacht hettsch, hettsch vil mee erraicht.
4. Wän si baidi nöd eso ifersüchtig gsii wäred, wär doch die Bezieig supper gloffe.
5. Wän ich riich gsii wäär, hetti minere Mueter es Huus kaufft.
6. Wän er weniger gschritte hetted, wäri megaglücklich gsii.
7. Wän ich mis Portmonnaie verloore hett, hettsch du halt für ois müese zale.

# B3

1. laidtaa
2. verliebt
3. unriiff
4. ruige
5. froie
6. zäme sind
7. Goofe
8. Voorliebi
9. Schluss gmacht
10. knischeret

# B4

1. Ich ha ghöört, d Zarmine und d Emma heigid sich tränt.  
Wän das schtimt, würs mer mega laidtue für si!
2. De Ardzan hät verzelt, er heg scho wider e noii Fründin.  
Wän iich sini Ex wär, hetts mi sicher härt gnoo.
3. Geschter häts ghaiss, em Michi sini Eltere segid wider  
zämechoo. Wän das schtimt, würs mi totaal für in froiel
4. Öpper hät gsait, Verliebtsii seg wi-n e Chranket. Wän das  
esoo wär, wär i gärn emal wider chrank!
5. D May Myat hät verzelt, de Tim heg si betroge. Wen ich sii  
wär, hetti scho lang mit däm arschloch Schluss gmacht.
6. De Paolo hät mer gschribe, er heg sich i mich verliebt. Wän  
das schtimt, wäri uf Wolche 7!
7. Ich ha ghöört, di baide hüüratid däa Sumer. Wän s dän e  
Hochzig git, wäri daa dezue au gärn iiglade.
8. Im Büro häts ghaiss, de Tuân heg öppis mit em Chef am  
Lauffe. Wän iich de Chef wür date, wür sich das glaub  
falsch aafüüle.

# C1

«Schriibe» by Phenomden from the album «Gangdalang» (2008., by courtesy of POT – Publishing One Ton. Transcription and free translation by voCHabular.

Ja, Ja-ja-ja-hei	Ya, ya-ya-ya-hey
Glaub, ich mues der schriibe,	I think I gotta write to you,
ja	yes
Glaub, ich mues der schriibe	I think I gotta write to you
Ja-ha, ja-ha-ha-hou	Ya-ha, ya-ha-ha-ho
Los mini Naachricht, jou	Listen to my message, yo

[Refrain:]	[Chorus:]
Ich glaub, ich mues der schriibe (schriibe) Das i imer no a dich dänk Schick es SMS diräkt i dini Händ Ich glaub, ich mues der schriibe Das du waisch, das ich dich nöd vergässe han Nai, das hebt es Läbe lang Ich mues der schriibe Das i imer no a dich dänk Schick es SMS rund um di halbi Wält Ich glaub, ich mues der schriibe (schriibe) Wil ich wett der es Läbeszei- che gää Han din Kontakt no gschpai- cheret S isch aigentlich Waansin Das mir usenand sind Ich lang mer mängmal an Grind	I think I gotta write to you That I'm still thinking about you Send a text message straight into your hands I think I gotta write to you So you know I haven't forgot- ten you No, this will last a lifetime I gotta write to you That I'm still thinking about you Send a text message halfway round the world I think I gotta write to you Because I want to give you a sign of life I still have your contact saved  It's actually insane That we're apart I sometimes get mad at myself

Doch aigentlich machts Sinn Dän miir händ zämeghört wie Lüüt wo verwandt sind Doch anschiinend häts nö- t glangt Und mier händ de Rank nö- d gfunde Hüt ischs es Dischtanz-Ding Wil du nöd daa und ich nöd in Ängland bin Jede macht sis Ding Und es isch gar nüm schlim Doch hüt Nacht chunsch mer wider mal in Sin Jou ich sing	But actually it makes sense Because we belonged together like people Who are kin But apparently it wasn't enough And we didn't find the place Today it's a distance thing Because you're not here and I'm not in England Everybody's doing their thing And it's not so bad anymore But tonight you're on my mind again Yo, I'm singing
---	--

[Refrain]	[Chorus]
Ich wett wüsse, wie s dir gaat Ich schtel der nur die Fraag Han niemert so gliebt ghaa Und bi drum intrassiert draa Ich wett nöd, das es schief- gaat Drum schriibi das Lied grad Wil was i mim Brieff s chaat Des passt uf kai SIM-Card Mit dir isches gail gsii Liebi, nöd Tailziit 100-prozäntig Ich säg der, das waissi I han müese elai sii S isch besser für baid gsii Z vil Wunde baidsiitig Doch d Ziit hailt si	I'd like to know how you're doing I'm just asking you this ques- tion Never loved anyone like you And that's why I'm interested I don't want it to go wrong That's why I'm writing this song Because what's in my letter won't fit on a SIM card It was awesome with you Love, not part-time 100 per cent I'm telling you, I know I had to be alone It was better for both of us Too many wounds on both sides But time is healing them

[Refrain]	[Chorus]
-----------	----------

Jou, ich wett, das du waisch Vermissse din Gaischt Wett wüsse, was du dänksch und Was du überlaisch Ich ha d Art gärn ghaa So wie du mich gseesch So wie du mit mier redsch Ich fröög mi, hämmer ois z vil gsee S chunt nüme druuf aa Ich lüüte nur aa Ali paar Mönet oder imne halbe Jaar Wott wüsse, was du dänksch Und isch ales klaar Wott numme hin und wider Kontakt haa	Yo, I want you to know I miss your spirit I'd like to know what you think and What you're thinking about I liked the way How you see me How you talk to me I wonder, have we seen each other too much? It doesn't matter anymore I just call Every couple of months or in half a year Want to know what you think And is everything okay Just want to be in touch now and then
---	---

[Refrain x 2]

[Chorus x 2]

## C1.1

1. They were together once, but the relationship fell apart for several reasons.
2. It wasn't just an affair or a casual liaison, but an intense relationship.
3. *Mit dir isches gail gsii, Liebi nöd Tailziit; das hebt es Läbe lang; mier händ zämeghört wie Lüüt, wo verwandt sind; mir händ de Rank nöd gfunde; han niemert so gliebt ghaa*
4. There are various interpretations for this. In any case, he seems to be nervous – perhaps because the message is so important to him or because he hasn't contacted the other person for a long time.

## C1.2

Suggestion: *Hei du :) Han mich scho eewigs nüm gmolde, aber han i de letschte Ziit oft a dich tänkt. Wie gaats der esoo? Bin erscht grad mal wider am Idaplatz ais go zie und han müese dra danke, wie mer früener uuft deet zäme gsii sind. Vermiss die Ziite und wür dich uugärn mal wider gsee!*

## C1.3

1. gächi
2. müesi
3. heged
4. hebi
5. seged

## C2

Translation of the texts:

We trust each other. For example, he lets me drive his car and I let him drive mine. We could also each go on holiday on our own, that wouldn't be a problem at all.

My girlfriend is constantly worried. If I'm only away for the weekend with friends and don't call in the evening, she thinks I might have had an accident. At least she's not jealous – it doesn't matter whether they're male or female friends!

When I was younger, I once had a very passionate relationship. We both wanted to be together all the time, and when it didn't work out, it was a disaster every time. My boyfriend even used to write me letters!

Yesterday we have been married for a year. I might have forgotten, but my wife remembered and picked up a bunch of flowers. That made me totally happy!

When my mum died it was the worst thing for my father, I think. They had been a couple for thirty years, so it was like suddenly missing an arm or a leg. He hardly spoke for two years afterwards and was always sad.

My girlfriend got really upset last week. She even shouted and threw a book on the floor because of a minor issue. But afterwards she was sorry and apologised. Everything would be fine if only it didn't happen so often!

It sometimes happens to me that I love someone initially and then hate them later. For example, I once had a partner who I thought was the love of my life. But then he cheated on me with another guy, and what's more, it was a friend of ours. I was so angry that all the love just disappeared overnight!

When my husband told me that he wanted to separate, I was totally surprised. I always had the feeling it was going well! If I had known this, I would certainly have done a few things differently.

## C2.1

In the text, words that describe emotions are marked. You will find them in the vocabulary of the Deepen Your Knowledge section.

## C2.2

1c, 2e, 3b, 4g, 5f, 6a, 7d

## C2.3

Here are the statements in the correct form followed by a translation. The added conditions are only examples.

Mir würed enand vertroue, wämmer ois scho lenger käne würed.	We would trust each other if we knew each other longer.
Wän iich so vil alaige-n i de Bärg underwägs wär wi duu, wür sich mini Fründin schtändig Sorge mache. (instead of wür mache also: miechti)	If I were out in the mountains alone as often as you are, my girlfriend would be constantly worried.
Wän si sälber emal mee in Uusgang wür gaa, wär si wenigstens nöd ifersüchtig. (instead of wür gaa also: giengti)	If she went out more often herself, at least she wouldn't be jealous.
Ich hett au emal e seer e liideschaftlichi Bezieig ghaa, wän s mer mini Eltere nöd verbotte hetted.	I would also have had a very passionate relationship once if my parents hadn't forbid-den it.
Wän er a oise Hochzeitstag tänkt hetti, hetts mich mega froit.	If he had remembered our wedding day, it would have made me very happy.
Er wär imer nur truurig gsii, wän er nöd irgendainisch e noii Fründin hett gfunde.	He would have been sad all the time if he hadn't found a new girlfriend at some point.
Wän i das vor foif Jaar gmacht hetti, hett sich mini Fründin mega uufgreet.	If I had done that five years ago, my girlfriend would have been really upset.
Wän si au no Gschir verbroche hetti, hett si s nachane aber groit.	If she had also broken some dishes, she would have been quite sorry afterwards.
Wän miich öpper esoo wür behandle, würi en au zerscht liebe und schpööter hasse.	If someone treated me that way, I would also love him at first and then hate him later.
Wän miich öpper esoo behandlet hetti, wäri so wüetig gsii, das di ganz Liebi ewäg gsii wär.	If someone had treated me that way, I would have been so angry that all the love would have been gone.
Ich wär totaal überrascht gsii, wän min Maa sich hett wele träne.	I would have been totally surprised if my husband wanted to separate.

## C2.4

Exemplary answers with translation:

1. Ich mach mer Sorge um min Vatter, wil er i sim Alter imer no uf de Öpfelbaum schtiigt.	I'm worried about my father because he's still climbing the apple tree at his age.
2. Ich bi zfride mit mim Job, wil de Loon schtimt und s nöd längwiilig wird.	I'm happy with my job because the pay is right and it never gets boring.
3. Ich reg mi über oisi Naachbere-n uuf, wil si schtändig iri Wösch im Wäschhäler vergässed.	I get annoyed with our neighbours because they keep forgetting their laundry in the laundry room.
4. Ich vertrau minere Tante, wil si mer nöd so vil Druck macht wi mini Mueter.	I trust my aunt because she doesn't put as much pressure on me as my mum does.
5. Ich bi schtolz uf mis Grosi, wil si ganz alai gleert hät, es Naatel z bruuche.	I'm proud of my grandma because she learned to use her mobile phone all by herself.
6. Mich hät groit, das i de aint Chund so aagfiele ha.	I was sorry that I snapped at this one customer like that.
7. Ich lieb mini Familie - aifech, wil si mini Familie-n isch! Gärn hani zum Bii-schpil mini Arbetskoleegine, wo mer imer hälfed.	I love my family - simply because they are my family! I like my colleagues at work, for example, who are always helpful.
8. Ich hasse Lüüt, wo Sache verschpräched und dän nöd mached, wil me sich uf die aifech nöd verlaa cha.	I hate people who make promises and then don't keep them. You simply can't rely on them.
9. Ich froi mich amigs über es fains Znacht, wil das de perfäkti Tagesabschluss isch.	I always enjoy a good dinner because it's the perfect way to end the day.
10. Ich bi niidisch uf min Koleeg, wil er im Lotto gunne hät.	I'm envious of a friend of mine because he won the lottery.

## C3

Translation of the texts:

Yesterday at Bilten station, S2 at 7:25h – you, in the red mini skirt, made my day with your incredible smile! Why don't you get in touch, biltenforever@bluewin.ch

See you almost every day on bus no. 340: tall, beige leather jacket, always working on the computer. You've made me really curious... 073 040 22 46

Hey beautiful human being, still can't believe you exist, but miracles do happen! Would you fancy taking the train together once? Mon to Wed on the S14, 8:42h from Wetzikon.

On Thursday, you dropped your wallet at the Zeughaus fountain. When I came to help you, our eyes met... and there was a spark between us! I've lost the note with your number, please come and find me!

You: black hair, a bit curvy, amazingly beautiful green eyes. We see each other every evening between Rautistrasse and Milchbuck and you always give me such a cute look. I'd be delighted if you wrote sometime! myfairlady@post.ch

Yesterday we only exchanged a few words in front of the Coop at Sternen. Now I can't get you out of my head! Fancy a coffee tomorrow at 5 in the same place?

You listen to music every morning on tram no. 5. You have a great taste! May I listen into your world? You can text me at 073 088 34 91.

## C3.1

1. **öpperem de Taag versüesse:** 'to make someone's day, to brighten up someone's day'
2. **Wunder gits imer wider:** 'even unbelievable things do happen now and then'
3. **s hät gfunkt:** 'two people are immediately attracted to one another'
4. **es paar Wörter wächsle:** 'to exchange a few words'
5. **öpper nüm us em Chopf usebringe:** 'to think of nothing but one particular person'

## C3.2

Individual solutions.

## C4.1

Transcript and translation of the audio texts (incl. questions and correct answers):

	<i>D Louise isch d Wösch am Mache. De Faizal hät öppis uussetze.</i>	<i>Louise is doing the laundry. Faizal has something to criticise.</i>
<b>F:</b>	<i>Hei, du laisch imfal mini Tiischis scho imer echli koomisch zäme...</i>	Hey, by the way, you always fold my T-shirts a bit oddly...
<b>L:</b>	<i>Waisch was? Legg si doch sälber zäme, dän sindsi perfäkt.</i>	You know what? Why don't you put them together yourself, then they'll be perfect.
<b>F:</b>	<i>Aa, so hani das nöd gmaint...</i>	Ah, I didn't mean it that way...
<b>L:</b>	<i>Wi häsch es dän genau gmaint?</i>	Then how did you mean it?

Question: *De Faizal wür sini Tiischis lieber sälber zämelegge. Schtimt das?*

Answer: *Nai.*

	<i>D Oleksandra und d Tina hocked im Wonzimer. Da falt de Tina öppis uuf.</i>	<i>Oleksandra and Tina are sitting in the living room. Tina notices something.</i>
<b>T:</b>	<i>Lueg emal de Schtaub... hät scho lang niemer me putzt.</i>	Look at that dust... it's been a while since someone cleaned.
<b>O:</b>	<i>Hm. Also iich bi vor zwai Wuche-n emal mit em Schtaubsuuger dure, jetzt wärsch aigetlich du wider a de Rei.</i>	Hm. Well, I went through with the Hoover a fortnight ago, now it would actually be your turn again.
<b>T:</b>	<i>Aa, Mischt, ich han überhaupt kä Ziiit ghaa... chasch das nöd duu mache?</i>	Ah, shoot, I didn't have any time at all... could you possibly do it?
<b>O:</b>	<i>Ich han au nöd mee Ziiit. Mir chönd höchschtens tuusche, dän machsch du s WC.</i>	I don't have the time either. We can swap if you want, then you do the toilet.

Question: *D Tina hät vergässe, s Wonzimer z putze. Schtimt das?*

Answer: *Jaa.*

Question: *D Tina sött uusserdäm no s WC putze. Schtimt das?*

Answer: *Nai.*



<i>D Hülya und de Nico beschprached, wi si de nöchschd Taag organisiered.</i>	<i>Hülya and Nico discuss how to organise the next day.</i>
<b>N:</b> Chasch du morn de Chlii wider in Chindsgi bringe?	Could you take the little one to kindergarten again tomorrow?
<b>H:</b> Das isch eender schlächt, ich ha Früeschicht, waischs ja.	That's rather difficult. I'm on the early shift, as you know.
<b>N:</b> Okay, dän mueni Bschaid gää, das i echli schpööter i s Büro chume.	Okay, then I'll have to let them know that I'll be in the office a little later.
<b>H:</b> Genau. Das chöntemer aigetlich imer esoo mache.	Yeah. We could actually always do it like this.

Question: Morn bringt de Nico sin Soon in Chindsgi. Schtimt das?

Answer: Jaa.

<i>De Lars pflägt sini Mueter dihai. D Azyan, sini Frau, isch grad haichoo.</i>	<i>Lars is caring for his mother at home. Azyan, his wife, just got home.</i>
<b>L:</b> Duu, wäg hüt zaabig... mir händ ja aigetlich in Uusgang wele.	Hey, about tonight... We originally planned to go out together, right?
<b>A:</b> Ja, und?	Yes, so?
<b>L:</b> Em Mami gaats schlächt, ich glaub, es sött öpper daa bliibe und zu ire luege.	My mum is not well, I think someone should stay here and look after her.
<b>A:</b> Uff, das sind ja Naachrichte... Ich ha scho de ganz Taag gschaffed imfal!	Ugh, that's bad news... I've been working all day already!

Question: De Lars wott, das d Azyan hüt zaabig dihai bliibt.

Answer: Nai.

Question: D Azyan hät kä Luscht, zu irere Schwigermueter z luege. Schtimt das?

Answer: Jaa.

## C4.2

These sentences could be added at the end of the four dialogues. Of course, many others are also possible!

Faizal: Hei sorry, ich bi imfal megafroo, das du das machsch.

Tina: Also guet, s WC isch mer imer no lieber als da i alne-n Egge-n umezsuuge.

Nico: Vo mir uus gärn, käs Problemem.

Lars: Hei, ich bi genauso müed. Drum hani aigetlich au wele voorschlaa, das iich daa bliibe.

## C4.3

Individual solutions.

## C5

«Angelina» by Dabu Fantastic from the album «Drinks» (2010., courtesy of Dabu Fantastic, Gadget Records and Capitano Music. Transcription and free translation by voCHabular.

Angelina, du waisch doch me trifft sich zwaimal und bim zwaite Maal richtig Din einsame Blick isch So frei, so allai, so vil Wildnis Angelina, mir zwai i de Sek I oisem Dorf ooni Chlaider verschteckt En Sumer so vil haisser als jetzt Nur mir zwai, bis uf e Rais bisch im Härbscht Usem Nüüt gsee-ni dich a de Baar Lueg di Hügel, di gliichlige Haar und So wie früener klimpere laa So wie früener verschwinde- mer grad	Angelina, you know people always meet twice and the second time properly Your lonely expression is so free, so alone, so wild Angelina, the two of us at school Hidden in our village naked A summer so much hotter than now Just the two of us, until you went on a journey in autumn Out of nowhere I see you at the bar Look at the hills, the same hair and Like then, let's wink at each other And let's get out of here
---	---

[Refrain:]	[Chorus:]
Wil mir händ so vil Liebi z gää Als wäär das öppis, wo s Läbe lang hebt Aber morn bisch wider wäg Wil uufenand gaats, aber näbenand nöd Angelina, s isch als a dir maagisch Dini Huut, dini Wort, dini Haar frisch Als fantastisch, solange s nöd mee als en Taag isch Damals de Schritti i de Chuchi Taag zwai und de Schritti uf em Ggutschi Taag drüü schtiigt schrittiend in Bus ii Taag vier isch d Magii wider furt gsii Us em Nüüt gsee-ni dich a de Baar Lueg die Hügel, die gliichlige Haar Und klaar, das i noi verzau- beret bin Und dir gaats genauso wi mir	Because we have so much love to give Like it's something that lasts a lifetime But tomorrow you'll be gone again Because it works on top of each other, but not next to each other Angelina, everything about you is magical Your skin, your words, your fresh hair All is fantastic, unless it's more than one day Back then, the argument in the kitchen Day two, fighting on the couch Day three, discussing on the bus Day four, and the magic was gone Out of nowhere I see you at the bar Look at the hills, the same hair and And of course I'm newly en- chanted And you feel the same as I do

[Refrain]	[Chorus]
Uufenand gaats, aber näbe- nand nöd Uufenand gaats, aber näbe- nand nöd Uufenand gaats, aber näbe- nand nöd	It works on top of each other, but not next to each other It works on top of each other, but not next to each other It works on top of each other, but not next to each other

[Refrain]	[Chorus]
-----------	----------

## C5.1

1. 'you went on a journey'
2. literally 'out of nowhere', meaning 'suddenly'
3. to add: (*d Wimpere*) *klimpere laa*, literally 'to bat the eyelashes', meaning 'to move the eyelashes up and down to flirt'
4. 'to last a lifetime'

## C5.2

Here is a suggestion - many other solutions are possible:

1. «Me trifft sich zwaimal und bim zwaite Maal richtig»: Wän sich zwai Lüüt zum erschte Maal gsend, verliebedsi sich vilich scho, aber erscht bim zwaite Maal händsi Sex.
2. «Ufenand gaats, aber näbenand nöd»: «Ufenand» bedüütet 'ufenand ligge, Sex haa', «näbenand» schtaat für 'näbenand gaa, e Bezieg haa'. Im Lied gaats um e Situation, wo zwai Lüüt im Bett supper klarchömed aber usserhalb nöd.

## D1.1

1. Maa, 2. Fründine, 3. Ehepaar, 4. Fründ, 5. Koleegin, 6. Frau, 7. Gschpäänli, 8. Koleeg

## D1.2

1. seg (< sii), 2. chömid (< choo), 3. gsääch (< gsee), 4. heg (< haa), 5. tüeg (< tue), 6. gächid (< gaa), 7. chön (< chöne), 8. machi (< mache)

## D2.1

1. Si dänkt imer no vil drüber naa.
2. D Bezieg zwüsched Chind und Eltere ändered sich s Läbe lang nöd.
3. Iri Mueter isch zunere Ziiit gschorbe, wo s niemer tänkt hetti.
4. Mir ischs uf s Maal seer schlächt ggange.
5. D Devi cha jetzt aanää, das iri Mueter nüme daa isch.

## D2.2

1. Sorge, 2. Froid, 3. truurig, 4. zfride, 5. hässig (or also wüetig, verrückt), 6. schtolz, 7. roit, 8. verliebt

## D3.1

Answers to the question:

1. Lilly, 2. Tosinê, 3. Lilly, 4. Lilly, 5. Tosinê

Transcription and translation of the dialogue:

<b>T:</b> Und, ischs guet gsii geschter Aabig?	So Lilly, was it good last night?
<b>L:</b> Jaa, de Film isch imfal Hamer gsii, schaad, bisch nöd mitchoo!	Yes, the film was really great, it's a shame you didn't come along!

<b>T:</b> Nacher bisch aber zimli schpaat haichoo, oder?	But you got home quite late after that, didn't you?
<b>L:</b> Jaa, ich bi ja mit de Nina ggange und wil mer ois so lang nöd gsee händ, simmer nach em Film no ais go zie.	Yes, I was out with Nina and because we hadn't seen each other for so long, we went for a drink after the film.
<b>T:</b> Du und d Nina.	You and Nina.
<b>L:</b> Jaa, wisoo?	Yes, why?
<b>T:</b> Ja duu, ich ha mer mega Sorge gmacht, hetsch ja wenigstens no chöne schriibe.	Because I got quite worried, you could at least have written.
<b>L:</b> Also 10i isch jetzt nanig d Ziiit, wo me sich aafaat Sorge mache, nöd? Oder bisch äch ifersüchtig?	Well, ten isn't the time to start worrying yet, is it? Or are you jealous?
<b>T:</b> Nai, sicher nöd... wän i güsst hetti, das d Nina mit debii gsii isch...	No, not at all... if I had known that you were with Nina...
<b>L:</b> Also doch! Häsch du wükli s Gfüül, ich gaan i s Kino und triff mi nacher no mit mim haimliche Flirt?	So you were jealous! Do you really think I'm going to the cinema and then meet up with my secret flirt afterwards?
<b>T:</b> Aso chum jetzt, muesch ja nöd gad uusflippe.	Come on, you don't have to freak out right away.
<b>L:</b> Mol, muesi! S nerft mi nämlich mega, das du mir aifech nöd vertrousch! Wo vor zwai Wuche s Verainsnacht echli lenger ggangen isch, häsch au scho so koomisch taa!	Yes, I have to! It really annoys me that you just don't trust me! When the association dinner went on a little longer a couple weeks ago, you were already acting like that!
<b>T:</b> Lueg, ich ha dich aifech z gärn. Wän i nöd wais, was loos isch, chömed mer vo ganz alai so Gedanke...	Look, I just love you too much. When I don't know what's going on, thoughts like this come to me all by themselves...
<b>L:</b> Okay, das isch ja uf en Art no härzig, aber fröög iich jedes Maal, wän duu mit de Koleege an See gaasch, was ales passiert isch? Nai, wil so vil Freiheit mues sii!	Okay, that's kind of sweet. But do I ask what happened, every time you go to the lake with your friends? No, because that much freedom must be possible!
<b>T:</b> Ich wott der ja au dini Freiheit gar nöd wägnää. Du chasch mache, was d wottscht! Ich wür mi aifech froie, wän i zwüschetdure es Läbeszaiche chönt überchoo.	I don't want to take away your freedom. You can do what you want! I would just be glad if I could get a sign of life from time to time.

## D3.2

1. Wän d uf mich würsch lose, würed so Sache gar nöd ersch passiere.
2. Wän i min Job nöd verloore hetti, wäremmer hüt no zäme.
3. Wän du au emal s Znacht würsch choche, wäri nöd imer so müed.
4. Wän i scho 2019 i d Schwiiz choo wär, hettmer ois nie käne gleert.
5. Wän du nöd eso ifersüchtig wärsch, wär ales supper.

## A1

Translation of the text:

- N:** Hi Safikan, so good to see you. How are you doing?
- S:** Hi Naomi! I'm fine, thanks, just a bit tired because I was celebrating last night. How about you?
- N:** Blame yourself! No, all right. Were you at a birthday party?
- S:** No, we celebrated the result of the vote.
- N:** Ah, great! I would have loved to vote as well...
- S:** Don't you have the right to vote?
- N:** No, I don't have a Swiss passport. It's cool that you can vote on so many things here, but it's sometimes frustrating when you're not allowed to.
- S:** I believe you! It was super important to me to be able to give my vote yesterday. Although, to be honest, I don't go every time.
- N:** Yesterday, only 55% of those eligible to vote did so. So shocking! I can't even imagine that, I would never throw away my vote!
- S:** We have so many votes, and sometimes the topic is so difficult that I don't even have an opinion on it.
- N:** Hm, I kind of understand that. But I think that if you're allowed to, you should also vote - that way you can have an influence on politics!
- S:** You're right, I have to pull myself together. What would you like to drink? I'll have a cappuccino.

## A2

1a, 2b, 3a, 4b, 5b

## A3

1. gfiiret, 2. d Ehe für ali, 3. d Safikan, 4. 55 (foifefüfzg)

## B1.1

Abschtimige, schtimberächtigt, Schtime, degäge gschtume, abschtime

## B1.2

1d, 2c, 3a, 4e, 5b

## B2.1

1. De Solal hetti gärn en Schwiizer Pass, demit er ändlich bi Abschtimige cha mitmache.
2. Mir händ zerschmal gfiiret, wo/wil d Abschtimig aagnoo worde isch.
3. D Martha isch imer guet informiert, obwol si kä Ziitig list.
4. Ich gaa go abschtime, wil das mini Pflicht isch.
5. D Arjetha hät scho Schtunde i Ämter verbraacht, während ire Soon dusse gwartet hät.
6. Mir gönd am Samschtig a d Kliimademo, wil ois das Thema wichtig isch.
7. Bliibsch mängisch dihai, wän s Abschtimigs-Thema dich nöd interessiert?
8. So vil Lüüt rüered iri Schtim furt, obwol si s Schtimrächt händ.
9. Si isch ganz verrückt worde, wo-n i gsait ha, das Politik nüüt für miich isch.
10. S wär cool, wämme i de Politik mee chönt mitbeschtime.

## B2.2

Individual solutions.

## B3.1

1. De Juri sait, das er total fruschriert seg.
2. Häsch ghöört, das d Safikan de Schwiizer Pass beaatrait hät?
3. Mir händ gfrööget, öb d Tatjana defür oder degäge-n isch.
4. Dänkeder, das die Initiative-n e Chance hät?
5. Ich glaub, das die Abschtimig megaknapp wird.
6. D Lüüt wüssed nöd, öb si söled go abschtime.

## C1

Transcription and translation:

- M:** En wunderschööne guete Morge a ali, wo zuelosed! Hüt redemer über Persoonekontrolle uf de Schtraass. Miir vo Radio ForYou händ geschter bis schpaat i de Nacht über das Thema diskutiert und sind ois nöd ainig worde. Durum wämmmer hüt mit oi wiiterrede. Lüüted aa und verzeled ois live i de Sändig, was iir vo Persoone- und Uuswiiskontrolle uf de Schtraass wüssed und was er devoo halted. Mir bitted oi, fründlich und reschpäktvol z bliibe.

Good morning to everyone listening! Today we're talking about identity checks on the street. We at Radio ForYou discussed this topic late into the night yesterday and couldn't come to an agreement. That's why we want to continue talking to you today. Call us and tell us live on air what you know about identity checks on the street and what you think about them. We ask you to remain friendly and respectful.

(S Telefoon schälet.)

(The phone rings.)

<b>M:</b>	Guete Morge, Radio ForYou, wäär isch am Apparaat?	Good morning, Radio ForYou, who's on the line?
<b>J:</b>	Guete Morge, daa isch de Job. Ich wott gärn öppis Wichtigs zu de Kontrolene säge.	Good morning, this is Job, I would like to say something important about the checks.
<b>M:</b>	Hoi Job, das froit ois, um was gaats?	Hi Job, nice to hear from you, so what would you like to tell us?
<b>J:</b>	S isch für niemer aagnääm, wämme vo de Polizei kontrolliert wird. Drum findi s wichtig, das d Polizei das nume sälte macht. Usserdäm waissi, das d Polizei aim imer mues chöne säge, wisoo das si aim kontrolliert. Drum wetti de Zuehöörende mitgää, das me imer nach em Grund vonere Kontrolle fröoge dörf!	It's not pleasant for anyone to be checked by the police. That's why I think it's important that the police only do this rarely. I also know that the police must always be able to tell you why they are stopping you. That's why I would like to tell the audience that you should always ask why you are being checked!
<b>M:</b>	Merci diir, Job! ( <i>S Telefoon schälet.</i> )	Thank you, Job! ( <i>The phone rings.</i> )
<b>M:</b>	Guete Morge, Radio For-You am Apparat.	Good morning, Radio ForYou speaking.
<b>E:</b>	Grüezi, min Name-n isch Elif. Ich bi de gliiche Mainig wi de Job. S isch wükli blööd, wän si aim i de Öffentlichkait useholed. Ali dänked gad, me heg öppis Schlims gmacht. Ich bi sälber scho mal uf de Schtraass kontrolliert worde... Ich dänk, d Polizei hät oft rassistischi Motiiv.	Hello, my name is Elif. I share the same opinion as Job. It's really annoying when they take you out in public. Everyone immediately thinks you've done something bad. I've been checked on the street myself... I think the police often have racist motives.
<b>M:</b>	Merci für dini Maining, Elif. ( <i>S Telefoon schälet.</i> )	Thank you for your opinion, Elif. ( <i>The phone rings.</i> )
<b>J:</b>	Daa isch namal de Job. Hei, Elif, tuet mer laid, aber daa bini gar nöd dinere Mainig. Profiling isch für d Polizei öppis ganz Normaaals. Wän s es Verbräche git, wärded ja au d Uussage vo Züügine und Züüge pruucht, zum es Profil vom Tääter oder vo de Tääterin z erschtele. Für d Ermittlige isch das megawichtig, und ich find, wämme das objektiv macht, ischs au in Ornig.	Job here again. Hey, Elif, I'm sorry, but I don't agree with you at all. Profiling is quite normal for the police. If there is a criminal offence, the statements of witnesses are also used to create a profile of the perpetrator. This is extremely important for the investigation, and I think it's fine if it's done objectively.
<b>M:</b>	Viliich wottsch uf das reagiere, Elif?	Perhaps you would like to respond to this, Elif?

<b>E:</b>	Ja, seer gärn sogaar. Natürlich ischs in Ornig, wän s objektiv isch. D Fraag isch äbe grad, wi oft das daas de Fal isch! Wän zum Biischpil öpper a de Landesgränze nur kontrolliert wird, wil äär oder sii es beschtimts Uussee'e hät, dän isch das rassistischs Profiling und diskriminierend.	Yes, very much so. Of course it's fine if it's objective. The question is: how often is this the case? For example, if someone at the national border is only checked because he or she looks a certain way, then that is racial profiling and discriminatory.
<b>M:</b>	Job, bisch daa demit iiverschtande?	Job, do you agree with that?
<b>J:</b>	Ja, natürlich. Ich dänk au, me mues unbedingt vermeide, das rassistischs Profiling sich i beschtimte Umgäbige feschtsetzt, zum Biischpil bi de Polizei.	Yes, of course. I also think it is essential to prevent racial profiling from becoming established in certain institutions, for example the police.
<b>M:</b>	Merci für oii Mainige, Job und Elif! Seer schpanend, ich wird sicher no vil drüber naadänke. Jetzt isch aber Ziiit für es bizzli Musig!	Thank you for your opinions, Job and Elif! It was very interesting, and I'll definitely be thinking about it a lot. But now it's time for some music!

## C1.1

The impersonal pronoun occurs seven times in total

- J:** wämme [...] kontrolliert wird
- J:** das d Polizei aim imer mues chöne säge
- J:** das me imer [...] fröoge dörf
- E:** wän si aim [...] useholed
- E:** me heg öppis Schlims gmacht
- J:** wämme das objektiv macht
- J:** me mues unbedingt vermeide

## C1.2

For reasons of space, some of the original sentences have been slightly shortened.

Subordinate clause	Main clause
ali, wo zuelosed	Ali losed zue.
was iir vo Persoonekontrolle wüssed	Was wüssed iir vo Persoonekontrolle?
fründlich z bliibe	Bliibed fründlich!
wämme kontrolliert wird	Me wird kontrolliert.
das d Polizei das nume sälte macht	D Polizei macht das nume sälte.
das d Polizei aim mues chöne säge	D Polizei mues aim chöne säge, [...].
wisoo das si aim kontrolliered	Wisoo kontrolliered si aim?
das me imer fröoge dörf	Me dörf imer fröoge!
wän si aim useholed	Si holed aim use.
wän s e Schtraafftaat git	S git e Schtraafftaat.
zum es Profil z erschtele	Me erschelt es Profil.
wämme das objektiiv macht	Me macht das objektiiv.
wän s objektiiv isch	S isch objektiiv.
wi oft das daas de Fal isch	Wi oft isch daas de Fal?
wän öpper kontrolliert wird	Öpper wird kontrolliert.
wil er es beschtimts Uussee'e hät	Er hät es beschtimts Uussee'e.
das rassistisches Profiling sich feschtsetzt	Rassistischs Profiling setzt sich fescht.

## C1.3

Exemplary explanations (other descriptions are possible):

- Binere **Persoonekontrolle** bittet d Polizei im öffentliche Raum e Persoon, ine der Uusweis z zaige. S Ziil isch, Kriminelli z finde.
- Bim **Profiling** gaats drum, e beschtimti Persoon oder e Gruppe vo Persoone, wo d Polizei suecht, möglichscht genau z beschriibe, zum Biischpil ire Brueff oder ires Verhalte.
- E Mainig oder es Verhalte sind **rassistisch**, wän si uf Voorurtail über «Rasse» basiered, also zum Biischpil über d Huutfarb.
- E Sichtwiis isch **objektiv**, wän si möglichscht wenig mit em persönliche Gschmack und mit Aasichte z tue hät, wo sich nöd la bewiise lönd.
- E Mainig oder es Verhalte sind **diskriminierend**, wän si beschtimte Persoone weniger Rächt als anderne gänd, obwol si nüüt Schlims gmacht händ.

## C1.4

Statement 4: Job disagrees with Elif at first, but then it turns out that they both share the same opinion.

## C1.5

Possible translation (slight variations possible):

- Über daas Thema chöntme eewigs diskutiere.
- Me sött nöd so vil kontrolliere.
- Si holed aim oft bim Velofaare-n use.
- Erkläredsi aim amigs de Grund?
- Me sött der lisatz vo Profiling iischränke.
- Fäaler passiered aim scho mal.

## C1.6

Individual solutions.

## C2

Complete transcription and translation:

<b>M:</b>	Grüezi.	Good morning.
<b>A:</b>	Grüezi. Bitte, um was geht es?	Good morning. How can I help you?
<b>M:</b>	Ich han im Momänt en F-Uuswiis und wür gärn uf B wächsle.	I currently have an F permit and would like to change to a B permit.
<b>A:</b>	Ah, Sie reden ja Schweizerdeutsch. Händ Si ali Underlage debii?	Ah, you speak Swiss German, great. Do you have all the documents with you?
	<i>(De Mahmud schiebt e Biig Papiir under em Glaas dure.)</i>	<i>(Mahmud shoves a pile of paper under the glass.)</i>
<b>A:</b>	Also... Betriibigsregischerter, jawol... de Mietvertraag vo Irere Wonig... de Arbeitsvertraag... Momänt, die Schtel händ Si ja no gar nöd aagfange?	So... debt collection register, right... the tenancy agreement for your flat... the employment contract... Hang on, but you haven't started the job yet?
<b>M:</b>	Aa, warted Si. Daa isch min aktuele Arbeitsvertraag. De gaat aber nume bis Ändi Monet. Dän hani e noii Schtel, des isch des Dokumänt, woni lne scho ggää haa. Gmolde-n isches au scho.	Ah, wait a minute. Here's my current employment contract. But it's only valid until the end of the month. Then I'll have a new job, that's the document I've already given to you. It's already been registered.
<b>A:</b>	Aa, jetztig. Also, das isch daa... daas... daas... Wo isch dän de Düütschnaawiiis?	Ah, there you go. So, that's there... that... that... And where's the German Certificate?
<b>M:</b>	Des isch des Papiir, wo deet dezwüschet grutscht isch.	It's the paper that slipped in between the others.
<b>A:</b>	Seer guet. Also, Här Abadi, die Underlage sind vol-schtändig. Mir wärded das bearbeite und lne Bscheid gää.	Very good. So, Mr. Abadi, the documents are complete. We will process it and let you know.
<b>M:</b>	Chönd Si scho säge, wie lang das des gaat?	Can you already say how long it will take?

<b>A:</b>	Es par Wuche müend Si scho rächne. Wisoo, presiert s lne?	You have to reckon with a few weeks. Why, are you in a hurry?
<b>M:</b>	Min F-Uuswiis laufft glii uus, das sind jetzt no zwai Mönat.	My F permit is about to expire, that's in about two months.
<b>A:</b>	Kä Sorg, das bringemer scho ane, Si müend en nöd namal verlengere.	Don't worry, we'll be able to arrange it by then, you don't have to extend the permit again.
<b>M:</b>	Okay, supper. Dän würi gärn no en Adrässwächsel duregää...	Okay, great. Then I would like to submit a change of address...
<b>A:</b>	Ja, da sind aber nöd miir zueschtändig, da müend Si uf d Gmaind.	Yes, but we are not in charge of that, you have to go to the municipality.
<b>M:</b>	Aa, schaad. Das isch män-gisch scho no müesam mit dene vilne Ämter...	Ah, what a pity. Sometimes it's a bit tiresome with all the authorities...
<b>A:</b>	Tuet mer laid, iich ha s nöd erfunde.	I'm sorry, I didn't make that up.

## C2.1

1e, 2d, 3b, 4a, 5f, 6c

## C2.2

Free answers (other wordings possible):

1. Er wott de B-Uuswiis beaträge.
2. De Mahmud wächsled sini Shtel. Drum hät er zwai Verträäg iigraicht, de aktuel und de zuekünftig.
3. Ja, häter.
4. Sin F-Uuswiis laufft glii uus.

## C2.3

The letters in the correct order B, L, C, S, N, F

## C3.1

1a, 2d, 3b, 4c, 5d, 6e, 7a, 8d, 9f, 10b

## C4

Translation of the dialogue:

*D Schwiizer Demokratii cha zimli kompliziert sii. De Markus wott sich la iibürgere und isch froo, chaner sini Koleegin Gülhan es paar Sache fröoge.*

Swiss democracy can be quite complicated. Markus wants to be naturalised and is glad that he can ask his friend Gülhan a few things.

<b>M:</b>	Also los, ich hoffe s isch kä blöödi Fraag, aber wisoo genau isch d Schwiizer Demokratii «diräkt»?	So listen, I hope this isn't a stupid question, but why exactly is Swiss democracy "direct"?
<b>G:</b>	Nai, das isch überhaupt nöd blöödi! D Schwiiz isch deete dure rächt speziell. I de maischte Demokratii chame ja nume Partee oder Persoone wääle und die entschaide dän ales. Aber i de Schwiiz dörf s Volch oft au über konkreeti Fraage-n ab schtime.	No, that's not a stupid question at all! Switzerland is pretty unique in this respect. In most democracies, you can only vote for parties or individuals, and then they decide on everything. But in Switzerland, people are often allowed to vote on specific issues.
<b>M:</b>	Wie jetzt? Chöntme zum Biischpil abschtime, das me weniger Schtüüre wott zale?	Is that so? For example, could you vote that you want to pay less taxes?
<b>G:</b>	Ja, teoretisch scho. Du bruuchsch aifech erscht emal es paar Lüüt, wo dini Idee unterschützed. Wän d 100'000 Unterschrifte zämebringsch, isch das e Volchsinitiative, und über die schtime s Volch dän ab.	Theoretically yes. You just need a number of people to support your idea first. If you get 100,000 people to sign it, it's a federal popular initiative and people then vote on it.
<b>M:</b>	Okay, und häts scho mal e Volchsinitiative zu Schtüüre ggää?	Okay, and has there ever been a popular initiative on taxes?
<b>G:</b>	Ja, klaar. S git aber no ganz vil anderi Themene, zum Biischpil im 2021i liwanderig, Landwirtschaft, Altepfläg... Mir sind schtändig am Abschtime.	Yes, of course. But there are many other topics, in 2021 for example immigration, agriculture, care for the elderly... We are constantly voting.
<b>M:</b>	Im 21i isch doch au d «Ehe für ali» gsii, oder?	2021 was also 'marriage for all', wasn't it?
<b>G:</b>	Jaa, aber das ischs Referändüm gsii.	Yes, but that was a referendum.
<b>M:</b>	Ui, was isch daas jetzt wider?	Oh, what's that now?
<b>G:</b>	Das isch, wän d Politik öppis plaanet und anderi dagäge sind. Für es Referändüm bruucht s nume 50'000 Unterschrifte. Wän die zämechömed, muess d Politik zerscht s Ergäbnis vo de Abschtimig abwarten, bevor irgendöppis gmacht wird.	This is when politicians are planning something and others are against it. You only need 50,000 people to sign a referendum. If these signatures are obtained, politicians have to wait for the result of the vote before anything can be done.

<b>M:</b>	Und wäär isch für waas gsii?	And who was in favour of what?
<b>G:</b>	Das isch en uulangi Gschicht. Aber am Schluss händ Regierig und s Parlamänt wele, das Schwuuli und Lesbe die gliiche Rächt wi ali händ, wän si hüüraated. Es paarne Lüüt hät das aber nöd gfale, also händsi s Referändum ergriffe. Di maischte, wo go abschtime sind, sind dän aber gäg das Referändum gsii...	It's a really long story. In the end, the government and the parliament wanted gays and lesbians to have the same rights as everyone else when they get married. But a few people didn't like that, so they took the referendum. But most of those who voted were then against the referendum...
<b>M:</b>	... also für de Plaan vo de Politik?	... you mean, in favour of the political plan?
<b>G:</b>	Genau. S isch mängisch echli verwirend. S Referändum isch abgleent worde und d Ehe für ali aagnoo.	Exactly. It's a bit confusing sometimes. They rejected the referendum and accepted marriage for all.
<b>M:</b>	Okay, jetzt verschaani das ales scho chli besser. Merci vilmal, Gülhan!	Okay, now I understand it all a bit better. Thank you very much, Gülhan!

## C4.1

Sentence (topic in bold)	Contrast	Standard form
<b>I de maischte Demokratii</b> chame ja nume Partei oder Persoone wääle.	di maischte Demokratii : d Schwiizer Demokratii	Me cha i de maischte Demokratii nume Partei oder Persoone wääle.
Aber <b>i de Schwiiz</b> dörf s Volch oft au über konkreeti Fraage-n abschtime.	Schwiiz : andri Länder	S Volch dörf i de Schwiiz oft au über konkreeti Themene abschtime.
<b>Für es Referändum</b> bruuchts nume 50'000 Underschrifte.	Referändum : Volchsinitiative	S bruucht nume 50'000 Underschrifte für es Referändum.
<b>Es paarne Lüüt</b> hät das aber nöd gfale.	es paar Lüüt : di maischte Lüüt	Das hät aber es paarne Lüüt nöd gfale.
<b>S Referändum</b> händsi abgleent und d Ehe für ali aagnoo.	s Referändum : d Ehe für ali	Si händ s Referändum abgleent und d Ehe für ali aagnoo.

## C4.2

The combined sentences (topic in bold):

- Blööd isch die Fraag** nöd, aber **d Antwort** waissi gliich nöd.
- Persoone** dörf s Volch i alne demokratische Länder wääle, nur **über Sache** dörf s nöd imer abschtime.
- Initiative zu Schtüürsänkige** häts scho vil ggää, nur **aagnoo** wärdedsi fascht nie.
- Plaanet** händ si das scho, aber **umsetze** händsi s nöd chöne.
- S Referändum** händsi abgleent und **d Initiative** händsi aagnoo.

## C4.3

1. wääle, 2. schtimed... ab, 3. Partei, 4. Unterschrift, 5. Schtimvolk, 6. underschtützt, 7. Thema, 8. Ergäbnis, 9. Referändum, 10. Regierig

## C4.4

Here are three simple suggestions - other solutions are possible!

- **diräkti Demokratii:** Das isch, wän d Lüüt über vil Themene diräkt sälber dörfed abschtime.
- **Volchsinitiative:** Wän öpperem i de Schwiiz es Thema seer wichtig isch, cha die Person mache, das das ganze Volch drüber abschtime. Das isch dän e Volchsinitiative.
- **Referändum:** Wän d Politik öppis plaant, wo am Volch nöd gfalt, chas es Referändum ergriiffe. Das isch en Abschtimig, wo entschaidet, öb d Politik ire Plaan dörf umsetze.

## C4.5

Here are some more suggestions - maybe you can think of even more points?

Advantages	Disadvantages
S Volch cha i de Politik mee mitrede.	D Politiker*ine müend seer voorsichtig sii - s Volch cha imer lischpruch erhebe. Reforme bruuched vil Ziiit.
D Politiker*ine chönd nöd aifech mache, was si wänd.	S gänd gar nöd ali iri Schtim ab und die, wo s mached, wüssed au nöd imer, was di bescht Entschaidig isch.
D Politik mues imer Kompromiss finde - suscht ergriift vilich öpper s Referändum.	I de Schwiiz gaats lang, bis me als Uusländer abschtime dörf. Des isch zwar nöd d Schuld vo de diräkte Demokratii, aber si wär grächter, wän mee Lüüt dörfed mitrede.

Translation of the text:

*It's voCHabular weekend in Berne. Everyone helping with the new book meets up and shares ideas. Raimi and Peer get into a conversation over lunch.*

<b>P:</b>	Hi! What's your name again?
<b>R:</b>	I'm Raimi – and you are Peer, right?
<b>P:</b>	Yes, I am. Enjoy your meal!
<b>R:</b>	Enjoy your meal. You haven't been around that long, have you?
<b>P:</b>	No, just a few weeks so far.
<b>R:</b>	And how did you come across voCHabular?
<b>P:</b>	I wanted to get politically involved. But not in a party or anything of the sort...
<b>R:</b>	Why not?
<b>P:</b>	Hm, good question. I think in the end I just find it too exhausting. As a politician, you have to constantly think about the people who voted for you. You constantly need to convince people, fight, negotiate compromises...
<b>R:</b>	Sounds like varied work!
<b>P:</b>	Yes, but it's too much for me. I think it's important to do something for the society you live in. But you can also do that in an association, for example, where it's a bit more relaxed.
<b>R:</b>	Yes, voCHabular is of course very relaxed... and also political: everyone should be able to learn German or Swiss German, regardless of where they come from and how much money they have. But I think that's more of an exception. There are also a lot of associations that are totally apolitical. Gardening associations, for example.
<b>P:</b>	Don't say that, they are also committed to something! Some may only see their own garden, but all of them together can make a difference, for example by providing a home for animals in the city. For me, anyone who stands up for others is political!
<b>R:</b>	Hm, I see your point, but... what about playing soccer, for example?
<b>P:</b>	Soccer can also be an integrative project. A good friend of mine got to know Switzerland through playing soccer. But of course, that's not always the case. Many people are only interested in the match results and nothing else.

## C5.1

1R, 2P, 3R, 4P, 5P, 6R

## C5.2

1. ungeniert ('uninhibited') → **engagiert**, 2. Party ('party') → **Partei**, 3. überziet ('overruns') → **überzückt**, 4. cämpe ('go camping') → **kämpfe**, 5. Verwächslig ('confusion') → **Abwächslig**, 6. Sailschaft ('roped party') → **Gesellschaft**, 7. Verlei ('rental company') → **Verein**, 8. Kompression ('compression') → **Kompromiss**

## D1.1

1. abschtime, 2. diskriminiere, 3. Demo(nstration), 4. Regierig, 5. engagiere, 6. Verain, 7. Pass (or Uuswiis)

## D1.2

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

<b>P:</b>	Schtel der voor, oisi Wonig wänds jetzt renoviere.	Can you imagine, they want to renovate our flat now?
<b>J:</b>	A jaa? Isch doch supper, nöd?	Oh yeah? That's great, isn't it?
<b>P:</b>	Nai, das isch nur en Uusreed, zum si nacher no tüürer z mache.	No, that's just an excuse to make it even more expensive afterwards.
<b>J:</b>	Ja guet, so laufft äbe de Märt.	Well, that's just how the market works.
<b>P:</b>	Ich find äbe, so Sache sött gar nöd de Märt regle, sondern d Politik. S isch doch esoo: Me mues es Huus ee al 50 Jaar renoviere, aber schtat das si das Gäld schpared, holed-si s über d Mieti use!	I don't think the market should regulate such things, but politics should. It's like this: you have to renovate a house every 50 years anyway, but instead of saving the money, they take it through the rent!
<b>J:</b>	Jaa, isch scho no krass, aber was wüsch dän wele mache?	Yeah, it's pretty blatant, but what would you want to do?
<b>P:</b>	Ich find, so Immobilie-Undernäme müested per Gsetz Gäld für so Sache müese zruglegge. Si sötted nöd ales als Profit dörfe nää, sondern sötted imer en Tail für d Mieter und Mieterine uufhebe.	I think such real estate businesses should be obliged by law to put money aside for such things. They shouldn't be allowed to take everything as profit, but should always keep a certain share for the tenants.
<b>J:</b>	Das wür de Hüslisitzer aber gar nöd gfale.	But the landlords wouldn't like that at all.
<b>P:</b>	Ja und, das sind ja nöd so vil! Di maischte Lüüt i de Schwiiz mieted iri Wonig, mir sind d Meerhait!	So what, there aren't that many of them! Most people in Switzerland are renting their flat, we are the majority!
<b>J:</b>	Also, schartisch en Initiative?	So, are you launching a popular initiative?
<b>P:</b>	Ich wais gar nöd, wi das gaat. Aber s isch e Rise-Ungrächtigkeit! Wän s en Initiative gäbti, würi sofort mithälfe, Unterschrifte samle.	I don't even know how that works. But it's a huge injustice! If there was an initiative, I would immediately help collect signatures.



Answers to the questions:

1. False (it's about Patime's flat)
2. False (Patime only dislikes the fact that the renovation is to be financed through her rent)
3. True
4. False (João thinks that's just the way the market works)
5. True
6. True

## D2.1

1. I de Schwiiz chame jedes Jaar es paarmaal abschtme.
2. Wämme s Schtimrächt wott (or wil), bruuchtme zerscht de Schwiizer Pass.
3. Wämme kontrolliert wird, mues aim d Polizei de Grund säge.
4. Ab und zue söttme (or sölme) ane Demo gaa, zum de Politik sini Mainig z zaige.
5. S Referändum chame uufnäa, wän aim es politischs Voorhabe nöd gfalt.

## D2.2

Transcription of the slogans, including suitable topics:

1. Gliichi Arbet, gliiche Loon! Gliichi Arbet, gliiche Loon!  
= Equal pay for men and women
2. Gopfridschutz, jetzt Klimaschutz! Gopfridschutz, jetzt Klimaschutz!  
= More measures against climate change
3. Kai Mänsch isch illegal - hie und jetzt und überaal!  
= Human rights in immigration politics
4. Gliichi Liebi, gliichi Rächt! Gliichi Liebi, gliichi Rächt!  
= Marriage for lesbians and gays
5. Wäm sini Zuekunft? Oisi Zuekunft!  
= Various topics, for example, climate

## D2.3

1. d Begränzigsinitiative
2. um liwanderig
3. d EU
4. 62 %

## D3.1

1. abgloffte, verlengere
2. beaaträge
3. Formulaar, Biilage
4. schtele
5. Naawiis, Arbetsvertraag

## D3.2

1. s Formulaar uusfüle
2. d Dokumänt zämesueche
3. der Aatraag iiraiche
4. d Bearbaitig abwarte
5. d Gebüer zale (that may be the first step)

# Unit 8

## A1

Translation of the texts:

### Fatemeh

Swiss culture? Hm, I think Switzerland is above all a very sports-loving country. Everyone does something, hiking, skiing, swimming... I like that, of course, and especially the fact that soccer is so popular. I think the way our national team has played in recent years is something to be proud of. I've only been here for five years, but for me it's nonetheless "our" team. I really like how many people with a migrant background play in it. That's Switzerland too, such a big pot where everything is thrown in - with a great result!

### Nadir

For me, first of all, Switzerland is a country in Europe that is not all that different from the others. What is special is its political culture. I think direct democracy, for example, is a great thing. There are not many other countries in the world where citizens have so much of a say. On the other hand, it's quite difficult to get citizenship, even if you were born here. I find it rather disappointing how long you have to wait and struggle. Somehow both the opportunities and the restrictions are typically Swiss.

### Pablo

What is typically Swiss? That's quite difficult, I can only say what I think. When I hear "Switzerland", I mainly think of Swiss cities. Everyone always talks about the mountains and the cows and the cheese, but life happens in the cities! And I think that many Swiss cities do a lot for cultural life and art, there are concerts, exhibitions, festivals, cinema... there's always something going on and people enjoy it. That's Swiss culture for me!

### Andrea

For me, Switzerland is a country where people live traditions, for example the dulcimer (Hackbrett) in music or Swiss wrestling (Schwingen) in sport. Okay, maybe there aren't that many people who play the dulcimer or wrestle in their free time, but these things only exist here, and I like the fact that they are being cultivated in this way. I like going to the mountains myself, it's also a kind of tradition for me. My parents have always taken us hiking, and I want to do the same with my children. The Swiss mountains are simply the most beautiful in the world, which is why so many tourists come here!

## A2

1F, 2P, 3N, 4A, 5N, 6P, 7A, 8F

## A3

True, True, False, False

## B1

1. Europa, 2. gwanderet, 3. Migrationshindergrund, 4. Tradition, 5. Demokratii, 6. Bürgerrächt

## B2

1. I de Schwiiz wird vil Schport triibe.
2. D Schwiiz isch wine groossi Pfane, wo ales driigheit wird.
3. Di diräkti Demokratii wird vo de Schwiizer\*ine gschetzt.
4. D Politik wird vo de Bürger\*ine mitbeschume.
5. Wän s um d Schwiiz gaat, wird imer vo de Bäрге und de Chüe gredt.
6. I de Schwiizer Shtett wird vil für s Kulturläbe gmacht.
7. D Schwiiz wird vo vilne Turischt\*ine bsuecht.

## B3.1

1. Ich laa Si gärn no echli (la) naadänke.
2. Laa mi bitte in Rue (la) schaffe.
3. Dini Schwöschter sött das gschiider mal en Arzt la aaluege.
4. Mängisch lömmer e Pizza (la) choo.
5. Lönd doch de Karim mit sine Autos (la) schpile.
6. Iri Eltere händsi uf s Gymi la gaa.

## B3.2

1. Ich laa mi megagärn (la) massiere.
2. Du chasch der die Websiite la voorläse.
3. Mini Koleegin laat sich amigs d Schtüüre (la) mache.
4. Mir lönd ois eerscht emal en Offerte (la) choo.
5. Ir lönd oi ja gaar nüm gsee!
6. Di baide händ sich letschts Jaar la iibürgere.

# C1

Translation of the text:

What exactly is 'Swiss music' - music that is played or listened to in Switzerland? Is it music that has always been here - and does it even exist? Is it about what most people like, or about what you can only find in Switzerland?

It is often said, for example, that the 'Hackbrett' (a hammered dulcimer) and the 'Schwyzerörgeli' (a kind of accordion) are typical Swiss instruments. But there are similar instruments in many other European countries - the Hackbrett and the Schwyzerörgeli are just special forms of them. Even the alp-horn and yodelling are not only found in Switzerland, but also in Germany and Austria.

Something that really doesn't exist anywhere else are songs that are sung or rapped in Swiss German. In the 1960s, for example, the Bernese singer Mani Matter became famous with his thought-provoking songs. Today, there are many bands that play rock or hip-hop in dialect. But if that is typically Swiss, what about songs in French, Italian or Rumantsch?

We can also look at how music is consumed in Switzerland. It is remarkable, for example, how often festivals are attended in Switzerland. From pop and rock to folk music or jazz, there is something for every taste, and for many people - especially young people - summer is basically the season when they go to one festival after another.

## C1.1

wird gschpilt → me schpilt, wird gloset → me lost, wird gsait → me sait, wärded gsunge → me singt, wärded gräppt → me räppt, wird konsumiert → me konsumiert, wärded bsuecht → me bsuecht

## C1.2

True, False, False, False, True, True

## C1.3

Individual solutions.

## C1.4

Various definitions of 'typical' are hidden in the text. You may, for example, phrase it like this: typical for a country is...

- ... what is done there.
- ... what has always been done there.
- ... what people particularly like to do there.
- ... what most people do there.
- ... what you can only find there and nowhere else.

We will leave it up to you to decide which definition is the best!

# C2

Translation of the text:

**Antje:** Hello everyone! It's great to see you all here, come on in! You can hang up your jackets at the coat rack there.

**Rodrigo:** Thank you for the invitation! I've brought a little something for you.

**Antje:** Thank you! I'm glad it worked out. What would you like to drink? I can make you an Aperol, or there's also Prosecco, beer, white wine from Valais and of course non-alcoholic drinks.

**Karim:** I'd like to have an Aperol.

**Rodrigo:** I'll have a glass of white wine.

**Antje:** I'll be happy to bring them. Just sit down and start eating.

**Rodrigo:** Mmm, the olives are very tasty. Where did you get them?

**Antje:** I was at the market yesterday, and there was a stall with lots of different antipasti and dried fruit. The tomatoes are also from the market. I love it when all the vegetables are so fresh!

**Karim:** Yes, I also try to go to the market sometimes before work. It's great when you can buy food directly from the farm, so to speak. And how are things at work?

**Antje:** Good. There are always receptions at the moment. On Monday evening, we had a welcome drink with all the new employees, and then yesterday, the association organised a networking meeting with an apéro riche. It's always nice to start the evening like this and have a cosy chat and get to know new people.

**Rodrigo:** What is an apéro riche?

**Antje:** Simply a lavish reception with lots of different snacks. After that, you've basically already had dinner.

**Karim:** Well, your buffet is also very big, you surely spent a while preparing it all. I mean, chopping all the vegetables, making the dips, the spinach and feta pockets with puff pastry and then even the hummus - which is very nice, by the way. What did you put in there?

**Antje:** Chickpeas and tahini of course, then salt and cumin, lemon juice, garlic and good olive oil.

**Karim:** Oh, that sounds easy. I really must try it out then.

## C2.1

For example (other formulations possible):

D Schwiizer\*ine händ gärn Apéros. Öppis z trinke gits imer, oft au mit Alkohol. Dezue gits maischtens öppis Chliises z ässe, zum Biischpil Oliive - usser es isch en Apéro riche, dän wirdme richtig satt. Apéros chame dihai mache oder au im Gschäft. S gaat drum, das me echli cha umelauffe und mit verschidnige Lüüt schwätze.

# C2.3

Choose at least three pieces of information from the text and create one sentence from each of them in the passive voice. Example: *D Spinat-Feta-Täsche wärded mit Blätterteig gmacht.*

Possible solutions:

*S wärded vil Apéros organisiert.*

*Humus wird mit Tahini und Kichererbse gmacht.*

*Uf em Märt wärded zum Biischpil früschs Gmües, Antipasti und Trochefrücht verchauft.*

*D Jagge wärded a de Garderobe-n uufghängt.*

*En Begrüessigsapéro wird für die noie Mitarbaitende abghalte.*

*Dä Wiisswii wird im Wallis häärgschtelt.*

# C3

Transcription and translation of the audio text:

<b>Presenter</b>	Hüt isch Mitti Mai und daa demit de Taag, wo z Züri d Badis wider uufgönd. Mir händ ois under de Lüüt, wo jetzt d Badis schtürmed, echli umgloset.	Today is the middle of May and therefore also the day when the outdoor swimming pools in Zurich reopen. We asked around a bit among the people who are now hitting the pool.
------------------	--	--

Reporter (R) with a group of children, two different children (K1, K2) speak

<b>R:</b>	Hoi zäme! Wiso sind iir hüt i de Badi?	Hello, why are you at the outdoor pool today?
<b>K1:</b>	S fägt aifach!	It's great fun!
<b>R:</b>	Und was händer am liebschte?	And what's your favourite thing?
<b>K2:</b>	De Schprungturm. Ich laa mich imer so abegheie, bäm, mit em Fudi vol i s Wasser!	The diving platform. I always let myself fall off like this, bam, with my butt right into the water!

Reporter with elderly regular guest

<b>R:</b>	Grüezi. Si chömed scho lang da ane?	Good morning. You've been coming here for a while?
<b>S:</b>	Jawol, ich laa mi daa nüm la wägjage.	Yes, I won't be chased away from here.
<b>R:</b>	Wisoo chömed Sii i d Badi?	Why do you come to the outdoor pool?
<b>S:</b>	Für miich ghööred Sumer und Badi aifecht zäme. Dihai gheit mer nume d Decki uf de Chopf. Ich bi vil lieber im Freie und laa s mer guet gaal!	For me, summer and going to the outdoor pool simply belong together. At home, I'm going stir-crazy. I prefer being outdoors and having a good time.

Reporter with parents, M = mother, V = father

<b>R:</b>	Grüezi mitenand! Wi wichtig isch für Sii s Aagebott vo de Badis?	Hello. How important are the amenities of the outdoor pools for you?
<b>M:</b>	Mir schetzed das Aagebott seer! Mir sind vor Churzem i d Schwiiz choo und händ dän glii d Badis für ois entdeckt. S isch wükli supper, gits so vil!	We really appreciate the amenities! We recently came to Switzerland and soon discovered the outdoor pools for ourselves. It's really great that there are so many of them!
<b>R:</b>	Gits öppis, wo lne a de Schwiizer Badekultuur bsunders guet gfalt?	Is there something you particularly like about Swiss bathing culture?
<b>V:</b>	Na jaa, «Badekultuur» isch echli vil gsait - s isch aifech en entschpante-n Ort, wo mer d Chind chönd la schpile und gleichzeitig sälber abhänge.	Well, "bathing culture" is a bit of a stretch - it's just a relaxed place where we can let the kids play and hang out ourselves at the same time.
<b>M:</b>	S isch au guet, gits d Rutschi und d Schpilwise und al daas. Da löndsi ois maischtens aifech la ligge und chömed eerscht wider, wän si Hunger händ.	It's also good that there's the slide and the play area and all that. They usually just leave us here and only come back when they're hungry.

Reporter with child

<b>R:</b>	Hoi! Findsch s Glacé i de Badi besser als wi dusse?	Hey, do you think the ice cream at the outdoor pool is better than outside?
<b>K:</b>	Nai, genau gliich.	No, it's just the same.
<b>R:</b>	Und laasch mi mal draa schläcke?	Would you let me taste it?
<b>K:</b>	Nai, sicher nöd!	No, certainly not!

# C3.1

1 d Schportler, zum Schpaass haa (Note: zum Fäge = 'for cleaning!')

2 de Schtamgascht, er isch sich s esoo gwöönt

3 di Fuule, zum Entschpane

4 s Schläckmuul, me waiss nöd wisoo

# C3.2

ich laa mich abegheie → ich ghei abe

ich laa mich nüm la vertribe → (öpfer) vertribt mich

Ich laa s mer guet gaa → s gaat mer guet

mir lönd d Chind la schpile → d Chind schpiled

si lönd ois la ligge → mir ligged

(du) laasch mi draa schläcke → ich schläcke draa

## C3.3

1. s fägt: 'it's great fun'
2. öpperem gheit d Decki uf de Chopf: 'someone feels bored or depressed at home'
3. sich s guet la gaa: 'to enjoy life, to have a good time'
4. abhange: 'to relax, to enjoy doing nothing'

## C4

Translation of the text:

**P:** So, we're supposed to talk about housing here, housing in Switzerland... Can you think of anything?

**F:** Expensive! It's incredibly expensive. That's the first thing that comes to my mind.

**P:** But do you think that's typically Swiss? Or Swiss culture?

**F:** Sure. It's almost nowhere else as expensive as here, so it's typical! And almost everyone rents a flat, that's cultural.

**P:** What do you mean?

**F:** There are few people who own their own house or flat. Most of them rent it, and rents are expensive.

**P:** Ah, now I understand. But I think you're being a bit negative. I actually like living in Switzerland.

**F:** Why?

**P:** For example, I like the fact that you can hardly live in the middle of nowhere. There's almost always a bus or a train and you're in the city in no time. That's public transport culture!

**F:** Yes, that's true. But that's not about housing for me, that's about transport.

**P:** All right, housing, housing... What I like about living in Switzerland is that there are so many cooperatives here.

**F:** What's that?

**P:** That's when several people own a few houses together and manage them themselves. This is quite common in Switzerland. Rent is also cheaper there.

**F:** Ah yes, that sounds good. But it's certainly not easy to get in there!

## C4.1

Translation and correct answers:

		F	P
1	Good public transport is part of Switzerland.	(x)	x
2	There are many problems with housing in Switzerland.	x	
3	Part of the Swiss housing culture is that more people rent their homes than own them.	x	
4	Overall, the housing culture in Switzerland is pleasant.		x
5	High prices are typically Swiss.	x	
6	It's a good thing to be able to manage your own living space.	x	x

Fatemeh agrees with aspect (1., but does not count public transport as housing. Fatemeh and Pablo completely agree on aspect (6..

## C4.2

In the text are mentioned (other wordings possible):

- hööchi Mietene
- mee Mieter\*ine wi Bsitzer\*ine
- gueti ÖV-Aabindig
- Gnosseschafte

Here are just a few examples of further aspects. Many others are also possible:

- I vilne Schwiizer Hüscher häts e Wöschchuchi, wo sich meereri Lüüt tailed.
- Wän Chind erwachse wärded, ziendsi maischtens bi de Eltere uus.
- Alti Lüüt woned oft alai, nöd bi de Familie.
- I de Schtett gits vil WGs. Das mached vor alem jungi Lüüt, aber au Elteri chönd e WG gründe.
- Wän i de Schwiiz es nois Huus pout wird, müend seer vil Gsetz iighalte wärde, zum Biischpil für de Lärmschutz und de Umwältenschutz.

## C4.3

Translation and contextualisation of the dialogue:

1. Oh, crazy. But how do they get to the houses? (Fatemeh, instead of sentence 14.
2. That's true, but you earn well here. (Pablo, instead of sentence 3 or 7.
3. I can't think of anything. Housing in Switzerland is like anywhere else! (Fatemeh, instead of sentence 2.
4. That's true, but it's unfair that not everyone can afford public transport. (Fatemeh, instead of sentence 10.
5. Yes, it is housing! Thanks to public transport, you can live wherever you want. Or almost. (Pablo, instead of sentence 11.

# C5/C5.1

Transcription and translation:

«Heimat ist kein Ort, Heimat ist ein Gefühl» – as the German singer Herbert Grönemeyer sings. But is that really so? We asked Fatemeh, Nadir, Pablo and Andrea once again where they see their home.

## Fatemeh

**Mini Haimet isch im Shtadion!** Nai, das isch nur en Witz gsii. Oder? Ich bi mir gar nöd sicher, wo mini Haimet isch. Deet, wo-n i uf d Wält choo bin? Oder i de Schwiiz, wo-n i jetz läbe? Ich mag baidi. Da chame dän scho is Naadänke choo, das isch gar nöd so mis Ding. **Ich glaub, ich bliib doch bi minere erschte-n Antwort!**

My home is in the stadium! Nah, that was just a joke. Or was it not? I'm not really sure where my home is. In the place where I was born? Or in Switzerland, where I live now? I like them both. That can get you thinking, which is not really my thing. I think I'll stick with my first answer after all!

## Nadir

**Für miich isch Haimet scho en Ort, aber nöd unbedingt en feschte.** Mini Haimet isch imer deet, wo-n i grad wone. Ich han scho an es paarne Ort gläbt und verschidnigi Sache gmacht. Im Momänt won ich i de Schwiiz, also isch daas mini Haimet. **Mir gfalt sicher nöd ales guet und nöd ales isch perfekt. Aber ich bin uf jede Fal zfride.**

For me, home is a place, but not necessarily a permanent one. My home is always where I'm currently living. I've lived in a few places already and have done different things. At the moment I live in Switzerland, so that's my home. I certainly don't like everything, and not everything is perfect. But I'm definitely happy.

## Pablo

**Jaa, Haimet isch uf jede Fal es Gfüül, es guets Gfüül!** Vo de Haimet troimtme und me seent sich denaach. Ich mues säge, ich füül mich daa nöd imer dihai. Ich vermisse-n oft mini alti Haimet. Ich waiss nöd genau, a waas das es liit - ischs des Wätter, s Ässe, d Lüüt? **Jedefals, mängisch füült sich d Schwiiz wi mini Haimet aa und dän wider nöd.**

Yes, home is definitely a sentiment, and a good one! You dream of your home, and you long for it. I have to say, I don't always feel at home here. I often miss my old home country. I don't know exactly why that is - is it the weather, the food, the people? In any case, sometimes Switzerland feels like my home, and then again, it doesn't.

## Andrea

**Für miich isch Haimet scho eender en Ort.** En Ort, wo mit shtarche Gfüül verbunde-n isch, däa Ort, wo mini Familie läbt, mini Eltere, min Partner, villich schpööter emal oisi Chind. Wän ich wäggaa, machi mer imer chli Sorge-n um mini Lüüt dihai. **Ich würd drum au amene andere Ort nöd richtig glücklich wärde.**

For me, home is actually a place. A place that is associated with strong emotions, the place where my family lives, my parents, my partner, maybe our children later on. When I go away, I always worry a little about my people at home. That's why I wouldn't be really happy anywhere else.

# C5.2

Wie füült sich Haimet aa?	Name
Me hät si gärn.	Fatemeh
Me macht sich Sorge drum.	Andrea
Me troimt devoo.	Pablo
S git käs bsunders Haimet-Gfüül.	Nadir

# C5.3

Individual solutions.

# D1

Translation of the text:

Apolline lives in a house where the laundry room is shared by everyone – a common situation in Switzerland. At the moment, she is irritated by the situation in the laundry room: nobody follows her rules, even though she has lived in this house for 15 years! She points out the rules to her neighbours in the house chat. But she doesn't even get round to finishing writing because everyone else has something to say.

- Apolline:** Hi guys, I have a few comments about the use of our laundry room... First of all, the tumbler filter hasn't been cleaned recently. This is really annoying!
- Dean:** The washing is also left hanging for far too long. There's simply never any room for me 😞😞
- Apolline:** Second: The washing machine is actually sometimes used on Sundays. That definitely makes too much noise.
- Fahri:** You can hang the washing up after two days and it will be dry 👍 But my washing has just been taken off wet once again! 😞
- Loris:** Another question, why isn't there actually a laundry schedule?
- Antonina:** Oh no, I just wanted to wash my hangers and now the whole machine has stopped working 😞😞 What should I do? It's all full of water down here... 😞
- Apolline:** 😞😞😞

# D1.1

Original sentence (to be marked)	Rephrased sentence
Eerschtens wird de Tömbler-filter i de letschte Ziit nüme grainiget.	Eerschtens rainiget irgendöpper i de letschte Ziit de Tömblerfilter nüme.
D Wösch wird au vil z lang hange glaa.	Irgendöpper laat au d Wösch vil z lang (la) hange.
D Wöschmaschine wird taatsächlich mängisch am Suntig pruucht.	Irgendöpper bruucht taatsächlich d Wöschmaschine mängisch am Suntig.
Aber mini Wösch isch aifach wider emal nass abghänt worde!	Aber irgendöpper hät mini Wösch aifach wider emal nass abghänt!

## D1.2

The following rules are derived from the text. Other rules and different formulations are possible.

- De Tömblerfilter mues imer grainiget wärde.
- D Wösch dörf nöd z lang hange glaa wärde.
- D Wöschmaschine dörf am Suntig nöd pruucht wärde.
- Nassi Wösch dörf nöd (vo anderne) abghänkt wärde.
- De Wöschplaan mues iighalte wärde.
- Chlaiderbügel dörfed nöd i de Maschine gwäsche wärde.

## D1.3

Exemplary text:

I de Schwiiz gits gmainsami Wöschchäler vil öfter als i vilne anderne Länder. Für miich sindsi durum en Tail vo de Schwiizer Kultur. Ich find si aber weniger wichtig als anderi kulturrelli Aigeschafte, wil me zum Glück nöd imer nur am Wäsche-nisch. Aigetlich findi so Wöschchäler au e supper Idee, nur müend d Regle klaar sii, suscht gits oft Schritiit.

## D2

Transcription and translation of the text:

Haiwee überchumi, wän i a mini Fründe und Fründine danke und was mer zäme unternoo händ. Oft hämmer nach em Znacht bis Mitternacht uf de Schtraas Fuesbal gschpilt. Das hani daa i de Schwiiz no nie gemacht.

I get homesick when I think about my friends and what we used to do together. We often played soccer in the street after dinner until midnight. I've never done that here in Switzerland.

Mängisch hani au Haiwee, wäni a mini Familie danke, wie mer glacht händ und ooni en beschtimte Grund Musig la lauffe und tanzt händ. Ich vermisse d Wintergschicht, wo min Vater jedes Jaar verzelt hät. Da sind imer fufze bis foifezwänzg Persoone us minere Familie choo zum im Zuezlose.

Sometimes I also feel homesick when I think about my family, how we used to laugh and play music and dance for no particular reason. I miss the winter story that my father used to tell us every year. There were always about 15 to 25 people from my family who came to hear him tell the story.

Ich tänke-n au öfter a d Gricht, wo bi ois dihai kocht worde sind. D Gricht us Europa und de Schwiiz findi au megafain, zum Biischpil Ghackets und Hörnli oder Rööschti mit Schpiegelai hani megagärn. Trozdam hani s Ässe us mim Haimetland lieber, wil s mee Gwürz dine hät, wo-n i gärn han und wo mi a mini Chindhait erinered.

I also often think about the dishes that we used to cook at home. I find the dishes from Europe and Switzerland also very tasty, I really like minced meat and hörnli or rösti with a fried egg, for example. Nevertheless, I like the food from my home country better because it has more spices in it that I like and that remind me of my childhood.

Ich han s Glück, das i daa i de Schwiiz Mänsche han, woni gärn han. Wän i mit ine zäme bin, dän hani kai Haiwee.

I'm lucky to have people here in Switzerland that I like. When I'm with them, I don't feel homesick.

## D2.1

The person answers the question: *Wän überchunsch Haiwee?* 'When do you get homesick?' (other wordings possible)

## D2.2

Fründe und Fründine, Fuesbalschpile i de Nacht, d Familie, Musig lose und tanze, d Wintergschicht vom Vatter, Gricht us de Haimet

## D2.3

Individual solutions.





# Acknowledgement

Dieses Buch ist das Ergebnis einer aussergewöhnlichen ehrenamtlichen Arbeit.

Es wäre ohne die Unterstützung von verschiedenen Seiten nicht möglich gewesen.

An erster Stelle möchten wir unseren Sponsor\*innen danken, die es uns ermöglicht haben, die notwendigen Kosten zu decken und dieses Buch spendenbasiert zur Verfügung zu stellen.

Insbesondere danken wir der Fachstelle Integration des Kantons Zürichs, dem Zürcher Spendenparlament, der Hirschmann-Stiftung, der UBS Stiftung für Soziales und Ausbildung, der Stiftung Corymbo, der Stiftung Anne-Marie Schindler, der Stiftung Temperatio, dem Präsidentsdepartement der Stadt Zürich, der Schweizerischen Gemeinnützigen Gesellschaft, der Ida und Rudolf Schrepfer-Laager Stiftung und der Stiftung Gertrud Kurz.

Zudem möchten wir uns bei allen grosszügigen privaten Spender\*innen bedanken. Des Weiteren danken wir der Druckerei Zumsteg, Social Fabric und der Genossenschaft Kalkbreite für die wertvolle Zusammenarbeit.

Wir möchten uns bei all jenen bedanken, die sich die Zeit genommen haben, uns an zahlreichen Arbeitswochenenden und Veranstaltungen zu unterstützen. Darüber hinaus danken wir allen Menschen, die bei der Gestaltung und Bewerbung des Buches mitgewirkt haben.

Nicht zuletzt geht unser grösster Dank an die vielen Freiwilligen, die unzählige Stunden in dieses Projekt investiert haben. Sie sind das Herzstück von voCHabular.

This book is the result of extraordinary voluntary work. It would not have been possible without the support from multiple sides.

First of all, we would like to thank our sponsors, who made it possible for us to cover the necessary expenses and allow us to make this book available on a donation basis.

In particular, we would like to thank the Integration Office of the Canton of Zurich, the Spendenparlament Zurich, the Hirschmann Foundation, the UBS Foundation for Social Issues and Education, the Corymbo Foundation, the Anne-Marie Schindler Foundation, the Temperatio Foundation, the Mayor's Department of the City of Zurich, the Swiss Society for the Common Good (SSCG), the Ida and Rudolf Schrepfer-Laager Foundation and the Gertrud Kurz Foundation.

Furthermore, we would like to express our appreciation to all the generous private donors and contributors. We would also like to thank the print shop Zumsteg, Social Fabric and Genossenschaft Kalkbreite for their valuable cooperation.

We would like to thank all the people who took the time to support us at numerous co-working weekends and events. We also thank all the people who contributed to the design and promotion of the book.

Last but certainly not least, our biggest thanks go to the many volunteers, who invested countless hours in this project. You are the core of voCHabular.

